

Council

Date: Thursday 21st July 2022

Time: 6.30 pm

Venue: Council Chamber - Guildhall, Bath

To: All Members of the Council

Dear Member

You are invited to attend a meeting of the **Council** on **Thursday 21st July 2022** in the **Council Chamber - Guildhall, Bath.**

The agenda is set out overleaf.

Yours sincerely



Jo Morrison
Democratic Services Manager
for Chief Executive

Please note the following arrangements for pre-group meetings:

Conservative	Kaposvar room, floor 1
Liberal Democrat	Brunswick room, ground floor
Labour	Labour Group room, floor 2
Independent	Aix en Provence room, floor 1

Jo Morrison

Democratic Services

Lewis House, Manvers Street, Bath, BA1 1JG

Telephone: 01225 39 4435

Web-site - <http://www.bathnes.gov.uk>

E-mail: Democratic_Services@bathnes.gov.uk

NOTES:

1. **Inspection of Papers:** Papers are available for inspection as follows:

Council's website: <https://democracy.bathnes.gov.uk/ieDocHome.aspx?bcr=1>

2. **Details of decisions taken at this meeting** can be found in the minutes which will be circulated with the agenda for the next meeting. In the meantime, details can be obtained by contacting as above.

3. Recording at Meetings:-

The Openness of Local Government Bodies Regulations 2014 now allows filming and recording by anyone attending a meeting. This is not within the Council's control. Some of our meetings are webcast. At the start of the meeting, the Chair will confirm if all or part of the meeting is to be filmed. If you would prefer not to be filmed for the webcast, please make yourself known to the camera operators. We request that those filming/recording meetings avoid filming public seating areas, children, vulnerable people etc; however, the Council cannot guarantee this will happen.

The Council will broadcast the images and sounds live via the internet www.bathnes.gov.uk/webcast. The Council may also use the images/sound recordings on its social media site or share with other organisations, such as broadcasters.

4. Public Speaking at Meetings

The Council has a scheme to encourage the public to make their views known at meetings. They may make a statement relevant to what the meeting has power to do. They may also present a petition or a deputation on behalf of a group.

Advance notice, and the text of the statement, is required not less than two full working days before the meeting. This means that for meetings held on Thursdays notice must be received in Democratic Services by 5.00pm the previous Monday.

The Council now has a maximum time limit for this, so any requests to speak cannot be guaranteed if the list is full.

Further details of the scheme can be found at:

<https://democracy.bathnes.gov.uk/ecCatDisplay.aspx?sch=doc&cat=12942>

5. Emergency Evacuation Procedure

When the continuous alarm sounds, you must evacuate the building by one of the designated exits and proceed to the named assembly point. The designated exits are signposted. Arrangements are in place for the safe evacuation of disabled people.

6. Supplementary information for meetings

Additional information and Protocols and procedures relating to meetings

<https://democracy.bathnes.gov.uk/ecCatDisplay.aspx?sch=doc&cat=13505>

Council – Thursday 21st July, 2022

at 6.30 pm in the Council Chamber - Guildhall, Bath

A G E N D A

1. EMERGENCY EVACUATION PROCEDURE

The Chair will draw attention to the emergency evacuation procedure as set out under Note 5.

2. APPOINTMENT OF VICE CHAIR 2022-23

Councillor June Player was appointed as Vice Chair in May. Due to unforeseen circumstances, she has had to step down, so a new appointment is sought.

3. APOLOGIES FOR ABSENCE

4. DECLARATIONS OF INTEREST

At this point in the meeting declarations of interest are received from Members in any of the agenda items under consideration at the meeting. Members are asked to complete the green interest forms circulated to groups in their pre-meetings (which will be announced at the Council Meeting) to indicate:

(a) The agenda item number in which they have an interest to declare.

(b) The nature of their interest.

(c) Whether their interest is **a disclosable pecuniary interest** or **an other interest**,
(as defined in Part 2, A and B of the Code of Conduct and Rules for Registration of Interests)

Any Member who needs to clarify any matters relating to the declaration of interests is recommended to seek advice from the Council's Monitoring Officer or a member of his staff before the meeting to expedite dealing with the item during the meeting.

5. MINUTES - 12TH MAY 2022 (Pages 7 - 12)

To be confirmed as a correct record and signed by the Chair.

6. ANNOUNCEMENTS FROM THE CHAIR OF THE COUNCIL OR FROM THE CHIEF EXECUTIVE

These are matters of information for Members of the Council. No decisions will be required arising from the announcements.

7. TO ANNOUNCE ANY URGENT BUSINESS AGREED BY THE CHAIR

If there is any urgent business arising since the formal agenda was published, the Chair will announce this and give reasons why it has been agreed for consideration at this meeting. In making this decision, the Chair will, where practicable, have consulted with the Leaders of the Political Groups. Any documentation on urgent business will be

circulated at the meeting, if not made available previously.

8. QUESTIONS, STATEMENTS, PETITIONS AND DEPUTATIONS FROM THE PUBLIC

The Democratic Services Manager will announce any submissions received. The Council will be invited to decide what action it wishes to take, if any, on the matters raised in these submissions. As the questions received and the answers given will be circulated in written form there is no requirement for them to be read out at the meeting. The questions and answers will be published with the draft minutes.

9. YOUTH JUSTICE PLAN 2022-23 (Pages 13 - 56)

The Local Authority has a statutory duty, in partnership with Health, Police and Probation, to produce an annual Youth Justice Plan. The Plan sets out how services are to be organised and funded and what functions they will carry out to prevent youth offending and re-offending across Bath and North East Somerset. The Plan will be submitted to the Youth Justice Board for England and Wales.

10. B&NES FOOD EQUITY ACTION PLAN 2022 - 2025 (Pages 57 - 86)

B&NES Fair Food Alliance has been in operation since March 2020 and this report reflects on the achievements of the alliance since its last report to Council (January 2021) and, following a review of progress and consultation with stakeholders, presents its refreshed priorities and action plan for the period 2022 – 2025.

11. POLICY DEVELOPMENT & SCRUTINY ANNUAL REPORT (Pages 87 - 102)

The Annual Report is attached, which provides an opportunity to highlight some of the positive work carried out by the Panels and Committee both internally and externally, and particularly with partners and agencies involved with scrutiny throughout the year.

12. CONSTITUTION REFRESH (Pages 103 - 494)

In November 2021, Council tasked the Constitution Working Group (CWG) with reviewing the Council's Constitution and recommending an updated version, which is attached.

13. TREASURY MANAGEMENT OUTTURN REPORT 2021/22 (Pages 495 - 514)

This report gives details of performance against the Council's Treasury Management Strategy and Annual Investment Plan for 2021/22.

14. CLIMATE & ECOLOGY BILL - MOTION FROM LIBERAL DEMOCRAT GROUP (Pages 515 - 516)

15. STANDING UP FOR RESPONSIBLE TAX CONDUCT - MOTION FROM CLLR KUMAR (Pages 517 - 518)

16. BRISTOL AIRPORT EXPANSION - CROSS PARTY MOTION FROM LIBERAL DEMOCRAT, CONSERVATIVE & LABOUR GROUPS (Pages 519 - 520)

17. COUNCIL TAX SURCHARGE - MOTION FROM CONSERVATIVE GROUP (Pages 521 - 522)
18. QUESTIONS, STATEMENTS, PETITIONS AND DEPUTATIONS FROM COUNCILLORS

The Democratic Services Manager will announce any submissions received. The Council will be invited to decide what action it wishes to take, if any, on the matters raised in these submissions. As the questions received and the answers given will be circulated in written form there is no requirement for them to be read out at the meeting. The questions and answers will be published with the draft minutes.

The Committee Administrator for this meeting is Jo Morrison who can be contacted on 01225 394358.

This page is intentionally left blank

BATH AND NORTH EAST SOMERSET COUNCIL

MINUTES OF COUNCIL MEETING

Thursday, 12th May, 2022

Present:- **Councillors** Rob Appleyard, Sarah Bevan, Colin Blackburn, Alison Born, Shelley Bromley, Neil Butters, Vic Clarke, Sue Craig, Paul Crossley, Chris Dando, Jess David, Tom Davies, Sally Davis, Winston Duguid, Mark Elliott, Michael Evans, Andrew Furse, Kevin Guy, Liz Hardman, Joel Hirst, Lucy Hodge, Duncan Hounsell, Shaun Hughes, Dr Eleanor Jackson, Grant Johnson, Dr Kumar, Matt McCabe, Hal MacFie, Ruth Malloy, Paul May, Robin Moss, Paul Myers, Michelle O'Doherty, Lisa O'Brien, Bharat Pankhania, June Player, Vic Pritchard, Manda Rigby, Dine Romero, Mark Roper, Richard Samuel, Brian Simmons, Alastair Singleton, Shaun Stephenson-McGall, Karen Walker, Sarah Warren, Karen Warrington, Ryan Wills and Joanna Wright

Apologies for absence: **Councillors** Tim Ball, Gerry Curran, Douglas Deacon, Alan Hale, Steve Hedges, Sarah Moore, Bruce Shearn, Andy Wait, Chris Watt and David Wood

1 EMERGENCY EVACUATION PROCEDURE

The Democratic Services Manager drew attention to the emergency evacuation procedure.

2 ELECTION OF CHAIRMAN 2022/23

It was proposed by Councillor Kevin Guy, seconded by Councillor Vic Pritchard, and supported by Councillors Karen Walker and Robin Moss and then

RESOLVED that Councillor Shaun Stephenson Mc-Gall be elected Chairman of the Council for the Council year 2022/23.

Councillor Shaun Stephenson Mc-Gall made and signed his Declaration of Acceptance of Office, received the Chain of Office from Councillor Lisa O'Brien and then addressed the Council. During his speech, Councillor Stephenson Mc-Gall indicated that his preferred form of address was Chair. He thanked Members for their support and confidence in him, thanked Councillor O'Brien for chairing Council for the previous year and thanked the residents of Oldfield and Oldfield Park for continuing to support him. He looked forward to the varied role upholding the Constitution, representing residents and conducting citizenship ceremonies. He would be supporting the Armed Forces community covenant and Armed Forces week, championing the work of Parish and Town Councils and helping the community celebrate the Platinum Jubilee. As the first LGBT Chair of Council, he looked forward to celebrating Pride and LGBT History month, as an expression of the diversity of the community. He pledged to visit as many wards as possible, accompanied by the local councillor, to gain a better understanding of local issues. Climate Emergency issues would be at the centre of all his work. He concluded by celebrating democracy, all the more important with current global events, and in this spirit of mutual respect and tolerance, he presented a gift of a book to Councillors Guy, Pritchard, Walker, Moss and Wright which suggests ways of reducing polarisation and bringing people together.

FROM THIS STAGE OF THE PROCEEDINGS, COUNCILLOR SHAUN STEPHENSON MC-GALL PRESIDED AT THE MEETING.

3 APPOINTMENT OF VICE-CHAIRMAN 2022-23

It was proposed by Councillor Karen Walker, seconded by Councillor Kevin Guy, and unanimously

RESOLVED that Councillor June Player be elected Vice-Chairman of the Council for the Council year 2022-23.

Councillor June Player made and signed her Declaration of Acceptance of Office, received the Chain of Office from Councillor Shaun Stephenson Mc-Gall and thanked the Council for her appointment.

4 MINUTES - 25TH MARCH 2022

On a motion from Councillor Kevin Guy, seconded by Councillor Eleanor Jackson, it was unanimously

RESOLVED that the minutes of March 25th 2022 are approved as a correct record and signed by the Chair.

5 DECLARATIONS OF INTEREST

There were none.

6 ANNOUNCEMENTS FROM THE CHAIR OF THE COUNCIL OR FROM THE CHIEF EXECUTIVE

Councillor Shaun Stephenson Mc-Gall presented Councillor Lisa O'Brien with her past Chairman's badge.

It was proposed by Councillor Vic Pritchard, seconded by Councillor Kevin Guy and supported by Councillors Karen Walker and Robin Moss and

RESOLVED that this Council places on record its appreciation of the services performed by Councillor Lisa O'Brien in the office of Chairman of the Council for 2021-22.

Councillor Lisa O'Brien then addressed the Council. She acknowledged it had been a challenging year chairing Council on zoom, thanked officers and her Vice-Chair for their support. She mentioned a few of the grants she had been pleased to award during her year, such as to a music organisation combatting loneliness and isolation, the Scouts for new equipment, funding for a children's catch-up maths group and a new Mums group. She highlighted a number of important ceremonies she had been privileged to attend, including a tree planting ceremony for the Holocaust and welcoming Covid heroes to the Guildhall. One of the most enjoyable and important tasks was to preside over Citizenship ceremonies.

On conclusion, Councillor O'Brien then took a seat in the body of the Chamber.

The Chair then;

1. Asked everyone to turn off their mobile phone or switch to silent to avoid disrupting the meeting;
2. Reminded Members that the traffic light system would be used for timing speeches; and
3. Announced that the meeting was being webcast and invited anyone who did not wish to be filmed to make themselves known to the camera operators.

7 TO ANNOUNCE ANY URGENT BUSINESS AGREED BY THE CHAIR

There was none.

8 APPOINTMENT OF COMMITTEES AND PANELS & OTHER ASSOCIATED BUSINESS

The Council considered the Annual business report, which invites Members to establish their non-executive and regulatory Committee arrangements for the Council Year May 2022 to May 2023.

On a motion from Councillor Kevin Guy, seconded by Councillor Vic Pritchard, it was unanimously

RESOLVED to

1. Approve the structure for non-executive and regulatory decision making and Policy Development & Scrutiny working (set out in current form in Appendix 1 of the report);
2. Accordingly, appoint those bodies with membership, terms of reference and delegated powers as set out in the Constitution (and with any necessary amendments arising from this meeting);
3. Approve the allocation of seats on those Committees and Panels (such seats to be filled in accordance with the nominations made by the political groups);
4. Appoint to chair each committee and panel those Councillors as may from time to time be nominated by the political group to whom the chairmanship of the body is allocated;
5. Authorise the Monitoring Officer to fill any casual vacancies in membership of all the bodies constituted and vacancy in the office of Chair of such bodies in accordance with the wishes of the political groups;
6. Determine the bodies on which co-opted and independent members are to have seats, as either voting or non-voting members and appoint such members accordingly (current arrangements are set out in Appendix 1 of the report);

7. Note the arrangements for the conduct of Cabinet business, as set out in section 5 of the report;
8. Note the activity of the Member Advocates, as set out in Appendix 2 to the report, and agree the advocate title change from 'Biodiversity' to 'Green Infrastructure & Nature Recovery';
9. Instruct the Monitoring Officer, in consultation with Group Leaders, to make appointments on non-executive outside bodies and note that the Leader or Cabinet Members will do so for executive outside bodies, where such vacancies arise;
10. Note the calendar of meeting dates that has been prepared up to May 2023 which is available on the Council's website;
11. Authorise the Monitoring Officer to make and publicise any amendment to the Council's Constitution required, or take any other necessary action, as a result of decisions taken at this meeting on this and other reports within the agenda, or otherwise as required by law.

9 CONSTITUTION REVIEW - DISPUTED ISSUES

The Council considered a report covering three issues highlighted during the Constitution review work on which the Constitution Working group could not agree, for full Council to consider.

Councillor Richard Samuel, in summing up, acknowledged the strength of feeling and suggested the Constitution Working group would look at how it could be ensured that there is no reduction in public access for questions and statements.

On a motion from Councillor Richard Samuel, seconded by Councillor Joel Hirst, it was

RESOLVED to

1. Agree the use of 'Chair' as the default terminology within the revised Constitution and confirms that the principle of allowing individual Chairs of bodies to choose how they wish to be addressed in meetings should remain.
2. Confirm that there should be no change to the principle which requires the full text of a statement to a Council meeting from a member of the public or a councillor to be submitted in writing by the published deadline for registering this intention.
3. Agree that the expression of this principle in Part 4 (A) Rule 34 of the Council's Constitution be clarified, as follows:

"Councillors and members of the Public have the right to put forward petitions and statements at a Council meeting. The submission must be relevant to the Council and/or the Bath & North East Somerset area. All statements (including those supporting a petition) must be submitted in writing (this to include transmission by email) and must be lodged with the Monitoring Officer

no later than close of business 2 clear working days before the day of the meeting at which the submission is to be made (e.g. Monday 5pm for a meeting on a Thursday).”

4. Note that Councillors have no involvement in ‘vetting’ statements in advance of meetings, and that all Councillors on a committee/panel/body to which a statement will be made receive them at the same point before the meeting.
5. Note that when a statement is received, officers will check that it does not breach the requirements listed in the Constitution, and that if it does so and time permits, they will work with the person to try and enable them to make a statement that complies with the rules.
6. Note that the rationale for having sight of statements in advance will enable Councillors to have the opportunity to consider the issues raised, in order to respond in a meaningful way and ask pertinent questions: otherwise, Members have little option but to thank the speaker. It also enables the Monitoring Officer or their staff to check that statements comply with the rules above.
7. Recommend that the Constitution Working Group consider a mechanism by which public speakers can receive a formal response to their statements, within a reasonable time.
8. Note that Democratic Services will endeavour to assist and support people who are disadvantaged through protected characteristics under the Equalities Act, discussing any specific particular difficulties with someone in this situation and finding ways to overcome those, as they have always done as part of their responsibilities under the Act.
9. Request that the Monitoring Officer produce guidelines on the acceptable forms for written statements (for example, to clarify whether bullet points are acceptable), and that Council should consider these as part of the Constitution Review report in July 2022; and
10. Confirm that the existing principle of not considering political group motions at the Annual General meeting of Council is intended to cover the Annual General Meeting in any form, and therefore should not be compromised by holding an ordinary meeting following the Annual General Meeting.

[Notes:

1. *The above resolution was carried on a split vote as set out below;*

<i>Resolution 1</i>	<i>- Unanimous</i>
<i>Resolutions 2–9</i>	<i>- Councillors in favour – 33, Councillors against - 16</i>
<i>Resolution 10</i>	<i>- Councillors in favour – 42, Councillors abstaining - 7.</i>

2. *During debate, an amendment had been moved by Councillor Robin Moss and seconded by Councillor Vic Pritchard to delete recommendations 2 – 9 and replace with the words “There is no requirement for any written copy to be provided prior to addressing council meetings”. This was lost on a named vote;*

Councillors in favour: *Councillors Vic Clarke, Chris Dando, Sally Davis, Michael Evans, Liz Hardman, Eleanor Jackson, Grant Johnson, Yukteshwar Kumar, Paul May, Robin Moss, Paul*

Myers, Lisa O'Brien, June Player, Vic Pritchard, Brian Simmons, Karen Warrington, Joanna Wright.

Councillors against: Councillors Rob Appleyard, Sarah Bevan, Colin Blackburn, Alison Born, Shelley Bromley, Neil Butters, Sue Craig, Paul Crossley, Jess David, Tom Davies, Winston Duguid, Mark Elliott, Andy Furse, Kevin Guy, Joel Hirst, Lucy Hodge, Duncan Hounsell, Shaun Hughes, Hal McFie, Ruth Malloy, Matt McCabe, Michelle O'Doherty, Bharat Pankhania, Manda Rigby, Dine Romero, Mark Roper, Richard Samuel, Alastair Singleton, Shaun Stephenson McGall, Karen Walker, Sarah Warren and Ryan Wills.]

10 QUESTIONS, STATEMENTS, PETITIONS AND DEPUTATIONS FROM THE PUBLIC

Zhenya Shkil made a statement on behalf of *Bath Stands with Ukraine* suggesting ways in which the Council could give support to a type of twinning arrangement with a specific area in Ukraine. The full statement is available attached to the minutes. Councillor Vic Pritchard asked Ms Shkil for a little more information about the 2 areas she had mentioned, to which she replied that for various reasons, Oleksandriya (approx. 60K population) was probably the best option. The Chair thanked Ms Shkil for her statement and referred it to the Leader of Council.

Ben Reed made a statement welcoming the recent news that an operator is sought for Bath Approach golf course and hoped this would be a success story for Bath over the coming years. The full statement is available attached to the minutes. The Chair thanked Mr Reed for his statement which was referred to the relevant Cabinet Member.

11 QUESTIONS, STATEMENTS, PETITIONS AND DEPUTATIONS FROM COUNCILLORS

Councillor Yukteshwar Kumar made a statement to Council about soil degradation, and the harmful effect of this in regard to environmental issues, food quality and financial impact. He urged the Council to put pressure on national Government to take action to save British soil. A full copy of the statement is attached to the minutes. The Chair thanked Councillor Kumar for his statement, which was referred to the relevant Cabinet Member.

The meeting ended at 8.49 pm

Chair

Date Confirmed and Signed

Prepared by Democratic Services

Bath & North East Somerset Council		
MEETING:	Council	
MEETING DATE:	21 July 2022	
TITLE:	Youth Justice Plan	
WARD:	All	
AN OPEN PUBLIC ITEM		
List of attachments to this report:		
Youth Justice Plan 2022-23		

1 THE ISSUE

- 1.1 The Local Authority has a statutory duty, in partnership with Health, Police and Probation, to produce an annual Youth Justice Plan. The Plan sets out how services are to be organised and funded and what functions they will carry out to prevent youth offending and re-offending across Bath and North East Somerset. The Plan will be submitted to the Youth Justice Board for England and Wales.

2 RECOMMENDATION

Council is asked to:

- 2.1 Agree the Youth Justice Plan fulfils the requirements of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 and can be submitted to the Youth Justice Board for England and Wales.
- 2.2 Adopt the Youth Justice Plan as part of the Council's Policy and Budget Framework that can be accommodated within the Council budget.
- 2.3 Note that the Youth Offending Service Management Board is responsible for ensuring delivery and ask the relevant Development and Scrutiny Panel to oversee performance.

3 THE REPORT

- 3.1 The principal, statutory aim of the youth justice system is to prevent youth offending by 10-17 year olds. The Youth Justice Plan includes the latest performance indicators for work with children at risk of offending and re-offending and sets out how services will be resourced and delivered in 2022-23.

3.2 Actions in the work plan will help to make Bath and North East Somerset a safer place and support children to lead crime-free lives with better prospects for their futures.

3.3 The Youth Justice Plan 2022-23 is attached as an appendix to this report.

4 STATUTORY CONSIDERATIONS

4.1 Preparation of a Youth Justice Plan is required under S.40 of the Crime and Disorder Act 1998. The national Youth Justice Board for England and Wales has published guidelines for its completion and submission.

4.2 The Council is the lead partner in meeting the statutory requirement under S.39 of the same legislation, to establish a multi-agency team made up of members from Police, Social Services, Education, Probation and Health, to prevent youth offending. Work with children at risk of offending or re-offending takes full account of their status as children and prioritises safeguarding them within their local communities as well as in their family settings.

4.3 By virtue of the Local Authorities (functions and responsibilities) (England) regulations 2000 (as amended) certain plans and strategies, which together make up the Council's budgetary and policy framework, must be approved by full Council, as reflected in the Council's constitution. These include the Youth Justice Plan.

4.4 The constitution requires that the Executive's proposals in relation to any such policy, plan or strategy be submitted to full Council and that, in reaching a decision, the Council may adopt the Executive's proposals, amend them, refer them back to the Executive for consideration or, in principle, submit its own proposals in their place.

5 RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS (FINANCE, PROPERTY, PEOPLE)

5.1 The above statutory partners share responsibility for resourcing the Youth Offending Service. The Council makes the greatest contribution, together with significant in-kind support including access to buildings and finance, IT and human resources support. In 2022-23, the Council will contribute £425,192 (52%) for staffing and the pooled budget, as part of a total budget of at least £814,800. This is a small reduction of £1,249 on last year's Council contribution, resulting from additional contributions to national insurance and salary increases and reductions for salary turnover, as allocated to all budgets. The contribution is within the existing Council approved budget.

5.2 The work of the Service also depends on a core national grant from the Ministry of Justice, via the Youth Justice Board. Additionally, it will receive delegated funding from the Ministry of Justice via the Youth Custody Service, to contribute towards any secure remand places for children. It also anticipates receiving some 'Turnaround' funding to support preventative work but the details of this are not yet available. The Police and Crime Commissioner's direct contribution continues to be £10,217.

5.3 Submission of a Youth Justice Plan and quarterly data returns are conditions for receipt of the Youth Justice Board grant.

6 RISK MANAGEMENT

- 6.1 A risk assessment related to the issue and recommendations has been undertaken, in compliance with the Council's decision-making risk management guidance.

7 EQUALITIES

- 7.1 An Equalities Impact Assessment has been undertaken and it has confirmed workstreams already identified within the Youth Justice Plan including:

- addressing disproportionality amongst children from Black, Asian and Minority Ethnic backgrounds and children with Special Educational Needs.
- enquiring into the reducing number of girls entering the youth justice system and whether the needs of girls who have offended are being met.
- increasing the proportion of staff who have had relevant in-year training.

8 CLIMATE CHANGE

- 8.1 A number of children who work with the Youth Offending Service undertake community reparation projects to help develop their understanding of the harm they have caused others and to make indirect amends. These projects include working with local organisations which improve the environment and animal welfare, and working on the Service's own allotment. This work helps improve the environment and may make a small contribution to the achievement of carbon neutrality by 2030.

9 OTHER OPTIONS CONSIDERED

- 9.1 None

10 CONSULTATION

- 10.1 This report has been approved by the Section 151 Officer and the Monitoring Officer.
- 10.2 The Youth Justice Plan draws on feedback from children who worked with the Youth Offending Service during 2021, and from their parents/carers.
- 10.3 The Plan has been approved by the Youth Offending Service Management Board and members of the Youth Offending Service itself.

Contact person	Sally Churchyard, Head of Young People's Prevention Services and the Violence Reduction Unit Sally_Churchyard@bathnes.gov.uk Mobile: 07980 998711
Background papers	None
Please contact the report author if you need to access this report in an alternative format	

This page is intentionally left blank

Bath and North East Somerset Youth Justice Plan 2022-23



Service	Bath and North East Somerset Youth Offending Service
Head of Service	Sally Churchyard, Head of Young People's Prevention Service
Chair of Board	Mary Kearney-Knowles, Director of Children and Education

CONTENTS

1. Introduction.....	3
2. Vision and Strategy	3
3. Local Context.....	4
4. Child First.....	5
5. Voice of the Child	6
6. Governance, Leadership and Partnership Arrangements	6
7. Resources and Services	9
8. Progress on Previous Plan	9
9. Performance and Priorities	10
10. National Standards	19
11. Challenges, Risks and Issues	20
12. Service Improvement Plan.....	21
13. Evidence-based practice and innovation	22
14. Work Plan	23
15. Approval and sign off.....	27
16. Appendix 1: Youth Offending Service Management Board Membership	28
17. Appendix 2: Youth Offending Service Structure Chart	29
18. Appendix 3: Staff individual characteristics	30
19. Appendix 4: Resources Summary (£s)	31
20. Appendix 5: Review of Service Business and Improvement Plan 2021-22 ...	32
21. Appendix 6: Feedback from Out of Court Disposal Audit.....	35
22. Appendix 7: Feedback	36
23. Appendix 8: Glossary of terms used in this Plan	37

Cover picture: Koestler Arts Awards 2021 Bronze Award winning photograph taken by a B&NES child on the theme of “Lockdown Windows.” It also pays tribute to a recently retired colleague.

1. Introduction

Children caught up in the youth justice system, whether harmed by others and/or as a consequence of their own behaviour, are amongst the most vulnerable in Bath and North East Somerset. Some are already known to wider children's services including Children's Social Care, because of the difficulties they face; others find it hard to access education and health services and do not benefit from the full universal support intended to give all children a good start in life. This has only been made harder by two years of living through a national pandemic.

The Youth Offending Service (YOS) works to a statutory responsibility to prevent children from offending and does this in an age-appropriate way that takes account of their individual stories including any adverse childhood experiences, discrimination and/or exploitation by others. Services are individually tailored to help them and their families build on their strengths, make positive changes and look forward to more promising futures. At the same time, the impact of children's offending on individuals and communities is recognised and those harmed are given a voice and opportunity to become involved in restorative work.

This Plan has been written in accordance with the Crime and Disorder Act 1998 and national guidance from the Youth Justice Board and sets out how services to prevent children's offending will be provided and resourced locally in 2022-23. It will be submitted to the Youth Justice Board and published in accordance with the directions of the Secretary of State. It draws on learning from children, their parents/carers and those harmed by their offending. It has been developed and agreed by staff in the Youth Offending Service and the partner agencies that make up its Management Board.

2. Vision and Strategy

The local vision in the local Children and Young People's Plan is for all children to enjoy their childhood and be well prepared for adult life including by keeping safe, keeping healthy, having fair life chances and by being engaged citizens within their own community. This is underpinned by a commitment to support parents/carers to take responsibility for understanding and meeting their children's needs, enjoying their childhood with them and preparing them for adult life. The local Community Safety and Safeguarding Partnership upholds the importance of 'think family, think community,' themes which are also evident in the work undertaken.

The Council is lead partner in the multi-agency response to children at risk of offending. Its Corporate Strategy 2020-2024 sets out an overarching purpose to 'improve people's lives. Within this, there are two core policies: to tackle the climate emergency and give people a bigger say. The vision for all children and young people is that they live in safe, happy and healthy families and communities. Important components of this are:

- Improving children's lives through strong relationships and positive connections at the earliest opportunity
- Building strong foundations for children's futures
- The right help at the right time by the right service
- Leaders and managers inspire and support staff to do their best for our children

Youth justice priorities for the year ahead are to strengthen participation, respond to recent learning about disproportionality in the youth justice system, embed trauma informed and systemic practice in the work of all staff, address exploitation and support staff to undertake this work including by continuing the journey of recovery from the Covid-19 pandemic. These will all support the statutory responsibility to prevent children's offending and contribute towards building safer communities for all.

Local ambitions are consistent with the YJB outcomes:

- Reduce the number of children in the youth justice system;
- Reduce reoffending by children in the youth justice system;
- Improve the safety and wellbeing of children in the youth justice system;
- Improve outcomes for children in the youth justice system

3. Local Context

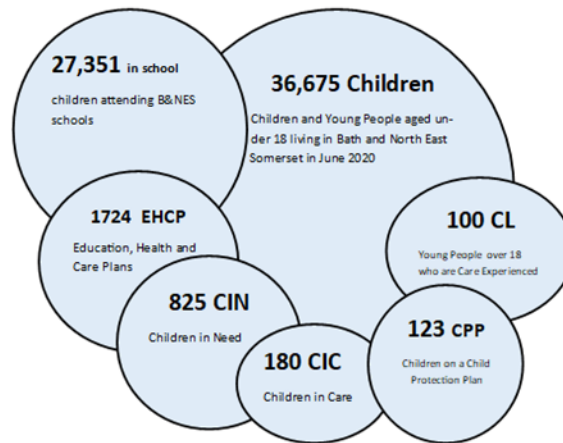
Bath and North East Somerset (B&NES) was formed in 1996 as a small Unitary Authority, covering approximately 135 square miles. In mid-2019 there were 193,282 residents and the Office for National Statistics projects that the population will increase to 202,821 by 2030, an increase of nearly 5% from 2020.

Bath forms the main urban centre, acting as the commercial and recreational centre of the district, where just over 50% of the population live. It is one of the few cities in the world to be named a UNESCO World Heritage Site. Keynsham lies to the west of Bath, a traditional market town with a population of just over 9% of the total population of B&NES. Midsomer Norton and Radstock are small historic market towns, located in the south of the district with approximately 6% of the total population split between them. They both have a strong heritage of mining and industry stemming from the North Somerset coalfield. The rest of the district consists of 69 diverse rural communities of varying sizes and characteristics, including a line of villages along the foothills of the Mendips, the Chew Valley and Cotswolds villages around Bath.

B&NES has a disproportionately high number of people aged between 20-24 highlighting the area's student population, with two Universities and a Further Education College on two main sites. Between 2001 and 2019, the growth in the 20-24 age range accounted for nearly 40% of the area's population growth. B&NES is less ethnically diverse than the UK as a whole, but more so than the wider South West. 91% of local residents define their ethnicity as White British. This is followed by 4.2% defining as White Other and 1.6% defining as Asian. From the school census data in January 2021, 83.2% children define themselves as White British. No data is held on religion. In 2020, 87% of the population were either very or fairly satisfied with their local area as a place to live, which is a 3% increase from 2019.

B&NES is one of the least deprived Authorities in the country, ranking 247 out of 326 English Authorities. Overall levels of resident qualifications are high in B&NES with 53% educated to NVQ4 and above compared to 41% regionally and 43% nationally. Workplace wages are higher in B&NES at £439 median weekly gross pay compared to £434 for the South West region, but lower than £482 for England. Economic activity in B&NES remains just higher than the national average, at 85% compared to 79% nationally. Despite this, there are pockets of high deprivation with an estimated 7,400 workless households in B&NES (12.9%) compared to 13.9% nationally. The claimant count (those claiming Jobseekers Allowance (JSA), NI credits and Universal Credit (UC) who are out of work) was 5,065 (4.1%) in B&NES in March 2021, lower than the South West and England figures (5.1% and 6.5% respectively).

Between September 2020 and December 2021, there were the following numbers of children. The YOS worked with 89 different children on 107 different interventions in this same time period.



4. Child First

The 'child first' principle is becoming established in the youth justice system nationally and locally, guided by longstanding research and scholarship¹. The key components are:

- a. **Seeing children as children**, prioritising their best interests, recognising their particular needs, capacities, rights, and potential. In B&NES, trauma informed training and participation in the trauma informed Enhanced Case Management initiative has focused attention on the importance of assessment, planning and delivery taking full account of the developmental needs of each individual child. Reducing caseloads enables practitioners to create bespoke packages of support and provide a lot of hands-on support where needed, for example, in offering lifts to school when children are reintegrating.
- b. **Developing pro-social identity** for positive child outcomes, promoting children's individual strengths and capacities in order to develop their pro-social identity for sustainable desistance, helping to keep communities safer and see fewer people harmed. In B&NES, the relationship with each child is fundamental to the work undertaken, empowering them to fulfil their potential. Their involvement in innovative reparation projects enables them to contribute to the wider community.
- c. **Collaborating with children**, encouraging their active participation, engagement, and wider social inclusion. In B&NES there is longstanding practice of involving children in producing and reviewing plans for how we work with them, recruiting staff and producing materials for use with other children. This year, there is a commitment to take this further and give children a stronger voice, learning from other areas about how they are doing this and working with the Local Authority's Youth Ambassadors.
- d. **Promoting diversion**, promoting a childhood outside the justice system using pre-emptive prevention, diversion, and minimal intervention. To achieve this, work needs to minimise the stigma of contact with the youth justice system which can in itself be a risk factor for becoming further involved. In B&NES, the proportion of children diverted through outcome 22 and Community Resolutions has increased in the last year.

The Management Board considered the implications of a child first system at its recent awayday and affirmed its commitment to these principles. Within the Board and the Service, there has been a shift in terminology, including greater use of the term 'children' and a current consultation with children and staff on re-naming the Youth Offending Service. In recent

¹ Professor Stephen Case, Professor Kevin Haines, University of South Wales, and Professor Neal Hazel, University of Salford

discussions with staff about how the Management Board can support youth justice work, they identified a number of child-first issues in the Service's work with the Police and Courts.

5. Voice of the Child

Children have a right to be heard and involved in decisions that affect them and B&NES YOS is committed to promoting their effective participation² as set out in the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child and in B&NES' own approaches to participation. This always begins with the individual work undertaken with children in ensuring they fully understand the purpose and have their views and ideas included. In B&NES, quality assurance and audit processes always check the voice of the child is clearly reflected in all assessments and plans. Individual pieces of work sometimes provide opportunity for children to produce materials that can be offered to others to work on; for example, the recent production of a leaflet about the risk of being drawn into county lines with some very practical ideas about how to respond.

The YOS is also keen to hear the voice of young adults who have transitioned to the Probation Service, in order that professionals can understand how best to support this. One young adult illustrated the importance of building positive relationships and carefully considering allocation of work - "If you want to make the change to Probation work for young people, I would say the most important thing is to match the young person to the Probation Officer. If they get on, then it will make a difference. You know sometimes you just can't get on with someone – if that had happened to me, to be honest I may not have come to appointments. Looking back, I have had the easiest experience because I got on with both my YOS Worker and my Probation Officer."

The YOS includes children in practitioner staff recruitment wherever possible, usually through establishing separate children's Panels. This gives confidence that staff are accepted by children and engage well with them. However, the YOS is keen to build on this and find other significant ways in which children's voices can be heard in the delivery of services and is actively reviewing practice in other areas. B&NES has participation standards which the YOS audits itself against in order to keep learning alive.

6. Governance, Leadership and Partnership Arrangements

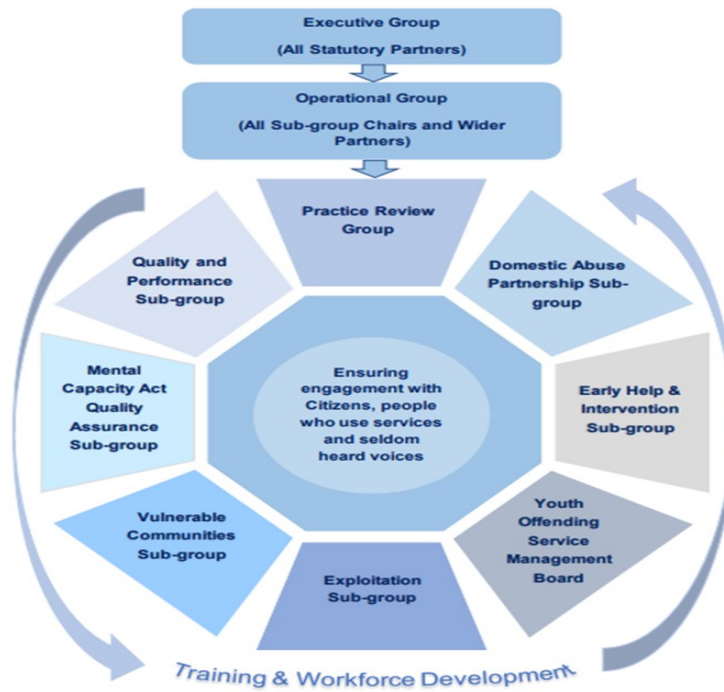
a. Overarching management arrangements

The YOS is situated within the Local Authority, with the Chief Executive holding lead responsibility for delivery of youth justice services and management resting within Children's Services as part of the wider People and Communities Department. The YOS Head of Service reports to the Director of Children and Education and is a member of the Children's Service Management Group. She also holds responsibility for the Violence Reduction Unit and for some aspects of the Local Authority's early help agenda, including use of Early Help Assessments. An annual report is made to the Children, Adults, Health and Wellbeing Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel and the Youth Justice Plan is presented to Cabinet and Council for authorisation. The YOS Management Board also reports annually to the Health and Wellbeing Board, contributing to the outcome 'children and young people are safe from crime.'

² Effective participation must be transparent and informative, voluntary, respectful, relevant to children and young people, child-friendly, inclusive, supported by training, safe and sensitive to risk and accountable

b. Governance arrangements

Multi-agency strategic oversight of youth justice services is provided at several levels. Its dedicated Management Board (see 2.3) operates as a sub-group of the B&NES Community Safety and Safeguarding Partnership (BCSSP). This partnership embraces the functions of the previous Local Children's Safeguarding Board, Adult Safeguarding Board and Community Safety Partnership, recognising their shared responsibilities and interfaces. It operates across all ages, being well placed to address the challenges of transition, and encourages a focus on families and communities.



The chair of the YOS Management Board provides the BCSSP Operational Group with quarterly updates of key achievements, outcomes and challenges and links the work of the YOS with other initiatives and developments. During the last year, the Board escalated the need for oversight of all activity to address equalities issues across the partnership.

Specific links include:

- The YOS contributes to and benefits from the work of the Training and Development Sub Group.
- The YOS Head of Service sits on the Early Help and Intervention Sub Group, the Domestic Abuse Partnership and the Exploitation Sub Group and helps to integrate their work with the work of the YOS and its Management Board.
- She also chairs the Serious Violence Steering Group (the local Violence Reduction Unit) which formally reports to the Exploitation Sub Group and directly to the BCSSP Operational Group and makes regular briefings to the other groups she attends.
- The YOS Management board makes quarterly reports to the BCSSP.
- The YOS reports any high-risk incidents through the BCSSP in addition to following national reporting requirements.

c. The YOS Management Board and its Sub Groups

The YOS Management Board includes all required statutory members from the Local Authority (Social Care and Education), Health (through their new integrated care arrangements), Probation (through its newly unified Probation Service) and Police. The Cabinet Member for Children's Services also attends, together with representatives from the Court, the local Further Education College, the local Health provider and the Child and Adolescent Mental Health Service. It is

chaired by the Director of Children and Education. Attendance is monitored and is generally very good from all agencies, sometimes including named substitutes, with quarterly business meetings and annual development events continuing online throughout the pandemic. New members are offered induction into the work of the YOS and their responsibilities as members of the Board, and feedback from this continues to be positive.

The Board receives annual activity and outcome reports on key areas of service delivery including Speech and Language Therapy, Nursing, Education, the Compass prevention service, Referral Order Panels, Out of Court Disposal Panels, Harmful Sexual Behaviour and the Enhanced Case Management initiative. It also receives annual reports from its three sub groups. These are the multi-agency Youth Crime Prevention Board and Custody Review Panel, both chaired by the Head of Service and each working to the relevant performance indicator. The Out of Court Disposal Panel, chaired by the YOS Operational Manager, is now formally linked to the Management Board in a similar fashion. The Board maintains Challenge and Risk Registers and receives an annual Assurance Report.

d. Strengthening the relationship between the YOS and the Management Board

There is commitment to maintaining strong links between youth justice practitioners and Board members. Practitioners are regularly invited to attend Board meetings to present case studies to evidence effective practice – and sometimes to illustrate challenges in the work undertaken and seek support in raising issues at a strategic level. They also compile and present annual reports about aspects of the work they are involved in. This gives opportunity for raising awareness and for scrutiny of work undertaken. In turn, Board members are encouraged to participate in case audits and to meet with individual practitioners to observe or discuss their work, to deepen their understanding. YOS practitioners would like to further strengthen links with the Board and have identified four areas they would like to focus on in the year ahead. These are transitions for children in Care, possible changes in Police youth justice department, influencing the delay in prosecutions and working with colleagues in the Court setting to make the experience more fitting for children.

e. Partnership arrangements

In accordance with the Crime and Disorder Act 1998, professionals from Police, Health, Social Care, Education and the National Probation Service make up the multi-agency YOS and work in an integrated way alongside a dedicated Reparation Worker who facilitates opportunities for children to make amends for their offending and two Assessment and Information Officers. One of these supports the volunteer Referral Order Panel Members and the other co-ordinates return home interviews with children who have returned from a missing episode; they both support use of Early Help Assessments across the Authority, including within the Compass. An organisational chart in the appendices summarises the posts, a number of which are part-time. The smallest post is a Probation Service Officer who supports work in the Courts and seeks feedback from children and parents/carers who have completed their work with the YOS. Case manager staff, including qualified Probation Officers and Social Workers, have key statutory functions, including the assessment and supervision of young people aged 10-17 who are subject to voluntary and conditional Out-of-Court Disposals and community and custodial Court Orders, and supporting parents/carers to strengthen their parenting skills. The Police Constable undertakes a range of tasks including facilitating information sharing but also giving those harmed a voice and an opportunity to become involved in restorative work with children if they wish to do so. This work is supplemented locally by a prevention service, Compass, which works with children aged 8-17 years who are assessed as being at high risk of offending, and with their families.

The YOS works closely with a range of partners. Those most often providing services to children at risk of offending include:

- DHI Project 28 who receive a small annual grant from the Police and Crime Commissioner as part of their Council commission. They provide substance misuse services for children

subject to Youth Alcohol and Drugs Diversion interventions and programmes for those subject to voluntary and statutory supervision.

- Youth Connect South West, commissioned by the Council, provides targeted support and access to universal youth services, together with programmes to support access to training and employment opportunities.
- Social Care's Adolescent and Criminal Exploitation Team works with children who have been exploited, some of whom are also known to the YOS. Managers in the two services endeavour to co-ordinate their work in the best interests of the children concerned, and usually identify a 'lead' worker who the child best engages with.
- The Violence Reduction Unit, including a Co-ordinator and Development Officer for the Council, a Sergeant, 2 Constables and two Police and Community Support Officers. They undertake early intervention work with children at risk of serious violence. The Violence Reduction Unit hosts a multi-agency information sharing meeting – the Partnership for Preventing Exploitation and Serious Violence. Individuals at risk of serious violence, networks and places of concern are all identified, the nature and level of risk is discussed and actions are agreed to strengthen risk management. The YOS plays an active role.

7. Resources and Services

The Youth Justice Grant is dedicated to the Youth Offending Service and expenditure is agreed annually, monitored at monthly finance meetings and overseen quarterly by the YOS Management Board. It is used in accordance with the Terms and Conditions of grant. Specifically, it is used for two administrative staff, a Deputy Team Manager, a qualified Youth Justice Officer and a Reparation Worker. The grant also covers professional subscriptions, travel costs, room hire, equipment and other related expenses.

8. Progress on Previous Plan

The Work Plan for 2021-22 has been overseen by the Management Board via regular written update reports. In March 2022, the Board confirmed all work streams had been taken forward and completed or were being actively continued. Of 25 development actions set, 14 have been completed and the rest are continuing into the new year; none have been discontinued. A summary of progress can be found in appendix 5.

9. Performance and Priorities

National Indicators

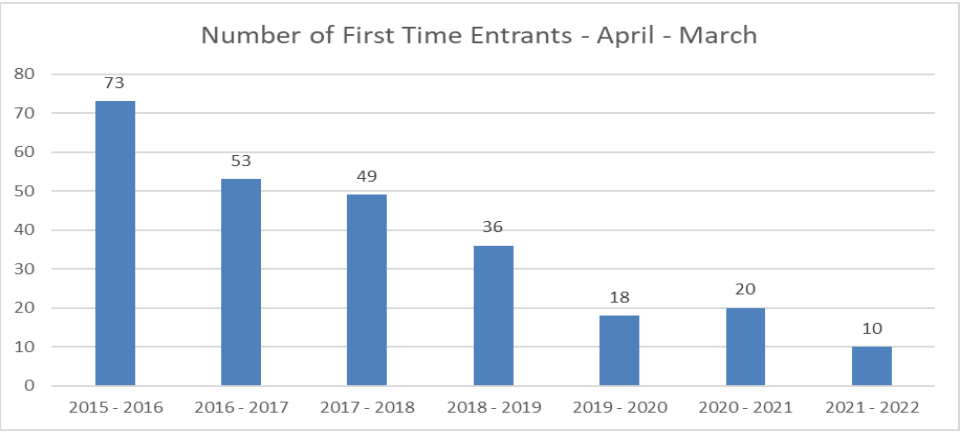
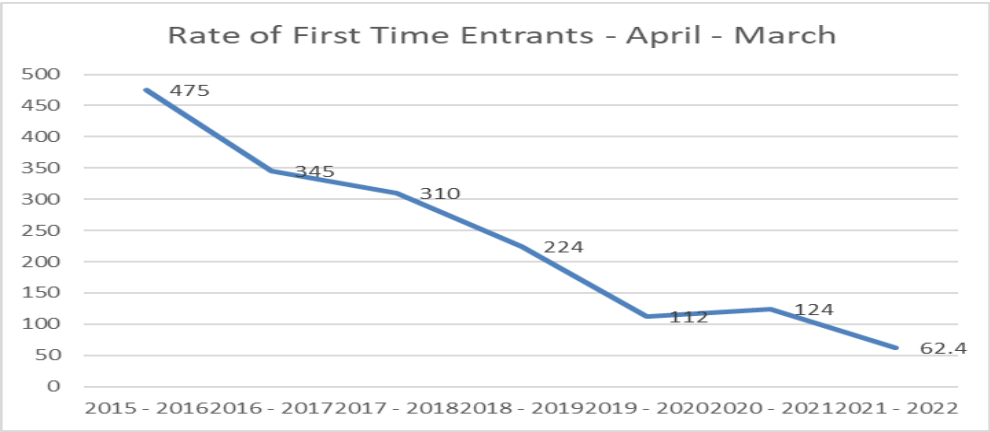
Data from the local ChildView database for the three youth justice indicators is shown here for the period April 2021 to March 2022. The latest data published by the YJB, taken from the Police National Computer, is also provided for two indicators, but this relates to earlier time periods. It is recognised that relatively low numbers of children in the justice system means the data may not be statistically significant.

a. First Time Entrants

This prevention indicator is the number of children aged 10-17 who received their first substantive outcome following an offence (Caution, Conditional Caution or Conviction) shown as a rate per 100,000 children in the general population. In recent years, the number and rate have reduced significantly, reflecting the positive impact of youth crime diversion and prevention and wider early help services which can address children’s needs and behaviour before they become problematic. The concern is that during the pandemic, opportunities to offer preventative support may have been missed and more children may enter the formal justice system in the future as a result. This is not proving to be the case at present, as the number in the youth justice system is at an all-time low. The local rate for the period April 2021- March 2022 has reduced significantly from 124 to 62.4 per notional 100,000. Low numbers mean the YJB has not published the latest data for B&NES.

This data is shared with the Youth Crime Prevention Board, together with a commentary on the characteristics of the children who have entered the justice system, to inform planning and targeting. Peer on peer violence is the most common offence (and it appears that more girls may be becoming involved although this is not yet reflected in the YOS caseload). Ethnicity is proportionate within this sample, although there is wider disproportionality and Board participants are reflecting on how they ensure services are always accessible and meet children’s individual needs. Going forward, prevention services including Compass, need to appropriately target these children.

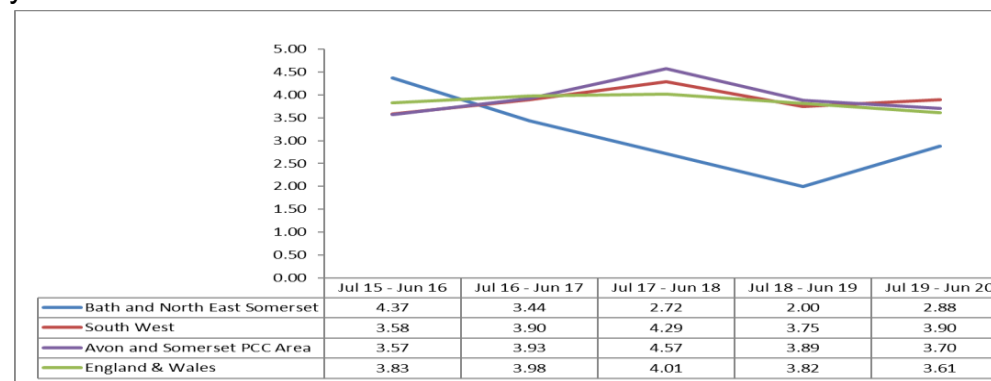
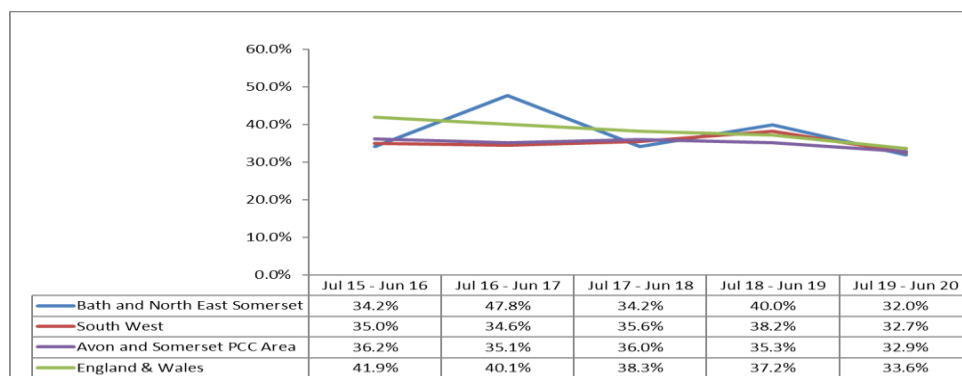
Page 26



b. Re-offending

This indicator is the rate of re-offending after 12 months by a cohort of children who received substantive outcomes (Cautions, Conditional Cautions or Convictions). It is shown as a binary rate (the overall percentage of children who re-offended) and as the average rate of new offences committed by each child who re-offended. The latest YJB data for the period July 2019 – June 2020 shows a binary rate of 32% re-offending, slightly lower (better) than the Avon and Somerset, regional and national averages but slightly higher than the ‘family’ comparator of similar areas (31.5%). The average rate of new offences committed by each child who re-offended increased considerably against the previous year’s exceptionally low rate of 2.0, but at 2.88, remains considerably lower (better) than all comparators, which range from 3.61 to 3.9.

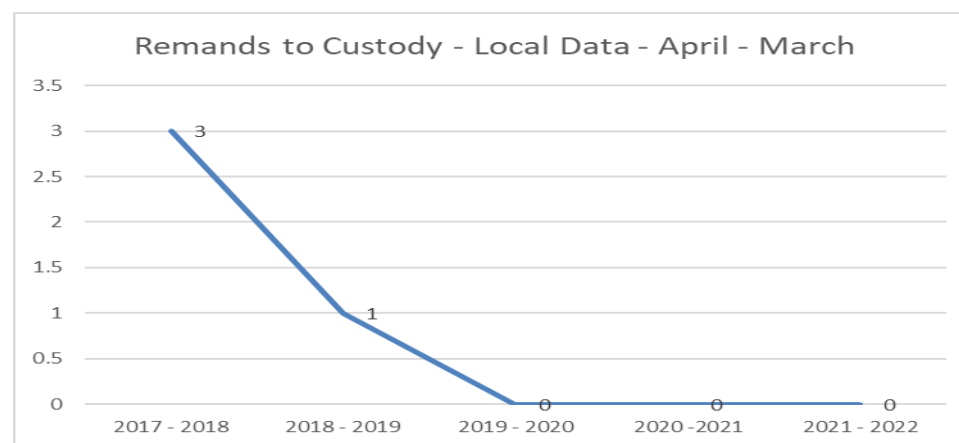
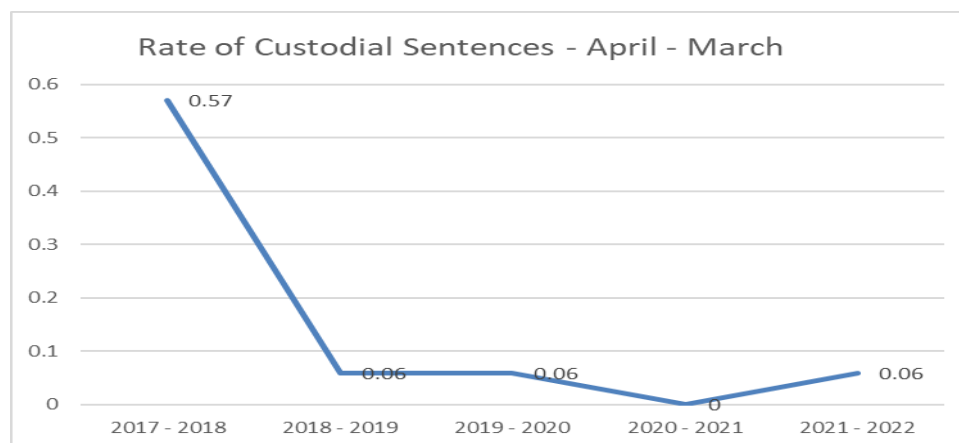
The latest local data for the April 2020 – March 2021 cohort shows an overall reduction in re-offending and in the rate of re-offending amongst those who did re-offend. Comparative data will be available later in the year.



A high proportion of this cohort have experienced adverse childhood experiences and some suffer a level of trauma as a result. There is also increasing recognition of the experience of exploitation by adults or older children into drug dealing and other criminal activity, often related to being harmed by and harming others. It is a complex picture, and they benefit from continuity of worker and programmes tailored to their individual needs including intensive supervision and inclusion in the trauma recovery initiative (the Enhanced Case Management approach). Children are notified to the National Referral Mechanism when there is evidence of exploitation and if they are confirmed as having a strong likelihood of being exploited, this information is shared with the Crown Prosecution Service and Courts to consider when reviewing and hearing cases and when sentencing. This is an important aspect of recognising their status as a child who has been groomed into offending, at the same time as understanding the need to address the impact of their behaviour on others.

c. Custody

This indicator is the number of custodial sentences passed by the Courts, presented as a rate per 1000 children aged 10-17 in the general population. This number has been reducing nationally and these reductions have been reflected locally in recent years. The local ambition remains to keep children out of custody wherever it is safe to the public to do so because outcomes for children in custody tend to be poorer than for those sentenced within the community. The multi-agency Custody Review Panel monitors outcomes, identifies learning and recommends actions in respect of children at risk of custody as part of its standard agenda; it also looks at children held overnight in Police custody and any remanded in custody – although there have been none in the latter group in 2021-22. The YOS works closely with other children's services to develop community proposals wherever it is considered safe to do so. The custodial rate has increased to 0.06 due to a single custodial sentence a year ago and means the current rate is higher than all comparators apart from the national England, and England and Wales averages. Other children at risk of custody have been sentenced in the community, evidencing that the youth justice system is working well to respond proportionally to their needs, taking victims' needs into account as well.



d. The use of custody, children leaving custody and constructive resettlement

No children in B&NES have been securely remanded for more than two years and the use of custodial sentencing remains low. There is evidence of close working with Children's Social Care to ensure support when a child returns to the community from custody and of proactively managing presenting risk including by accessing funding through the Violence Reduction Unit to support resettlement. Numbers are too low to provide characteristics as these could be identified but local partnership audits have highlighted key areas of work to be undertaken. These are being incorporated into the work plans for the YOS, the Violence Reduction Unit and the BCSSP's Exploitation Sub Group. There has been no recent experience of children leaving custody and facing accommodation issues. B&NES is part of a wider Resettlement Consortium with North Somerset, South Gloucestershire and Bristol and Voluntary sector partners, where good practice is shared and joint initiatives are taken, including the decision to become involved in the Enhanced Case Management (trauma informed) pilot.

e. Over Represented Children

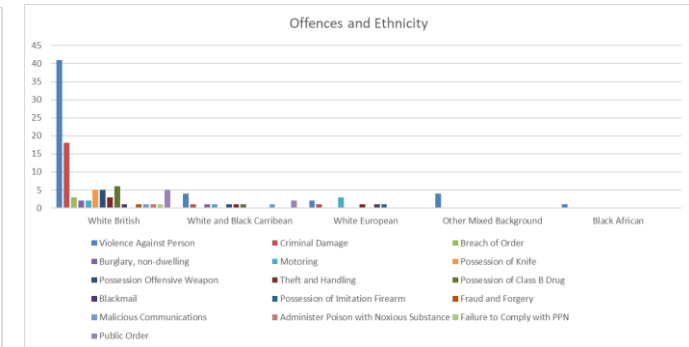
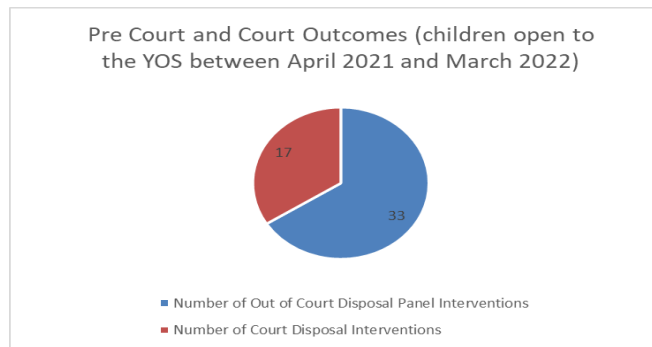
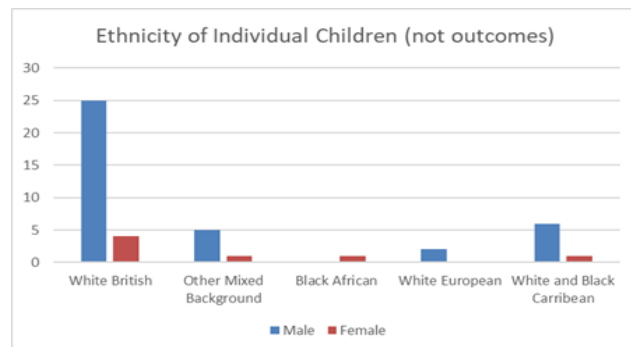
Some cohorts of children are over-represented in the youth justice system and the partnership is keen to help address the reasons for this as well as to understand how it can best support these children who may have additional needs:

Ethnicity

The population data from the 2011 census, showed there were 15,764 children in B&NES, 1,047 (7%) of whom were from Black and Asian Minority Ethnic (BAME) heritages.

For the Youth Offending Service cohort April 2021 – March 2022 there were 50 different outcomes (Court and Pre-Court) committed by 45 different children. 36% (16/45) were from Black and Asian Minority Ethnic (BAME) backgrounds and 64% (29/45) were from a White background. Most of these children received a pre-Court Disposal and 25% of received a Court Order. 59% of the White children received a Pre-Court Disposal and 41% received a Court Order. Analysis shows White children are more likely to commit serious offences (gravity score 5-8) and to be sentenced at Court. Of the 122 offences committed by this cohort, 27 (22%) were committed by children from Black and Asian Minority Ethnic backgrounds and 87% of these were male and largely committed low-level gravity offences. 95 (78%) were committed by children from a White background and 86% of these were male. The most common offence committed by all ethnic groups was Violence Against the Person, 21% by children from a Black and Asian Minority Ethnic heritage and 79% by children from a White heritage.

The children from Black and Asian Minority Ethnic Backgrounds who received a Youth Conditional Caution did so for offences that were of a serious nature such as Affray, Blackmail and Actual Bodily Harm. The offences were of a level that could have been charged to Court, so were not suitable for lower-level Community Resolution outcomes. The children from a White background who received a Youth Conditional Caution did so for offences of Affray and Criminal Damage and were also at the threshold of being charged to Court.



Whilst careful review of gravity and outcomes suggests a proportionate outcome once in the youth justice system and overall numbers are low, Black and Mixed Heritage children are very over-represented. Numbers are too low for this data to be statistically significant, but it is presented against a wider backdrop of Black, Asian and ethnic minority children being over-represented in the youth justice system in England and Wales (particularly in the custodial population) and therefore, we cannot be complacent about the experiences of children living in B&NES. Over the past two years, the YOS participated in a review of racial disproportionality in the criminal justice system in Avon and Somerset. This was commissioned by the Local Criminal Justice Board and published as Identifying Disproportionality and launched in April 2022. The report contains a number of recommendations about the recording of ethnicity of children suspended or permanently excluded from school and developing a better understanding of the links between this and becoming vulnerable to anti-social behaviour and offending, including to being groomed into county lines drug dealing and other criminal activity. and entering the justice system. A number of other recommendations about Out of Court Disposals and 'stop and search' and recruitment and retention of a representative workforce are also relevant to the YOS. The work on reducing exclusions of children from Black, Asian and ethnic minority backgrounds will be led by and the YOS Management Board will oversee the local response to all the recommendations that apply to work with children. In turn, this will be reported to the Avon and Somerset oversight arrangements led by the Chief Constable. No timescales have yet been agreed but local work is underway.

Girls

The number of girls known to the Youth Offending Service has been reducing in recent years including in this latest data period. Review of the gender breakdown of the cohort shows the number and proportion of girls remains lower than we would anticipate, given that they have made up approximately 20% of the cohort in the past. Numbers are too low to provide characteristics. Despite this, the strategic needs assessment and information sharing meetings within the Violence Reduction Unit give rise to a lot of intelligence about girls' involvement in serious violence. A SurveyMonkey has been set up to explore what is known and help understand how these girls can be safeguarded and their needs be met. The Violence Reduction Unit is leading on this work and the YOS is actively participating. There will also be a wider piece of work looking at related wellbeing and safeguarding issues, including the disproportionate rise in girls with mental health issues.

Looked After Children

The number of Looked After Children in B&NES offending has been low for a number of years and this remains the case in the latest period although the proportion is still higher than in the wider population. Numbers are too low to publish. The Custody Review Panel looks at all children held overnight in Police custody and at risk of and receiving custodial sentences and Looked After Children are particularly over-represented in these cohorts.

Education

Attendance and engagement in education, training and employment is a significant protective factor in helping children not to offend and the YOS ensures there is a focus on supporting all children who come to its attention to make improvements in these areas. The YOS has a very proactive Education Officer who acts in a consultative capacity with colleagues and takes on direct work with children. She links closely with colleagues in the Education Inclusion Service and its Director, who is the Education representative on the Management Board. There is an annual Education report to the Management Board to keep members abreast of activity, outcomes and continuing needs and issues. In the last

year, no children known to the YOS have been permanently excluded, although some who were at high risk were supported through Alternative Provision; a high proportion of them have had fixed-term suspensions from school. None were electively home educated.

School age children

In the last year, all school age children known to the YOS had education provision in place. However, more than 60% of them had low attendance/engagement with their provision. The following are examples of how the YOS has worked with schools to help improve this:

- Where a young person is a Child in Need or on a Child Protection Plan, the YOS attends CIN/Core meetings and, and if appropriate, brings a greater focus on education and support to improve attendance and engagement.
- Where there is no such group, the YOS convenes a Team around the Child meeting and focuses on engagement, attendance and addressing behaviour issues
- The YOS has advocated for and supported schools in developing and delivering Alternative Provision packages, and supporting students to engage with these programmes notably for students with SEND
- Supporting EHCP special educational needs assessment processes
- Supporting Year 11 students in making post 16 choices and supporting them with making applications and plans for the future
- For year 11 students at risk of being NEET either providing ongoing voluntary support or referring to other support agencies

Post 16 children

Over the past year, during the time they worked with the YOS, 32% of post-16 children had a period of being NEET, compared with area, regional and national NEET percentages for this age group being between 2- 3%. Of those that were on Further Education programmes, 43% had low attendance. The YOS has worked with further Education providers to help improve attendance and engagement in the following ways:

- Supporting young people to apply, enrol at college and apply for financial assistance
- Supporting young people to re-engage with Further Education programmes
- Advocating for additional support for young people in Further Education or Training
- Supporting young people in finding work including preparation and funding for taking CSCS health and safety test
- Referrals to other agencies for ongoing support at end of YOS programme

Children with Special Education Needs

36% of the children who have worked with YOS in the past year had an EHCP (the national figure is 3.7%) and 16% were on a SEND Support Plan, meaning that more than half of those known to the YOS had some Special Educational Need or Disability. The proportion with an EHCP appears to be increasing. The main presenting needs are Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder, Autism Spectrum Disorder, Social, Emotional and Mental Health and Speech and Language needs, with others on a Special Educational Need Support Plan and Speech, Language and Communication needs. These needs are usually a significant factor underlying offending behaviour including risk taking, impulsivity and dysregulation. Within the preventative part of the YOS, more than a quarter of those working with Compass have EHCPs or are having needs assessments undertaken. The main presenting needs are as above. These needs are usually a significant factor underlying offending behaviour e.g., risk taking, impulsivity, dysregulation. There are similar trends for children supported by the new Education Inclusion Project.

Example of YOS support

B is a year 11 student with an EHCP who was involved in a serious incident at school which would have led to a Permanent Exclusion. YOS supported his parent at the emergency Annual Review and worked closely on a plan with his school and the SEND team to arrange an off-site Alternative Programme for the remainder of year 11. B and his parents were initially unhappy with the idea of an AP programme but we were able to help them see the advantages and to support B to engage with the AP provider. B has thrived in an outdoor, active leaning environment and gives his new programme 9/10! YOS has convened a TAC meeting which has supported partnership working and ensured B has been able to take his planned exams. B had no post 16 placement as he had planned to do a year 12 programme at his current school which was no longer possible. We have referred B to the Learning4Work programme, taken him to visit this programme and advocated for an enhanced programme and early allocation of a support worker. B has a confirmed place on this programme and his Learning4Work support worker has now joined the TAC group and is involved in planning transition support for B though the summer.

Compass (prevention service)

The YOS delivers its prevention work through the Compass team who support children aged 8 – 17 years old who may be at risk of becoming involved in offending behaviour, and their parents/carers. Based on the level of needs, risks and strengths identified through an Early Help Assessment with the family, the service will provide tailored support for a period of between 3 and 12 months. In addition, the service sometimes offers stand-alone parenting support. The service receives referrals from parents/carers, schools and Police, either directly or via requests for service to Children's Social Care/Early Help.

The service is commissioned by the Local Authority with part funding from the Police Crime Commissioner and as such we report quarterly on our outcomes and output including demographics, safeguarding activity and outcomes. The service monitors for improvements in emotional well-being, social-well-being, education/training/employment participation and child and parent/carer relationship.

We are guided by the concept that early help means that by “working together with children, young people and families, problems can often be prevented from occurring, or when they do families may be offered better support in order to stop them getting worse” (Bath & North East Somerset 2020). Where there are additional needs that universal services (education and health) cannot support then Compass provides targeted support for these needs. We are guided by principles within the Youth Justice National Standards (2019) and the continuing emerging discourse around crime prevention (McAra and McVie 2007).

The quality of the relationship between the Compass worker and the child and their family is central to supporting change. We think of children's needs and risk of potential adverse outcomes as shaped by and within their family and community contexts. We adopt a ‘Think Family’ and ‘Think Community’ approach. We build on children's individual strengths and capabilities as a means of developing a pro-social identity for sustainable desistance from crime. This leads to safer communities and fewer victims. All work is constructive and future-focused, built on

supportive relationships that empower children to fulfil their potential and make positive contributions to society. Lastly, the work and people within Compass are shaped from the social contexts in which they live including family, work, cultural and other social systems. We believe processes should be in place to provide opportunity to gain multiple perspectives and mitigate against the dangers of a 'single story' about individuals and families. We are influenced by the Local Authority's adoption of a systemic practice model combined with being trauma informed. As a result of this we have a multi person membership decision making panel that is tasked with considering completed assessments and based on identified level of needs and risk of offending will recommend tailored level of support, namely short (up to 3-months); medium (up to 6-months); full service (up to 12-months) and stand alone parenting / carer interventions.

For the period April 2021 – March 2022, the Compass Service worked with 34 different children on programmes. The service received a total of 32 new Referrals. The majority of the children receiving a service were male, 82% and 16% were female. 94% of these children were from a White background and 6% were from a Black and Asian Minority Ethnic background. None of these children were Looked After. 32% were subject to an Education and Healthcare Plan and 6% were receiving SEN Support in School. 21% were post 16 age and 79% were statutory school age. 6% of these children went on to become First Time Entrants. Outcomes in the last 12-months have included: supporting a parent to access EHC assessment that led to reduced risk of PEX; supported a young person to develop safety plan and manage transition into CAMHS; supported parent and child's relationship to de-escalate conflict. Governance is within the YOS, reporting to the YOS Management Board and the Youth Crime Prevention Board (partners in delivering of preventative services).

Diversion

The Police make single agency decisions for Community Resolutions about some children who have committed low level offences for the first time, and these are the columns labelled 'Community Resolutions Police Facilitated'. The Police also make single agency decisions for some Outcome 22's where there has been an offence of possessions of drugs or drunk and disorderly. The Outcome 22 is a deferred prosecution

until the accused has been given the opportunity to engage with an intervention activity. The police guidance states "Outcome 22 – diversionary, educational or intervention activity, resulting from the crime report, has been undertaken and it is not in the public interest to take any further action".

The Police refer children to the Out of Court Disposal Panel for a joint agency decision for those who have had a previous Police outcome or have committed a more serious offence, or where there are identifiable risk factors. In most cases, the joint agency decision is based on either a full YOS assessment and in a small number of cases it is based on a screening process.

Serious violence and exploitation

The number of children committing serious youth violence offences and knife related offences in Bath and North East Somerset is low and has reduced in recent years. We have reviewed the data and looked at the proportion of children committing serious youth violent offences in the cohort, the numbers are too low for us to provide the data. The Youth Offending Service has evidence of making NRM's but other children we are also working with have had referrals made by Social Care. The YOS has also contributed to the VRU Strategic Needs Assessment.

Restorative justice and victims

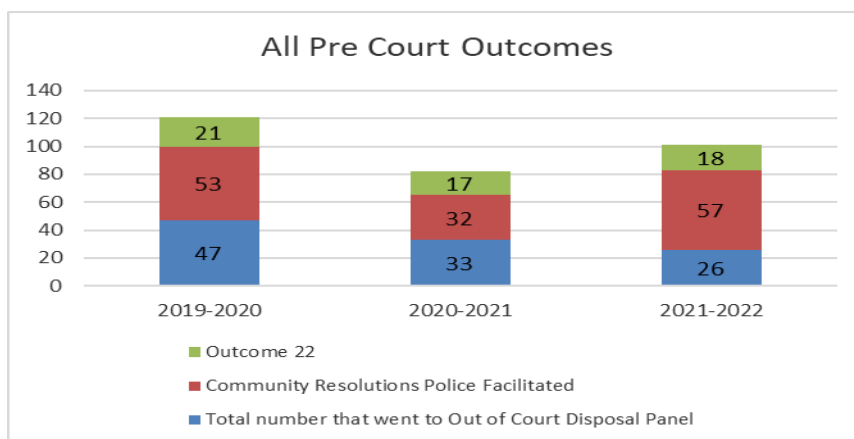
The YOS contacts all named individuals who have been harmed by the children it works with and offers information about youth justice outcomes and an opportunity to be involved in restorative justice work. Most of the offences coming to the attention of the YOS are now peer on peer assaults and so the majority of victims are also children. During the pandemic, it was difficult to get past the parents/carers of victims to hear the voice of the victim themselves, as contacts were mainly by 'phone; home visits are key to engaging with children who are victims. A significant reason for low engagement, however, is the length of time that investigations are taking. Some people are sentenced as adults for offences they committed as children and their victims have had to wait a very long time to see justice and have their voice heard in the process.

All assessments and reports to Panels and Court include the views and experience of victims, and these influence the nature of work undertaken with each child. Where they would like to, victims are also able to influence the sort of reparation work children take on to make indirect amends to the wider community. Their direct involvement could be a virtual dialogue between the child and the person harmed to answer any questions, agreement to receive a letter of explanation from the child or chance to meet face-to-face. Even before the pandemic, the number of face-to-face meetings held was very low, but there is now a renewed focus on the importance of this work. One possible restorative justice conference recently had to be halted because although the victim was keen to meet with the person who had assaulted them, it became clear during the preparation that their motivation was not restorative, and the meeting could not go ahead. Planning is now underway for a different child to meet with a number of people they have harmed. In support of developing this area of work, the Training Plan for 2022-23 includes a commitment to restorative justice training or refresher sessions for all staff and the YOS is considering the case for appointing a (part-time) dedicated Victim Worker.

The YOS records victim participation in its case management system and reports are currently being written to enable examination of victims identified, offered direct/indirect reparation and their satisfaction with services. All victim recording is 'non identifiable.'

10. National Standards

Although no self-assessment of National Standards has been required this year, the local annual review in relation to Out of Court Disposals has been completed and it confirmed adherence to the relevant Standards. Police refer children to the Out of Court Disposal Panel for a joint agency decision for those who have had a previous Police outcome or have committed a more serious offence, or where there are identifiable risk factors. In most cases, the joint agency decision is based on a full Youth Offending Service assessment and in a small number of cases, it is based on a screening process. The table below shows fluctuating numbers of children being dealt with outside Court. The proportion coming to Panels has reduced to 26% (from 39% and 40% in the previous two years) and the proportion dealt with by Police diversions has now increased to 74%.



Actions and decisions arising from last year's audit have all been followed through:

Action/Decision	Response	Impact
Police will re-consider who administers Youth Cautions and Youth Conditional Cautions to speed up delivery. (Administration had changed to the arresting officer)	Since July 2021, the Panel Sergeant or other nominated Police Sergeant resumed administering all formal Panel outcomes.	Timeliness has improved again.
The Management Board confirmed continued membership of the OOCd Panel based on scrutiny of case audits and analysis data.	Panel membership continues with a Police Sergeant, YOS Operational Manager and the YOS Victim Worker, with the child's case manager also attending.	The Panel continues to meet and carry out its duties efficiently and has sufficient flexibility.
The Management Board endorsed revised roles to strengthen the governance of the OOCd process, which had placed too much responsibility on the Operational Manager	The following roles are now embedded: - Quality Assurance of assessments is now undertaken by the YOS deputy Team Manager. - The YOS Panel decision maker remains the Operational Manager. - OOCd audits are undertaken by Board Members and the YOS Head of Service. - The Operational Manager participates in the Avon and Somerset Out of Court Disposal Scrutiny Panel.	The change brings greater diversity in management oversight

The Management Board agreed that the content and structure of the OOCd annual report provided all the information and assurance they needed.	The same structure has been used for this year's report	The Board found the report gave assurance about work undertaken

This year's self-assessment was based on five randomly selected cases which were audited by the Head of Service and members of the Management Board. The findings indicate strong adherence to National Standards:

Audit Question	Responses
1. Was a timely and accurate, suitable and sufficient assessment of risk and need undertaken?	5 x Yes
2. Was the intervention plan based on the assessment with a focus on promoting a pro-social identity and aiding desistance from crime	5 x Yes
3. Was the child and their parents/carers involved in assessment, planning and reviewing of individual programme?	4 x Yes 1 x Partial
4. Did the YOS work closely with the Police for the Out-of-Court Disposal system to be effective?	4 x Yes 1 x Partial
5. Did YOS staff build supportive relationships and deliver prompt, proportionate, effective interventions?	4 x Yes 1 x Partial

The Board members made additional comments and wrote a narrative about the cases that they audited, including strengths and areas for development. Summarised in appendix 6, they will be addressed in the new Work Plan and Training and Development Plan.

11. Challenges, Risks and Issues

The Management Board actively encourages professional challenge between members, so that each agency is held to account for the part it plays in supporting the Youth Offending Service and preventing children's offending. It records these challenges in a well-established register that is reviewed and updated at each meeting, noting when challenges have been answered or resolved and whether this has had a positive impact. It also keeps a risk register that is similarly updated at each meeting. Risks that remain very high despite action to mitigate their potential impact are also recorded on the wider Children's Services risk register and may be escalated within the Council. The Service continues to work on long term risks; one that has been addressed this year is compliance with the General Data Protection Regulation in respect of all the information the YOS holds on children, parents/carers and victims it has worked with. The YOS is now fully compliant, with all records that meet the criteria having been archived within the case management system and all record destruct dates on electronic files having also been updated.

As a Sub Group of the BCSSP, the Board also makes a quarterly report which includes challenges faced and barriers to achievement. The latest report highlighted the following issues, some of which are reflected in the new Work Plan:

- Continuing issue with a largely White and female workforce needing to be more representative of the children it works with
- Significant delays in children being brought to justice – they can be released under investigation for long periods, and some are sentenced as adults for offences committed as children
- Possible changes in Police administration of youth cases

- Continuing close working with the Violence Reduction Unit to identify a way forward for the Education Inclusion Project
- Need to agree a medium-term way forward with the trauma informed Enhanced Case Management initiative.

One of the biggest challenges faced by the YOS in 2022 is also a significant opportunity: its return to working in a newly refurbished office in Keynsham. Whilst it continues to retain a central Bath office for work with children (and also utilises space in schools and community settings as well as visiting children and their families in their own homes) its shared office base will include new collaborative spaces for working with colleagues. As they explore new ways of working post pandemic, staff will be supported to work flexibly and use this space to strengthen the YOS's identity as a multi-agency team, incorporating colleagues who have joined during the pandemic and fostering renewed links with other teams.

12. Service Improvement Plan

B&NES YOS was last inspected by HMI Probation in 2016 and is anticipating an inspection under the current framework in the near future. It has an internal Inspection Readiness Group and reports in to the YOS Management Board. The Board also reviews its readiness during awaydays, including undertaking self-assessments of its role and function. B&NES has not been involved in any serious incident reviews in the last 18 months but did contribute to a Police thematic inspection of work to address serious violence, which has not yet been published. A recent Ofsted Inspection did not include the core work of the YOS but looked at return home interviews which are carried out by Compass as part of its contribution to wider preventative work and made a recommendation which is being addressed by the YOS Head of Service in her wider role, through a task and finish group. She also sits on the national Youth Justice Service Improvement Board and Workforce Development Board and is coaching someone through the YJB Elevate programme to support the progression of middle managers from Black, Asian and minority ethnic backgrounds and has access to information and ideas through these commitments.

In its strategic plan for 2021-24, the YJB reaffirmed its commitment to the long-term goal of supporting a child first youth justice system that supports children to become "the best version of themselves." This central guiding principle is picked up locally through the YOS challenging its own delivery and the language it uses but also working with partner agencies, including Police and Courts, to make sure processes and provision can fully meet children's needs as children. The YOS's commitment to trauma informed practice is entirely consistent with this, looking at what has happened to children to affect how they see the world and behave. As a partner with the Violence Reduction Unit, it is also committed to playing its part in supporting a 'trauma informed Avon and Somerset.' The YOS Training Plan includes building on the Trauma Informed Practice Awards gained by staff during 2021-22.

A key theme is returning to more face-to-face and office-based work, including returning to work in the main Council building. The learning from working through a pandemic is informing decisions about how the YOS works going forward. Children have continued to be seen face-to-face and staff Supervision has been in person, but many meetings have moved on line and may remain online. Awareness of the importance of a good work-life balance to support staff emotional and mental health and wellbeing will continue to inform individual decisions about working patterns.

13. Evidence-based practice and innovation

YOS work draws on research evidence and professional expertise. Examples include:

a. Enhanced Case Management (ECM)

The ECM approach is based on the Trauma Recovery Model (TRM), a seven-stage model that matches intervention/support to the child's underlying development needs and presenting behaviours. The approach was designed provide YOS practitioners and managers with increased knowledge and understanding in relation to how early attachment, trauma and adverse childhood experiences can impact on a child's ability to engage effectively in youth justice interventions. It provides a psychology-led approach to multi-agency case formulation and intervention planning. This enables youth justice staff to tailor and sequence interventions more effectively according to the developmental and mental health needs of individual children. The initiative started in South Wales and began as a local YJB-funded pilot across Bristol, South Gloucestershire, North Somerset and Bath and North East Somerset in September 2019. It continued to be funded by the YJB until March 2022 and going forward, is supported by the Bristol, North Somerset and South Gloucestershire Clinical Commissioning Group and local contributions. B&NES has committed to support a partnership approach for at least one further year, pending a review of the number of places it requires. During 2021, it provided refresher training for all its practitioners and managers, who took a 4-day Trauma Informed Practice Award.

The work is being formally evaluated by an independent research company – Opinion Research Services (ORS) who are assessing the procedures and have interviewed staff and children. Interim findings from March 2021 suggested there are significant benefits for children and practitioners in taking an ECM approach. For example, children engage well where there is a relational approach and there is evidence of reductions in offending rates and seriousness of offending. It has brought understanding of the impact of trauma experienced by children into the open and this has helped detailed planning to address needs. The final evaluation report is expected to be published later in 2022.

b. Systemic Practice

Systemic practice builds on well-established communication and systems theories, using positive relationships and a strengths-based approach to support positive change for children and their families. It recognises that families are impacted by a large number of complex, interacting systems and uses questioning techniques to gain different perspectives to plan and introduce sustained change, based on underlying beliefs and attitudes. Staff adopt a position of curiosity towards the different perspectives described and observed in their contact with families. The approach specifically includes a focus on social and personal identity, such as race, gender, religion and age which affect an individual's position and power in society.

B&NES Children's Service is adopting systemic practice as its framework of choice in all work with children and families. A number of YOS staff have undertaken preliminary training; in addition, the Operational Manager holds an intermediate qualification, and the Deputy Team Manager is currently training for this. The YOS wants to learn from other youth justice services that have adopted this way of working and is gradually introducing practice and system changes.

c. Reparation

The YOS has been developing its opportunities for children to make amends to the wider community through reparation work with local charities and organisations. An example during the pandemic was sending letters to elders living in care homes, some of which led to continued correspondence. Other children were supported to write poetry whilst doing reparation, boosting self esteem and proving to be an excellent way to engage them in new conversations. Another child made Christmas cards and sold them to raise money for charity, which was a good way for them to experience a positive activity which also fitted the requirements for reparation.

14. Work Plan

Strategic Priority 1: Strengthen participation					
Themes		Actions	Key links	Owner	Target date
1.1	Children's participation	1.1.1 Set up a SurveyMonkey to consult with local children on new name for the YOS	Child-first principles	Operational Manager	September 2022
		1.1.2 Establish an internal task and finish group to refresh the YOS's participation policy and practice	United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child B&NES Participation Standards B&NES Young Ambassadors	Operational Manager	December 2022
1.2	Parents/carers' participation	Develop a Practice Guide / Framework for work with parents/carers, setting out what our local offer is	B&NES Early Help Offer Family Links parenting programmes HMIP Thematic Inspection of Black and Mixed Heritage Boys in the Youth Justice System	Operational Manager	December 2022
1.3	Victims' participation	Refresh the YOS policy and practice with victims	Avon and Somerset Young Victims' Service Draft Victims Bill	Deputy Team Manager	September 2022
Strategic Priority 2: Address disproportionality					
Themes		Actions	Key Links	Owner	Target date
2.1	Black and dual heritage children	2.1.1 Address recommendations in Avon and Somerset Criminal Justice Board 'Identifying Disproportionality'	Violence Reduction Unit Education Inclusion Service's work to address permanent exclusion Human Resources Plan	Chair of YOS Management Board	March 2023
		2.1.2 Compile and deliver a local Action Plan	HMIP Thematic Inspection of Black and Mixed Heritage Boys in the Youth Justice System, plus Practice Guide Identifying disproportionality	Head of Service	March 2023

2.2	Girls and young women	Work with the Violence Reduction Unit to increase our understanding and response to girls' involvement in serious violence	HMIP Thematic Inspection on Girls in the Youth Justice System	Head of Service	December 2022
2.3	Children with Special Educational Needs	Convene a working group with key local authority managers to consider and investigate disproportionality issues for children with SEND in the youth justice system and formulate a response and action plan in light of the Thematic HMIP report on ETE.	HMIP Thematic Inspection of Education, Training and Employment - Services in Youth Offending Teams in England and Wales SEND Strategy Group YJB ambition to improve outcomes for children in the youth justice system	Education Inclusion Manager, with YOS Operational Manager	March 2023

Strategic Priority 3: Extend Effective Practice Models

Themes		Actions	Key Links	Owner	Target date
Page 40 1	Trauma informed practice	3.1.1 Work with OPCC, VRU and other partners to participate in a 'trauma-informed Avon and Somerset'	VRU needs assessment and work plan	Head of Service	March 2023 and beyond
		3.1.2 Work with partner Local Authorities to review and sustain a model for the Enhanced Case Management initiative	ECM Operational and Strategic Groups YJB outcome to reduce reoffending by children in the youth justice system	Head of Service	March 2023 and beyond
3.2	Systemic practice	3.2.1 Apply learning from other areas and take next steps towards implementing in YOS	Centre for Systemic Social Work	Deputy Team Manager	March 2023 and beyond
		3.2.2 Support wider development of model within B&NES Children's Service	Centre for Systemic Practice B&NES Practice Model meeting	Deputy Team Manager	March 2023 and beyond

3.3	Crime prevention	3.3.1 Review and develop the Compass Decision-Making Panel for stated aims of targeting areas of need; increasing multiple perspectives to reduce individual bias and improving throughput.	B&NES Early Help Offer Youth Crime Prevention Board Findings from national Prevention and Diversion project	Deputy Team Manager	September 2022
		3.3.2 Work with partners to strengthen support to children who may be at risk of offending	Violence Reduction Unit initiatives 'Turnaround' funding to help prevent youth offending "earlier than ever" – to be confirmed. YJB outcome to reduce the number of children in the youth justice system	Head of Service	March 2023

Strategic Priority 4: Tackle Exploitation

Themes		Actions	Key Links	Owner	Target date
Page 41 4.1	Contextual safeguarding	Conduct an audit of YOS contextual safeguarding knowledge and practice and identify development actions	Bedford University Contextual Safeguarding Network Exploitation Sub Group Children's Social Care audit YJB county lines pathfinder YJB outcome to improve the safety and wellbeing of children in the youth justice system	Operational Manager	March 2023
	4.2 Serious violence statutory duty	Consult on and develop YOS role in collaborating to address children's serious violence	Police, Crime, Sentencing & Courts Act 2022 Violence Reduction Unit B&NES Drugs and Alcohol Strategy	Head of Service	March 2023 and beyond

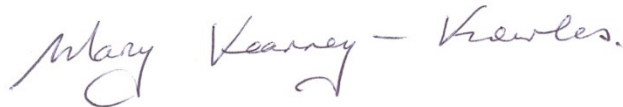
5. Continuing Priority: Supporting and equipping staff

Themes		Actions	Key Links	Owner	Target date
5.1	Staff health and wellbeing	Support staff to return to Keynsham Civic Centre, addressing individual	B&NES Health and Safety Policy	YOS Management Group	September 2022

		needs, promoting flexible working and strengthening team identity			
5.2	Representative workforce	Work with Human Resources Department to recruit a workforce that better reflects the gender and ethnicity of the children worked with	Identifying Disproportionality	Head of Service Probation, Health and Police Board members	March 2023 and beyond
5.3	Evidencing impact	Revise reporting dashboard to incorporate new Key Performance Indicators when agreed, and use this to develop YOS and Management Board understanding of local data	YJB consultation on national KPIs Development of B&NES early help dashboard YJB Re-Offending toolkit YJB Disproportionality toolkit	Business and Performance Manager	December 2022
5.4 Page 42	Training and development	5.4.1 Compile and deliver training plan to support effective practice models and maintain safeguarding and other skills	Development of practice models B&NES Training and Development Plan Children's Transformation Programme: Practice Models and Engagement	Head of Service	March 2023
		5.4.2 Strengthen staff skills when exploring identity and potential discrimination	HMI Practice Guidance on working with Black and Mixed Heritage Boys	Operational Manager	December 2022
5.5	Learning from Inspections and Serious Case Reviews	Develop and deliver local responses to recommendations in HMI Probation's thematic Inspections	HMIP Thematic Inspection of Education, Training and Employment- Services in Youth Offending Teams in England and Wales Links with action 2.3 above and B&NES Children's Transformation Programme: NEETs HMIP Thematic Inspection on girls in the Youth Justice System (not yet published)	Operational Manager	March 2023
5.6	Inspection readiness	Maintain a regular focus on up-to-date documentation and schedules	HMI Probation Youth Justice Inspection Framework	Head of Service	March 2023
5.7	Strengthen the partnership with	5.4.1 Advocate re support for children leaving Care and understand the	Continuing work with the Probation Service to address transitions issues.		

	the Management Board; YOS practitioners have requested collaboration with the Board in these areas:	difference in support available for them, in particular with regard to accessing suitable accommodation	Work with Registered Social Landlords re access to suitable accommodation.	Chair of the Management Board	March 2023
		5.4.2 Represent the YOS's views over possible changes to the Police youth justice department, and the furtherance of child-first policing	Child first principles Police representative on the Board		
		5.4.3 Understand the impact of delays in prosecutions on both children and victims and seek to influence this.	Child first principles Police representative on the Board		
		5.4.4 Discuss with Court staff and Magistrates the importance of child-first arrangements within the Court setting	Child first principles Court representative on the Board		

15. Approval and sign off

Chair of Board	Mary Kearney-Knowles, Director of Children's Services and Education
Signature	
Date	30 June 2022

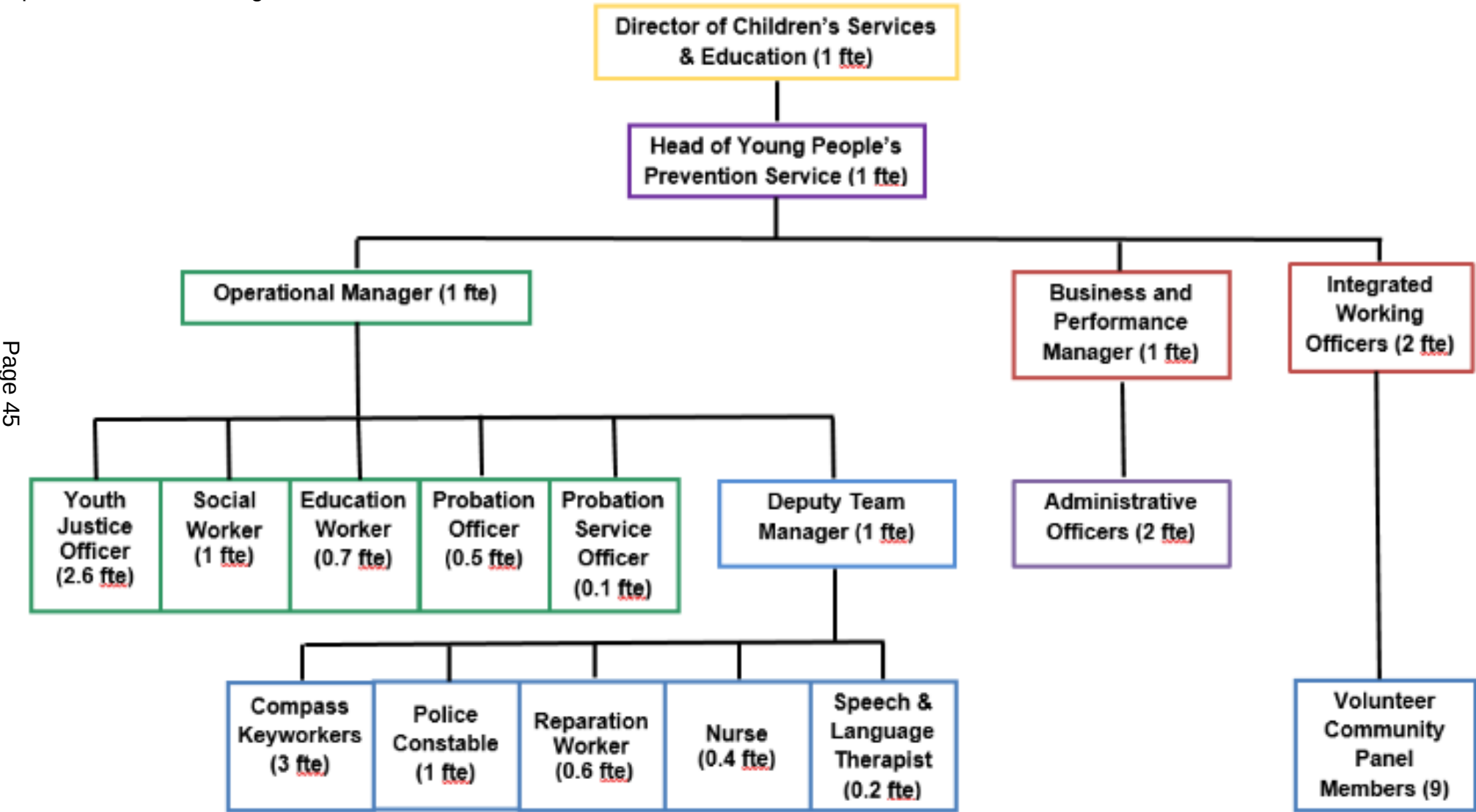
Appendix 1: Youth Offending Service Management Board Membership

All statutory partners are represented at the Management Board and attendance rates are good.

Board Members	Title	Agency	29.06.2021	15.09.2021	08.12.2021	31.03.2022	Total attendance by main representative	Total attendance by sub	Total attendance	Eligible attendance	% attendance by member	Statutory agency attendance
Mary Kearney-Knowles (Chair)	Divisional Director, People and Communities	SM - B&NES Social Care	√	√	X	√	3	n/a	3	4	75%	75%
Sally Churchyard	Head of Young People's Prevention Service Outcomes	B&NES Youth Offending Service	√	√	√	√	4	n/a	4	4	100%	
Carla Cooper	YOS Operations Manager	B&NES Youth Offending Service	X	√	X	√	2	n/a	2	4	50%	
Lisa Miller - until 29.6.21 Saffia Ahmad - from	Head of Service, CAMHS	Oxford Health NHS Foundation Trust	√	√	√	√	4	n/a	4	4	100%	
Christopher Wilford	Head of Vulnerable Learners, People and Communities	SM - B&NES Education	√	Sub sent, Rosemary Collard	√	√	3	1	4	4	75%	100%
Steve Kendall	Chief Inspector, Avon and Somerset Police	SM - Avon and Somerset Police	√	√	√	√	4	n/a	4	4	100%	100%
Page 24 Peter Brandt	Assistant Chief Officer, National Probation Service	SM - National Probation Service	√	√	√	√	4	n/a	4	4	100%	100%
Cristine Romero	Lead Member for Children	B&NES Children, Young People and Families	√	√	√	√	4	n/a	4	4	100%	
Val Scrase	Head of Operations, Wiltshire & B&NES	Virgin Care Services Ltd	√	Sub sent, Judith Sellers	√	√	3	1	4	4	75%	
Jayne Davis	Deputy Principal, Bath College	Bath College	X	√	√	X	2	0	2	4	50%	
Stephen Hillyard	Chair of the Youth Bench	Bath Magistrates Court	√	X	√	√	3	0	3	4	75%	
Ali Woodiwiss	Senior Commissioning Manager, Complex	SM - B&NES Complex Care and Targeted Support	√	√	√	√	4	n/a	4	4	100%	100%

Appendix 2: Youth Offending Service Structure Chart

The Service is fully staffed. Its Business and Performance Manager leads on data reporting and the Head of Service has access to Jon Poole’s corporate Business Intelligence Team.



Appendix 3: Staff individual characteristics

The staff group is not representative of the children it serves, and the Service has been working with Human Resources to attract applicants from more diverse backgrounds; representation by ethnicity is better amongst volunteers (and on the Management Board). Disability is not shown so as not to be identifiable. Male staff are under-represented although the YOS works with a majority of boys.

	Strategic Manager		Team Manager		Practitioner		Administrator		Sessional		Student		Volunteers		Total	
	M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F	M	F
Asian or Asian British - Bangladeshi																
Asian or Asian British – Indian													1			1
Asian or Asian British - Other Asian																
Asian or Asian British - Pakistani																
Black or Black British - African																
Black or Black British – Caribbean													1		1	
Black or Black British - Other Black																
Chinese																
Mixed - Other Mixed																
Mixed - White and Asian																
Mixed - White and Black African																
Mixed - White and Black Caribbean																
Not stated																
Other Ethnic Group - Any Other																
Other Ethnic Group - Arab																
White – British		1	1	1	2	13		4					2	5	5	24
White - Gypsy or Irish Traveller																
White - Irish																
White - Other White																
Total		1	1	1	2	13		4					3	6	6	25

Appendix 4: Resources Summary (£s)

Source	Pooled budget	Staff costs	Other costs	Comments	Total
Avon and Somerset Police	5,000	58,703	0	1 fte Police Constable. Access to Police National Computer and Niche	63,703
National Probation Service	5,000	£27,016	0	0.5 fte Probation Officer and 0.16 fte Probation Service Officer, working in Youth Court.	32,016
Bath and North East Somerset Council	18,685	386,276	20,231	Reduction of £1,249 resulting from additional contributions to NI and salary increases and reductions for salary turnover, as allocated to all budgets. Plus office accommodation, Financial, IT and Human Resources support	425,192
Bath and North East Somerset Clinical Commissioning Group	14,885	47,826	0	0.4 fte Nurse and 0.2 fte Speech and Language Therapist The increase on last year is because both posts are now costed	62,711
Avon and Somerset Police and Crime Commissioner	N/A	10,217	0	Contributes to Compass preventative service. Another £7,902 goes towards commissioning substance misuse services (DHI Project 28)	10,217
Youth Justice Board for England and Wales	N/A	172,350	48,611	The YJB grant has increased by 9.8% this year, to support service delivery, make performance improvements and support recovery from the pandemic. A similar amount is likely in the next 2 years	220,961
Total	43,570	702,388	68,842		814,800

The YOS will also receive a delegated allocation towards the costs of any secure remands. An announcement on new 'turnaround' funding for preventative work is also awaited.

Appendix 5: Review of Service Business and Improvement Plan 2021-22

Prevention and diversion – Remember the ‘children first’ principle and provide support outside the formal justice system wherever possible. BCSSP Commitment 3 – Recognise the importance of prevention and early intervention		
Actions		Progress
1.	Complete work on membership, process, and governance of the Out of Court Disposal Panel	Completed: revised documentation signed off and annual Management Board audit of cases and progress report provides continuing assurance.
2.	Introduce Outcome 22 diversion with intervention for first time, low level knife and other weapon offences	Completed: Now an option being used by the Out of Court Disposal Panel
3.	Complete pathway to show integration of youth crime preventative activity with a focus on serious violence	Continuing: Work now merged with the development of a wider Exploitation pathway for children known to Social Care and development of a preventative pathway sits alongside this.
4.	Review how we measure effectiveness of all local youth crime prevention activity	Continuing: Work now incorporated into wider work on effectiveness of early help as part of publication a local offer and performance dashboard
Tackle exploitation and support the Violence Reduction’s ambition that children lead lives free of serious violence at home and in the community. BCSSP Commitment 2: Learning from experience to improve how we work and 3: Recognise the importance of prevention and early intervention		
Actions		Progress
1.	Clarify practice re use of National Referral Mechanism registration	Completed and continuing: Explanatory video sent out to YOS so staff are clear how to refer and evidence of this being discussed with CPS and addressed in Court reports. Raised this at multi-agency Exploitation Sub Group. Also awaiting learning from 10 pilot areas where Local Authorities are making decisions. Issue of how interim findings are confirmed by conclusive grounds
2.	Support the development of multi-agency information sharing arrangements in order to identify and address individual children’s vulnerability	Completed: Information sharing agreement refreshed, more partners involved and merged with Exploitation Operational Group. This provides stronger multi-agency oversight of those at risk of serious violence.
3.	Support readiness for YOS compliance with the anticipated new ‘serious violence duty’	Continuing: YOS is already integrated with VRU work but awaiting final guidance to understand what more may be needed. It will have a duty to prevent serious violence as a YOS from summer 2022
4.	Participate in developing responses to children’s contextual safeguarding needs	Continuing: The Exploitation Sub Group has completed an initial audit of Social Care which is to be broadened to include the YOS in 2022

Support children not to re-offend BCSSP Commitment 2: Learning from experience to improve how we work		
Actions		Progress
1.	Clarify the interface between the YOS and the Violence Reduction Unit in the work undertaken with individual children	Completed: With a single Head of Service, the two work closely to share information and the VRU has procured support for individual children.
2.	Continue to develop use of the re-offending toolkit including the live tracker to inform work with children	Continuing: Being used quarterly to calculate local re-offending rates
3.	Support developments in service delivery arising from learning under the pandemic e.g. addressing digital poverty	Completed and continuing: Digital access now being discussed as part of all assessments and if there are issues, then funding has been made available in the YOS budget to supply a laptop. There are continuing examples of engaging children in different ways since the pandemic such as going for walks, reparation activities with writing letters to elders in care homes and unaccompanied asylum seekers, some continuing online engagement.
4.	Continue to participate in the Enhanced Case Management pilot	Completed and continuing: B&NES has agreed to fund continuing participation until March 2023 and has requested a review going forward
5.	Strengthen the offer of parenting support	Continuing: Staff identified for Family Links training. Working with partners to consider possible appointment of Parenting Worker. A workshop was held with YOS case managers and Compass Keyworkers to establish the breadth of parenting work being undertaken and share ideas. Work will continue in this area.
Work towards the elimination of disproportionate outcomes and meet individual need BCSSP Commitment 4: Providing executive leadership for an effective partnership		
Actions		Progress
1.	Improve understanding of disproportionality in the youth justice system and identify opportunities to address it	Continuing: Findings from ethnic disparity tool now available to us on an annual basis. This links with recommendations in Identifying Disproportionality
2..	Share learning from and respond to the recommendations of the Avon and Somerset Lammy Review due to be published in July 2021.	Continuing: Identifying Disproportionality report published and widely disseminated. The YOS Management Board will oversee implementation of relevant recommendations for B&NES.
3.	Review available data and the experience of girls in the youth justice system and ensure their individual needs can be met	Continuing: Data report produced, and practitioner questionnaire circulated. The proportion of girls in the youth justice system has reduced despite pan agency concern about their involvement in serious violence.

Support children to successfully negotiate individual and organisational changes and transitions BCSSP Commitment 1: Develop a 'think Family, Think Community' approach		
Actions		Progress
1.	Review wellbeing and re-offending of children who have transferred to the National Probation Service, incorporating their feedback on the experience of transition, and identify how practice can be improved to reduce the number of young adults who are sentenced to custody shortly after their transition.	Completed: National Protocol published June 2021. Consultation with a young adult known to NPS agreed. Good progress being made through an ongoing group which meets on a 6-weekly basis with YOS and Probation where transitions are being planned and reviewed.
2.	Scope other key transitions for Children working with the Youth Offending Service and identify with partner agencies how to strengthen support	Continuing: Work ongoing and will link with 0-25 years review workshop. The YOS Probation Officer is undertaking interviews with a small number of young adults who have experienced the transition to Probation to learn how this impacted them and how they were supported with other transitions in their life.
3.	Work with regional Health and other partners to address support for 16-25-year-olds	Continuing: Engaged with Steering Group and work ongoing
Equip the Youth Offending Service to meet its statutory purpose of preventing offending BCSSP Commitment 4: Providing executive leadership for an effective partnership		
Actions		Progress
1.	Review operation of the Management Board to ensure it reflects the revised Youth Justice Board guidance and expectations of the local BCSSP.	Completed: Board confirmed compliance at recent an awayday
2.	Support staff to adjust to changes as the pandemic lockdown comes to an end and ensure their access to suitable and safe working conditions and a return to as much co-located working as possible.	Completed and ongoing: Review Recovery Plan reviewed. Health, safety and wellbeing is a standing item for supervision and team meetings. All staff have individual risk assessments, and some have Wellness Action Plans
3.	Continue to access training and development opportunities for staff to strengthen their use of AMBIT, incorporate systemic and trauma recovery practice into their work, increase the pool of staff trained to address harmful sexual behaviour (AIM3) and address parenting needs. Ensure training is available for volunteer Panel Members, including through the TRM	Completed: YOS Training Plan signed off, Harmful Sexual Behaviour supervisors' training undertaken, systemic training completed by 4 staff and more planned, Trauma Informed Practice Award completed by all practitioners and managers. AMBIT outstanding and needs to be reviewed in light of other practice models being introduced (although it is complementary)
4.	Incorporate systemic practices into staff Supervision	Completed and ongoing: All 3 managers have completed some systemic training and are working at applying it within Supervision
5.	Refresh working practices and meetings arrangements in light of learning from the pandemic lockdown	Completed: Work with children and parents, staff supervision, reflective practice and panels have continued to be held in person
6.	Revisit recruitment practices to promote appointment of staff from a more diverse range of backgrounds	Completed: Revision of recruitment practices completed

Appendix 6: Feedback from Out of Court Disposal Audit

Strengths identified by Management Board
Full detailed assessment gave clear picture of parents and whole family
Good consideration of victims
Good exploration of dual heritage identity in the assessment
Holistic assessment – strengths-based approach including wider needs that may have impacted on current incident including family background, domestic abuse, and maturity
Good multi agency involvement with school and police
Comprehensive assessment form - child centred and child first, identified a range of supports and interventions to defer from re-offending.
Good engagement with young person and his mother
Plan took into account the seriousness of the offence and offending history and the need for child to build a relationship with the worker before formal work could take place
Wider support and multi-agency input sought and challenged where felt not fully recognised needs
Pushed for SEN assessment and plan clearly linked to assessment
Reparation to include skill development, very positive.
The plan followed a structured analysis of positive and negative desistance factors, and the plan took into account the child, parents and school.
Good evidence of linking with parents and sharing what will be covered in the sessions with their child in advance. The work with parents comes across as a partnership
Child's voice heard throughout the report and assessment.
Good evidence of raising concerns with Police about delays in the system and incomplete information being made available
Good multi-agency working, to include 'team around the school' meetings to address school attendance and engagement.
Young person has not re-offended, and his wellbeing appears to have improved significantly with the benefit of the intervention.
Sessions are well structured, and the child is clearly engaged in the work
Evaluation and feedback of sessions well documented, interventions developed as new areas of concern raised and plan and interventions delivered flexibly
Case closure/case outcome summary comprehensive and evidences positive impact of the 16-week intervention
Worker adept at finding ways of addressing the objectives of the plan, even though the child and parent were reluctant to engage in formal work
Good evidence of management oversight
Areas for development identified by Management Board
Assessment would have been strengthened by exploring impact of domestic abuse
Assessment did not draw on the Speech and Language report
5 months between offence being committed and being referred to OOCB panel
Assessment and Intervention would have been strengthened by including more on exploring child's experiences as a dual heritage child
The plan included family support. It was not clear if this was with the agreement of the parent and as such the parents declined to take part.
Delays in the case being referred to the OOCB Panel did not help the child to recall the incident.
Unclear if communications / speech and language need was addressed in the plan and or ruled out as not necessary

Appendix 7: Feedback

Surveys and end of contact feedback from children continues to be positive about work undertaken with the Youth Offending Service. Children have appreciated the positive relationships which lie at the heart of all effective work. For example, “the YOS worker was a nice person” and “I felt really listened to.” They have particularly valued positive activities, support in Court and help to write a Curriculum Vitae. In a recent survey of four young people, 1 agreed and 3 strongly agreed with each of the following statements:

- They were happy with the support the YOS provided to me
- The support from the YOS has helped me to stop offending
- I felt listened to and respected by my YOS worker

It has been particularly good to learn from young people about the impact of work undertaken with them, including being supported to “get out of county lines”, being “supported to keep out of trouble,” “help to get on to a course I was interested in,” “made my life better” and “I’m in better accommodation now.” Other examples show how the impact has been positive for families as well:

Feedback from a 13-year-old working with the Compass prevention service until December 2021. They were at risk of peer conflict and knife carrying and were supported to adapt to residential schooling and an improved relationship with their parents:

“My behaviour at school has got better. I have grown up a lot. I used to be a pain in the at home and got everyone arguing but they don’t have anything to argue about any more. Compass is good fun.”

A letter from a mother about work undertaken with her and her son for 18 months up until September 2021 during the pandemic:

“X has worked with myself and my son A for a couple of years but unfortunately has now finished working with us..... I would just like to say that working with X has helped us both so much. A knew he could talk to X about anything and she would listen and support him. I always found, whatever the situation or however low I felt with issues I was facing, a chat through things with X always helped. She would listen and show such empathy and understanding, would never judge and always found the positives. I think A and I will always have our ‘bumps in the road’ but the help and support that we have received from X will definitely stay with us. I told X that she was like a refreshing tonic and I wished we could bottle her and keep her.”

Feedback after Referral Order Panel meetings has included children saying they felt supported by the Panel, they had a sense of being listened to, it was good to know what was expected of them during their Order and it was good to reflect on their progress during the final meeting and hear positive feedback about themselves. It may be harder for children to give critical feedback, but they have said “sometimes Panel meetings can feel a bit long and there is sometimes a lot of talking.” There continues to be work to be done to help Panels to be completely child centred.

Appendix 8: Glossary of terms used in this Plan

ACE	Adverse Childhood Experience. Events in the child's life that can have negative, long-lasting impact on the child's health, and life choices
AssetPlus	Assessment tool to be used for children who have been involved in offending behaviour
BAME	Black, Asian and Minority Ethnic is the term currently used in the criminal justice system to describe those who have diverse racial and ethnic backgrounds. This term is not widely accepted or used and will be replaced when a more universally acceptable term is identified.
BCSSP	B&NES Community Safety and Safeguarding Partnership, a merger of the previous Local Safeguarding Children Board, Local Safeguarding Adults Board and the Community Safety Partnership. The YOS Management Board is one of its Sub Groups.
CCE	Child Criminal Exploitation, where a child is forced, through threats of violence, or manipulated to take part in criminal activity
Children	We define a child as anyone who has not yet reached their 18th birthday. This is in line with the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child and civil legislation in England and Wales. The fact that a child has reached 16 years of age, is living independently or is in further education, is a member of the armed forces, is in hospital or in custody in the secure estate, does not change their status or entitlements to services or protection.
Child First	A system wide approach to working with children in the youth justice system. There are four tenants to this approach, it should be: developmentally informed, strength based, promote participation, and encourage diversion
Looked After Child	Child Looked After, where a child is looked after by the local authority
Compass	The YOS's local preventative service for 8-17-year-olds assessed as at high risk of offending, and for their parents/carers
Contextual safeguarding	An approach to safeguarding children which considers the wider community and peer influences on a child's safety
Community resolution	Community resolution, an informal disposal, administered by the police, for low level offending following an admission of guilt
EHCP	Education and Health Care Plan, a plan outlining the education, health and social care needs of a child with additional needs
ETE	Education, training or employment
Evidence based practice	The YJB definition of evidence-based practice is 'integration of the best available and accessible evidence with professional expertise, in the context of working with children in contact with the youth justice system'
fte	Full-time equivalent, used when setting out the number of hours in each post
FTE	First Time Entrant. A child who receives a statutory criminal justice outcome for the first time (youth caution, youth conditional caution, or Court disposal

HMIP	Her Majesty Inspectorate of Probation. An independent arms-length body who inspect Youth Justice services and probation services
HSB	Harmful sexual behaviour, developmentally inappropriate sexual behaviour by children, which is harmful to another child or adult, or themselves
NEET	Children and young people who are Not in Education, Training or Employment
NRM	National Referral Mechanism. The national framework for identifying and referring potential victims of modern slavery in order to gain help to support and protect them
OOCD	Out-of-Court Disposal. All recorded disposals where a crime is recorded, an outcome delivered but the matter is not sent to Court
OPCC	Office of the Police and Crime Commissioner who is responsible for cutting crime and delivering an effective Police Force
Outcome 22/21	An informal disposal, available where the child does not admit the offence, but they undertake intervention to build strengths to minimise the possibility of further offending
Over-represented children	Appearing in higher numbers than the local or national average
PEX	Permanently excluded from school
RHI	Return home Interviews. These are interviews completed after a child has been reported missing. In B&NES, these are undertaken by the YOS, usually through its preventative Compass team.
Referral Order Panel	A decision-making meeting led by trained volunteers who consider the YOS's assessment of an individual child referred by the Court, and agree a written contract for work to address identified needs and make amends to the person harmed and/or the community.
SLCN	Speech, Language and communication needs
Youth Conditional Caution	These are issued at a pre-Court stage and include requirements to work with the YOS and other partners to meet identified needs
Young adult	Someone who is aged 18 or over, a term used, for example, when a young adult is transferring to the adult probation service.
YJB	Youth Justice Board for England and Wales, now part of the Ministry of Justice, created under the Crime and Disorder Act 1998
YJS	Youth Justice Service. This is now the preferred title for services working with children in the youth justice system. This reflects the move to a child first approach. There is a current consultation underway to change the name of the B&NES Youth Offending Service.
YOS	Youth Offending Service, a multi-agency team established under the Crime and Disorder Act and charged with preventing youth offending by under 18-year-olds.

This page is intentionally left blank

Bath & North East Somerset Council		
MEETING	Council	
MEETING	21 July 2022	
TITLE:	B&NES Food Equity Action Plan 2022 - 2025	
WARD:	All	
AN OPEN PUBLIC ITEM		
List of attachments to this report:		
Appendix 1 B&NES Food Equity Action Plan 2022 – 2025		
Appendix 2 Equality Impact Assessment		

1 THE ISSUE

- 1.1 B&NES Fair Food Alliance has been in operation since March 2020 and this report reflects on the achievements of the alliance since its last report to Council (January 2021) and, following a review of progress and consultation with stakeholders, presents its refreshed priorities and action plan for the period 2022 – 2025.

2 RECOMMENDATION

The Council is asked to;

- 2.1 Note progress since the last report (January 2021) and endorse the new Food Equity Action Plan 2022 – 2025 and future priorities for the B&NES Fair Food Alliance.
- 2.2 Support the ambitions of the B&NES Fair Food Alliance by considering ways in which other Council and partnership strategy and policy can help to increase income equality and food security locally

3 THE REPORT

- 3.1 A recent report from the Resolution Foundation¹ stated that 2022-23 will be dominated by high inflation, driven by rising oil and gas prices, as the global economy emerges from the pandemic, worsened by the conflict in Ukraine. Higher energy costs and shortages in the supply of raw materials and goods will push up prices. The report expects overall UK prices in 2022-23 to rise on average by 7.6%. Real wages and benefits will increase less than inflation in 22/23. The impact of this will be experienced disproportionately by households

¹ <https://www.resolutionfoundation.org/app/uploads/2022/03/Living-Standards-Outlook-2022.pdf>

on lower incomes because they spend a higher proportion of their income on energy bills, and they have less flexibility in their budget and fewer savings to draw on.

3.2 The Food Standards Agency define Food Security as 'having access at all times to enough food that is both sufficiently varied and culturally appropriate to sustain an active and healthy life'. Recently published data from the Family Resources Survey² for 2020/21 indicates that 7% of households in the UK are food insecure. In the south west 4% of households have low or very low food security. According to this survey households most likely to be food insecure are single adults with children, households on any income related benefit, those whose tenure is social renting and Black African, Caribbean and Black British households.

3.3 In B&NES we have used our resident **voicebox survey** since 2019 as one way to help us understand the levels of food insecurity locally. The questions asked are based on the Family Resources Survey but not directly comparable. The most recent survey undertaken in November 2021 showed that the majority of respondents (86%) reported having had enough of the kinds of food they want to eat over the last 12 months. 12% of respondents said they had enough food but not always the kind they want to eat and 2% said that they sometimes or often did not have enough food to eat in the last 12 months. This suggests a significant number of local residents are having to make compromises on the quality of food they are eating and around 4,000 could be experiencing food shortages. These results are similar to the 2020 voicebox survey. We have seen an increase since 2019 in households reporting that they sometimes or often worry that food will run out before they can afford to buy more from 9% in 2019 to 11% in 2021. This equates to 21,000 residents.

3.4 A recent survey by the Office for National Statistics (ONS) reported an increase in adults reporting a rise in their cost of living from 62% in November 2021 to 83% in March 2022, prior to the rise in the energy price cap. The main contributors to rising costs reported were food, energy bills and fuel costs. Whilst most households will be impacted by rising bills, those in low-income households are more disproportionately affected.³

3.5 The number of people claiming **Universal Credit** in B&NES has increased by 61% in B&NES over the last 2 years, from 7,435 in Feb 2020 to 11,982 in March 2022. Alongside this we have seen an increase in the number of children eligible for **free school meals** (FSM). In B&NES as of 31st March 2022 there were 4,505 children eligible for free school meals representing 16.38% of children on roll. This is comparable to the south west and lower than the national average of 19.7% as of October 2020. It represents an increase of 781 children in B&NES becoming eligible between May 2020 and March 2022.

3.6 Nationally there has been a rise in the number of children becoming eligible for free school meals during the COVID 19 pandemic. The increase in eligibility from

² <https://fingertips.phe.org.uk/profile/wider-determinants/data#page/1/gid/1938133044/pat/159/par/K02000001/ati/15/are/E92000001/iid/93862/age/1/sex/4/cat/-1/ctp/-1/yr/1/cid/4/tbm/1>

³

<https://www.ons.gov.uk/peoplepopulationandcommunity/personalandhouseholdfinances/expenditure/articles/impactofincreasedcostoflivingonadultsacrossgreatbritain/november2021tomarch2022#changes-in-the-cost-of-living>

January 2020 to October 2020 was higher than each of the previous year on year increases. Pre-pandemic increases in eligibility rose from 13.6% in January 2018, to 15.4% in January 2019, to 17.3% in January 2020. This is in part due to transitional protection which means once you become eligible for FSM the eligibility continues, regardless of changes to household finances, until the end of the current school phase, primary or secondary. The Council is awaiting further information on whether transitional protections will end for new claimants to FSM from 1st September 2023. The Department for Education have permanently extended free school meal eligibility to children in all households with no recourse to public funds (NRPF), subject to maximum income thresholds.

- 3.7 For the period 1st April 2021 – 30th September 2021 **food banks** in the Trussell Trust network based in B&NES distributed a total of 3,158 food parcels to individuals and families. This compares to a total of 4,433 parcels distributed in the same period during 2019. A drop in food bank usage during the first half of 2021 was also seen nationally and a number of factors are thought to have contributed to this including the Universal Credit (UC) increase, government schemes like Kickstart and furlough, government grants to local councils as well as support for children and families during school holidays and the development of affordable food projects. Since October 2021 local food banks have started to see an increase in demand for their services again with a further 4,046 parcels given out from Oct 21 – March 22. Feeding Britain has attributed this to the removal of the UC uplift and additional pressures on household incomes starting to take effect due to increased food, energy and living costs. Locally Citizens Advice have reported increasing numbers of people accessing their services who have received all the support that is available to them but still cannot make their household budget balance, due to either energy price increases or reductions in Universal Credit.
- 3.8 The **B&NES Fair Food Alliance** (BFFA) provides the governance and structure to drive the strategic direction and co-ordination of food insecurity work locally. The overall aim of its work is to ensure that everyone living in B&NES can reliably afford and access suitable food to meet their needs for energy, nutrition, and social & cultural connection, with dignity and without resort to emergency food aid. Below is a summary of the collective work of the BFFA and highlights of specific contributions from its members since May 2021 (points 3.9 – 3.26).
- 3.9 The alliance has benefited from strategic partnerships with St Johns Foundation, Feeding Britain and Fare share SW which have enabled learning from best practice, the ability to influence policy and strategy both locally and nationally, and attracted additional resources for co-ordination and delivery. It has secured over £200,000 of funding from St Johns Foundation, Feeding Britain, the Contain Outbreak Management Fund (COMF) ⁴and DWP to support its work over the last year.
- 3.10 The ambitions of the Fair Food Alliance have been articulated through a local action plan and operationalised through two active and committed multi-agency task groups; the Affordable Food Network (AFN) and Income Maximisation Group (IMG). The alliance is also committed to listening to and involving local people with lived experience of food insecurity and this is a key principle and theme of its work.

⁴ <https://www.gov.uk/government/publications/contain-outbreak-management-fund-2021-to-2022/contain-outbreak-management-fund-guidance-financial-year-2021-to-2022>

- 3.11 The **Affordable Food Network** has progressed from co-ordination of emergency food provision during the pandemic, working alongside our existing food banks, to identifying additional need and developing solutions at a local level to meet that need. This has included significantly expanding the type of food support available in the community, resulting in an additional 10 new affordable food projects now operating across B&NES.⁵
- 3.12 **Fare Share SW** has re-distributed an average of 11,660kg of food per month in B&NES to 31 charities/organisations from April 2021 – March 2022. The amount of food being distributed has decreased over the last 6 months from a peak of 15,000kg/month in July 2021 to around 9,000kg/month in March 2022. The organisations in B&NES receiving these food supplies are working predominantly with families with children and people on low or no income. Recipients also include organisations working with people who are homeless, older people and those with a focus on mental health. It is estimated that around 4,200 people per week in B&NES are recipients of this food.
- 3.13 The **Crop Drop** project which distributes donated fruit and vegetables from growers across B&NES to affordable food projects, expanded its reach considerably in 2021. From June to December 2021 the project made 156 drops of produce from 19 different growers, to 27 local food projects, all co-ordinated and delivered by volunteers.⁶
- 3.14 There has also been a huge co-ordinated effort to ensure families were able to access food and activities during the school holidays. In 2021, all upper tier local authorities, including Bath and North East Somerset, received government funding to coordinate and provide support for children and young people in receipt of benefit-related free school meals through the Easter, Summer and Christmas holiday periods. This funding aimed to address particular pressures for families caused by school holidays where children from low-income households are at an increased risk of reduced access to out of school activities, social isolation and reduced exposure to healthy eating and physical activity.
- 3.15 During 2021 the **Holiday Activities and Food** programme engaged with 130 children and young people over Easter (average 3.8 sessions per child), 1,910 over the summer (average 4 sessions) and 401 over the Christmas period (average 2 sessions). In October 2021, the government announced a further investment for the Holiday Activities and Food Programme for the period 2022/23 – 2024/25. A lead provider has been commissioned locally to co-ordinate delivery and ensure that the equivalent of at least six weeks' holiday provision is available for eligible children each year.
- 3.16 **Healthy Start** vouchers for pregnant women and those with children under 4 years on low incomes moved from a paper-based system to a digital one from April 2022. The vouchers, which provide money for milk, fruit, vegetables, pulses, formula milk and access to free vitamins are being actively promoted locally to raise awareness of the move to the new digital card and to highlight support available to help with the transition. The move to digital distribution has resulted in a fall in the number of families accessing the scheme due to operational issues with the change and a lack of public awareness.

⁵ <https://www.banesfoodfinder.org.uk/>

⁶ <https://www.cropdrop.org.uk/end-of-year/2021>

3.17 The **Income Maximisation** Group has focused on co-ordination, ensuring that local agencies are fully aware of each other's work and offer to the community. The group has ensured that benefits available are widely promoted and that other mechanisms for improving household income such as employment support and skills development and energy efficiency schemes are also part of the offer. It has also worked collaboratively to pilot new ways of reaching local people with advice and support needs, as well as looking at how to shift the balance from crisis fund provision to a more preventative approach to financial support.

3.18 The Contain Outbreak Management Fund (COMF) for 2021/22 provided local authorities with funds to help reduce the spread of coronavirus through public health initiatives, including community support to those disproportionately impacted. This funding enabled the income maximisation group to pilot a **Pathways from Poverty**⁷ approach in four areas of B&NES, delivered by Citizens Advice and Clean Slate. The model, developed by Feeding Britain, involves placing specialist advice workers into community-led food projects to help resolve some of the wider issues that households are facing when they receive help with food. The advice workers build trusted relationships with households in these familiar settings, and can then provide expert support around benefits, debt, budgeting, housing, energy, or employment. Early feedback from projects is that the support is very well received, and that digital exclusion is a key feature for most people accessing these services.

3.19 COMF funding also enabled the piloting of a **Poverty Proofing Schools Audit**⁸ with 10 schools in B&NES. This project will help schools to increase their understanding of the barriers and challenges faced by pupils and families who are living on a low income and help them make positive changes to policies and practices. Following evaluation, the ambition is to create a tool that all schools in B&NES can use to help them identify and mitigate the impact of poverty on children's learning and development.

3.20 The income maximisation group has also developed a local version of the Independent Food Action Network Cash First **'Worried about money?'** leaflet⁹ which is available both online and physically in community venues to help signpost people to the range of support and advice available locally.

3.21 During 21/22 the Councils **Local Welfare Provision** (LWP) budget was increased from £190,000 to £590,000 through receipt of government grants to mitigate the impact of the pandemic. Good progress was made in using the additional funding with approximately £440,000 being distributed to B&NES residents during the financial year. The majority of the funding supported residents with debt, household goods and food. Of those residents supported 80% were social housing tenants, 13% private rented tenants and 7% other household types.

3.22

In addition to the above funding, in 2021/22 the Welfare support team also distributed £1.55M of funding through the Covid Winter grant, Covid Local Support

⁷ <https://feedingbritain.org/what-works-centre/pathways-from-poverty/>

⁸ <https://thehub.bathnes.gov.uk/Page/21430>

⁹ <https://www.foodaidnetwork.org.uk/cash-first-leaflets#6>

Grant and Household Support Fund. This money was provided to residents through supermarket vouchers, to support households whose children received free school meals during school holidays, and through provision of pre-paid debit cards to help households with energy costs, and through Citizens Advice Bath and North East Somerset to support their fuel voucher scheme. The Welfare Support team also awarded £272,700 in **Discretionary Housing Payments** (DHP) to residents in 2021/22, to help with rent arrears, and to supplement Housing Benefit or Universal credit to ensure that residents could pay their rent. A total of 290 residents were supported with DHP's in 2021/22.

- 3.23 The **Household Support Fund** (HSF) continued for 6 months from April 2022 and will be extended from October to March 2023. Details and grant conditions for the extended period have not yet been announced, however the council will use the funding for the period April to September as follows; - £580,000 to continue to provide FSM vouchers for the summer and half term holiday periods, £280,000 to provide an energy support scheme for residents who receive Pension Credit, £34,400 to provide funding to Age UK to run an energy support scheme for pensioners who do not get Pension Credit, £44,000 to be provided to Citizens Advice to support their fuel voucher scheme and £28,600 to be used for administration costs involved in running these schemes.
- 3.24 The **Energy Rebate Scheme** is also being introduced for residents in 2022/23 and this comprises two elements, the Main scheme and a Discretionary fund. The Main scheme will consist of a one off £150 payment to each household in council tax bands A-D. The Discretionary fund is a one off payment of £150 and is intended to support residents who do not qualify under the rules of the Main scheme, for example because the resident is not liable for council tax or lives in a property of band E or above, but are nonetheless exposed to rising energy costs. This could be because they receive certain income-related benefits, have a household member on disability benefits or are on a low income (<£500 per week combined earnings and pensions).
- 3.25 **St John's Foundation** have also supported 497 households (both individuals and households with children) during 2021 with a total of £244,737 which has mainly been needed to buy carpets, white goods, furniture and manage council tax arrears. This is significantly less than the amount given out in 2020 due to the increase of welfare support funds via the Council.
- 3.26 The alliance works closely with the **Feeding Britain** network to provide evidence, case studies and examples of good practice to inform suggested improvements and changes to national policy and legislation. Key areas that the Feeding Britain network is currently lobbying for include;
- automatic registration for free school meals and healthy start
 - eliminating penalties associated with the use of pre-payment meters for gas and electricity
 - reviewing the eligibility criteria for free school meals.
- 3.27 The B&NES Food Equity Action Plan 2022 – 2025 (see Appendix 1) has been developed by the B&NES Fair Food Alliance following an extensive period of engagement and consultation with key stakeholders and research by University of Bath involving residents with lived experience. The Action Plan

reflects the key themes and feedback received during the consultation. There was strong consensus on the main areas of focus going forward. Underlying the approach is the challenge to ensure that leftover or surplus food does not become the answer to food insecurity and that prioritising financial wellbeing and security is key to addressing inequality of access to affordable food locally.

- 3.28 The Action Plan reflects both the operational and strategic ambitions of the alliance in ensuring a focus on prevention and early identification of food insecurity and, when working with those in crisis, ensuring that support given is easy to access, inclusive, dignified, respectful, and joined up at a local level.

On the theme of **money** the following actions were prioritised:

- A single point of access approach to applying for crisis support
- Move from signposting to direct referral amongst support agencies
- Strengthen financial support/advice within other service provision eg social prescribing, hospital discharge
- Promote fuel poverty solutions/support
- Ensure financial support is part of frontline staff induction and training
- Promotion of safe and affordable borrowing and saving options
- Ensure physical activity opportunities are affordable to families
- Widening task group participation to encourage knowledge and skills share with other sectors eg drugs, homelessness, mental health

On the theme of **affordable food** priorities include;

- Provision of community food hubs with wraparound support
- Strengthen action on nutrition advice and cooking skills
- Clear communications on support available
- Improving access to equipment for food storage/preparation and cooking
- Strengthen links with early help and children's services.
- Integrate food insecurity within the context of wider healthy weight, physical activity and food strategy
- Support longer-term funding arrangements for the Affordable Food Network

On the theme of **dignity and inclusion** the priorities are;

- Increase focus on older people – understanding need/barriers to access
- Continue to work on reducing stigma associated with accessing support
- Better understand needs of 18 – 25 yr olds living away from home
- Continue to look at ways of involving people with lived experience in the work of the alliance

- 3.29 The alliance is developing a suite of key performance indicators to help monitor and report on progress with the actions where local data is available. These may include;

- Increasing uptake of entitlements e.g. healthy start programme, free school meals
- Reduction in reported household food insecurity and children's experience of hunger
- Reduction in usage of food banks/other emergency food aid
- Increase in knowledge, awareness of household food insecurity amongst agencies and how to access support

- Increase in sustainable food/community hubs
- Reduction in need for emergency financial support
- Increase in use of green spaces for food growing
- Number of schools in B&NES completing Poverty Proofing Schools Audit

3.30 There are national, sub regional and local drivers of low income and food insecurity and the alliance will use its learning and experience to highlight where policy and systemic change could prevent residents reaching crisis point. Income inequality is a key determinant of health outcomes and healthy life expectancy. There are opportunities in the development of local and sub regional strategies and policy, including growth and economy, housing, planning, transport and climate and nature emergency to contribute to the financial wellbeing and food security of all local residents including those on low incomes, and with no recourse to public funds¹⁰.

4 STATUTORY CONSIDERATIONS

4.1 By developing a Food Equity Action Plan, B&NES Council as part of the B&NES Fair Food Alliance will support residents through seeking to prevent, reduce and mitigate against the effects of experiencing household food insecurity and thereby take preventative collective action to address health inequalities longer term.

5 RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS (FINANCE, PROPERTY, PEOPLE)

5.1 Funding for a 3yr fixed term post to co-ordinate the delivery of the B&NES Food Equity Action Plan has been received from St John's Foundation. This post sits within the Council Public Health team (Aug 2021 - July 2024). The BFFA does not have an operational budget. Funding for the continuation and/or development of projects within the Action Plan will be the subject of separate business cases/funding bids as required.

6 RISK MANAGEMENT

6.1 A risk assessment related to the issue and recommendations has been undertaken, in compliance with the Council's decision making risk management guidance.

7 EQUALITIES

7.1 An Equalities Impact Assessment has been completed (see Appendix 2) and actions incorporated into the B&NES Food Equity Action Plan.

8 CLIMATE CHANGE

8.1 This work has the potential to contribute to achievement of carbon neutrality as part of a wider focus on food and food systems in B&NES which aims to reduce food waste and increase access to fresh, seasonal local produce.

¹⁰ <https://www.citizensadvice.org.uk/about-us/our-work/our-campaigns/policy-campaigns/no-recourse-to-public-funds/>

9 OTHER OPTIONS CONSIDERED

9.1 None

10 CONSULTATION

10.1 The B&NES Food Equity Action Plan 2022 – 2025 has been developed by the B&NES Fair Food Alliance following an extensive period of engagement and consultation with key stakeholders and research by University of Bath involving residents with lived experience. The consultation process involved engagement with all BFFA members through alliance and task group meetings, an online workshop with wider stakeholders, presentation to the Prevention and Early Intervention sub-group of the B&NES Community Safety and Safeguarding Partnership. It also included commissioned research from University of Bath who carried out semi structured interviews with a range of local support groups, charities and agencies as well as in-depth interviews with 20 service users from across the area, age range and lived experience. Two face to face workshops with over 60 attendees, were held in early April 2022 in Bath and Midsomer Norton to enable those involved in the research to hear and validate the initial findings and recommendations. A report on the full findings of this research will be available in July 2022.

10.2 This report has been cleared by the S151 Officer and monitoring Officer.

Contact person	Cathy McMahon Cathy_mcmahon@bathnes.gov.uk 01225 394064
Background papers	B&NES Food Equity Action Plan 2022 – 2025 report to Children, Adults, Wellbeing Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel (17 th May 2022) https://democracy.bathnes.gov.uk/ieListDocuments.aspx?MId=5846&x=1
Please contact the report author if you need to access this report in an alternative format	

This page is intentionally left blank

Bath and North East Somerset Food Equity Action Plan

Goals

1. Everyone living in B&NES can reliably afford and access suitable food to meet their needs for energy, nutrition, and social & cultural connection, with dignity and without resort to emergency food aid.
2. In partnership with broader strategies, the growing, production, packaging, transport, marketing and consumption of that affordable and accessible food will contribute to a thriving local economy and a flourishing biosphere.

Principles

The right to food is respected. *"The right to food is a human right. It protects the right of all human beings to live in dignity, free from hunger, food insecurity and malnutrition. The right to food is not about charity, but about ensuring that all people have the capacity to feed themselves in dignity"* www.righttofood.org/work-of-jean-ziegler-at-the-un/what-is-the-right-to-food/

Food poverty is recognised as an acute form of poverty and **preventive measures** must, therefore, be taken to tackle poverty at source
Strategies to reduce food poverty must be **sustainable in the longer term** and embedded in core practice across all agencies .

Ambition

The council **uses all the levers at its disposal to maximum effect** to reduce food insecurity. These include but are not exclusive to welfare support, commissioning and procurement, planning and the community infrastructure levy for example

Systems, Structures and Governance

Aims	Actions	Achieve by	Lead Agency/ Org	Progress
To develop a long term sustainable model for co-ordination of affordable food work locally	Scope a sustainable structure for the Affordable Food Network to enable joint visioning and sustainable funding opportunities	Mar-24	AFN	
Widen remit of the IMG to encourage knowledge and skills share with other sectors eg drugs, homelessness, mental health	Update terms of reference of the group and develop membership from other sectors	Jun-22	IMG	
Work strategically to inform local sustainable food policy	Embed food equity into the Councils Integrated Health Improvement Strategy	Mar-23	PH	
	Continue to explore joint working between PH and climate emergency & sustainability team on joint objectives		PH team	
	Work to integrate financial wellbeing within wider determinants of health work across the council e.g through engagement with Economic Development Strategy, social value policy etc.		PH with support of FFA partners	
Work strategically to explore ways to address income inequality e.g access to good employment, digital inclusion, living wage, social value policies and the potential of anchor institutions				
Improve public and professional awareness of the FFA and its working groups	Develop a webpage for the FFA	Dec-22	PH	

Key	
IMG	Income Max Group
PH	Public Health
FFA	Fair Food Alliance
AFN	Affordable Food Network

Financial Wellbeing

Aims	Actions	Achieve by	Lead Agency/ Org	Progress
Increase uptake of entitlements	Increasing uptake of Free School Meals (FSM)	Mar-23	FSM team/Schools	
	Promotion of Healthy Start Scheme and new digital offer to increase uptake amongst eligible families	Mar-23	Healthy Start Project Group	
Co-ordination of crisis support funding and access locally Mainstream financial support and guidance, alongside awareness of food insecurity, within other frontline services	Promotion of pension credit entitlements		Age UK / IMG	
	Scope out feasibility of a 'single point of access' approach to applying for crisis support locally	Mar-24	Council Welfare Support Team & St Johns Foundation	
	Develop a training package, building in existing resources used by IMG and AFN members, to support induction and staff awareness of early identification and support available	Nov-22	IMG/AFN	
Move from signposting to direct referral to strengthen support offer Promotion of safe and secure borrowing and saving options	Review learning from Poverty Proofing Schools audit tool pilot, embed learning into Public Health schools programme and promote to all schools.	Oct-22	PH - Schools	
	Coordinate print and distribution of B&NES Cash First leaflet to support agencies and other community touch points, including a launch event.	May-22	PH	
	Explore ways in which services /organisations can move from signposting to direct referral, building on the learning from the community wellbeing hub model	Mar-24	CA	
	Work with GWCU to promote Credit Union, improve membership numbers in B&NES and monitor engagement across B&NES area	Mar-24	IMG	
	Support awareness campaigns on illegal lending and scamming	Mar-23	IMG	

Key	
IMG	Income Max Group
PH	Public Health
FFA	Fair Food Alliance
CA	Citizens Advice
FSM	Free School Meal
GWCU	Great Western Credit Union
AFN	Affordable Food Network

Affordable Food

Aims	Actions	Achieve by	Lead Agency/ Org	Progress
Improve community access to equipment for food storage/prep and cooking	Scope out community resources that support affordable food storage/prep and cooking in the community	Nov-22	AFN	
Develop locality food hubs and networks with integral wraparound support	Review learning from the Pathways from Poverty pilot programme and make recommendations for a local model and funding options	Mar-23	CA/Clean Slate	
	Include opportunities for education and experience of food growing / preparation/sharing within existing community provision where possible	Mar-23	AFN	
	Develop a model of community food hubs and networks for B&NES	Jun-23	AFN / PH	
Strengthen action on nutrition advice and cooking skills	Respond to recommendations from children's and adults' weight management pathway review to inform ongoing cooking skills service delivery	Mar-23	PH	

Key	
IMG	Income Max Group
PH	Public Health
FFA	Fair Food Alliance
CA	Citizens Advice
FSM	Free School Meal
GWCU	Great Western Credit Union
AFN	Affordable Food Network

Dignity and Inclusion

Aims	Actions	Achieve by	Lead Agency/ Org	Progress
Continue to build local knowledge of need and involvement of those with lived experience	Review report on research findings from University of Bath and incorporate recommendations into FFA action plan as appropriate.	Jun-22	PH	
	Use research findings to develop a resource for local agencies to inform further work on community engagement.	Sep-22	PH	
	Disseminate research and consultation findings to internal and external stakeholders to inform other partnership strategies.	Sep-22	PH	
	Working with Fare Share SW and the Affordable Food Network improve equalities data relating to those accessing food projects	Sep-22	PH	
	Use existing or newly formed networks to raise awareness of support in the community for older people experiencing food insecurity		PH	
Increase focus on older people – understanding need/barriers to access				
Continue to work on reducing stigma associated with accessing support	Promotion of culturally sensitive and nutritionally balanced and accessible food provision via food banks/clubs/pantries		AFN	
	Work with AFN members and 3SG to offer Dignity in Practice training and practice development workshops		AFN/ 3SG	
	Proactive engagement of agencies working with marginalised and vulnerable groups, BAME communities and those with disabilities.		AFN/IMG	
	Work to understand and raise awareness of support offered around digital inclusion		FFA	
Better understand needs of 18-24 yr olds living away from home	Work with providers of young people's supported housing to understand experience of food insecurity amongst client group		FFA	

Key	
IMG	Income Max Group
PH	Public Health
FFA	Fair Food Alliance
CA	Citizens Advice
FSM	Free School Meal
GWCU	Great Western Credit Union
3SG	Third Sector Group
AFN	Affordable Food Network

This page is intentionally left blank

Equality Impact Assessment / Equality Analysis

(updated May 2021)

Title of service or policy	B&NES Food Equity Action Plan 2022 - 2025
Name of directorate and service	Public Health and Prevention Services
Name and role of officers completing the EIA	Cathy McMahon, Development and Commissioning Manager, Public Health
Date of assessment	27/04/2022

Equality Impact Assessment (or ‘Equality Analysis’) is a process of systematically analysing a new or existing policy or service to identify what impact or likely impact it will have on different groups within the community. The main aim is to identify any discriminatory or negative consequences for a particular group or sector of the community, and also to identify areas where equality can be better promoted. Equality impact Assessments (EIAs) can be carried out in relation to services provided to customers and residents as well as employment policies/strategies that relate to staffing matters.

This toolkit has been developed to use as a framework when carrying out an Equality Impact Assessment (EIA) or Equality Analysis. **Not all sections will be relevant – so leave blank any that are not applicable.** It is intended that this is used as a working document throughout the process, and a final version will be published on the Council’s website.

1.	Identify the aims of the policy or service and how it is implemented.	
	Key questions	Answers / Notes
1.1	Briefly describe purpose of the service/policy e.g. • How the service/policy is delivered and by whom • If responsibility for its implementation is shared with other departments or organisations • Intended outcomes	The B&NES Food Equity Action Plan aims to ensure that everyone living in B&NES can reliably afford and access suitable food to meet their needs for energy, nutrition, and social & cultural connection, with dignity and without resort to emergency food aid The Action Plan will be delivered by the B&NES Fair Food Alliance (BFFA), which is a partnership of over 60 local and regional services and organisations working together to reduce food insecurity. The BFFA is chaired by the Director of Public Health and co-ordination is provided by the public health team supported by funding from St Johns Foundation. The action plan will use a range of KPI’s to help monitor progress including; Increasing uptake of entitlements eg free school meals, pension credits Reducing household food insecurity and children’s experience of hunger Reduction in usage of food banks/other emergency food aid Increase in knowledge, awareness of household food insecurity amongst agencies and how to access support Increase in early intervention on food insecurity Increase in sustainable food/community hubs Reduction in need for emergency financial support

		Increase in use of green spaces for food growing Number of schools in B&NES completing Poverty Proofing Schools Audit
1.2	Provide brief details of the scope of the policy or service being reviewed, for example: • Is it a new service/policy or review of an existing one? • Is it a national requirement?). • How much room for review is there?	The B&NES Fair Food Alliance has been in operation since March 2020 and following a review of progress and consultation with stakeholders, it has refreshed its priorities and has developed a new action plan for the period 2022 – 2025. There is no national requirement for areas to have food equity action plans. The action plan will be presented to the BFFA on a regular basis and is a live document therefore there are ongoing opportunities for review during the life of the plan.
1.3	Do the aims of this policy link to or conflict with any other policies of the Council?	The aims of the plan link to the Corporate objectives of the Council in terms of its overarching aim ‘to improve people’s lives’ and address inequalities in life experiences. It also aligns with the key themes of prevention and giving people a bigger say and we have specifically commissioned research to understand the needs of those with lived experience of food insecurity to inform the Action Plan.
2. Consideration of available data, research and information		

Monitoring data and other information should be used to help you analyse whether you are delivering a fair and equal service. Please consider the availability of the following as potential sources:

- **Demographic** data and other statistics, including census findings
- Recent **research** findings (local and national)
- Results from **consultation or engagement** you have undertaken
- Service user **monitoring data** (including ethnicity, sex, disability, religion/belief, sexual orientation and age)
- Information from **relevant groups** or agencies, for example trade unions and voluntary/community organisations
- Analysis of records of enquiries about your service, or **complaints** or **compliments** about them
- Recommendations of **external inspections** or audit reports

	Key questions	Data, research and information that you can refer to
2.1	What equalities training have staff received to enable them to understand the needs of our diverse community?	Members of the public health team who co-ordinate the Alliance have received equalities training as part of their core role. Members of the alliance have access to Dignity in Practice training and several organisations are now taking part in this.
2.2	What is the equalities profile of service users?	The Food Equity Action Plan is delivered by a range of services across the B&NES area. We are currently in the process of collecting data from food projects in B&NES to better understand the profile of service users. The organisations in B&NES receiving food supplies from Fare Share SW and redistributing this to local people are working predominantly with families with children and people on low or no income. Recipients also include people who are homeless, older people and those with a focus on mental health.

		Research from the Trussell Trust¹ in 2017 identified the key groups using emergency food aid as single working age adults without children, lone parents with children, and families with three or more children. Amongst these groups there was also a high proportion of people living with disabilities and/or long-term health conditions. Of those accessing welfare support in B&NES during 21/22 the majority were living in social rented housing (80%) with 13% living in private rented accommodation and 7% other household types.
2.4	Are there any recent customer satisfaction surveys to refer to? What were the results? Are there any gaps? Or differences in experience/outcomes?	In Autumn 2021 qualitative research was commissioned from University of Bath to help with understanding the lived experience of household food insecurity in B&NES. The initial findings of this research were presented to alliance and community members in April 2022 and a full report is due in May 2022.
2.5	What engagement or consultation has been undertaken as part of this EIA and with whom? What were the results?	The consultation process in development of the plan has been ongoing since November 2021. This has involved talking to the task groups of the BFFA – the affordable food network (AFN) and the income maximisation group (IMG), carrying out a virtual workshop with key stakeholders, commissioning research on lived experience from Bath University and presenting the draft plan to the Prevention and Early Intervention Sub Group of the Community Safety and Safeguarding Partnership, alongside engagement with other Council working groups such as the Healthy Start Working Group. During the consultation process stakeholders and local people identified best practices/ideas for engaging both existing service users and reaching out to communities not represented in their services particularly older people, BAME groups and young people 18 – 25 yrs living away from home. These ideas will be made into a guide for local groups to support staff training and awareness of best practice in community engagement.

¹ https://www.trusselltrust.org/wp-content/uploads/sites/2/2017/07/OU_Report_final_01_08_online2.pdf

		The Bath University research referred to above will be published as a report on the B&NES website and the recommendations incorporated into the Action Plan.				
2.6	If you are planning to undertake any consultation in the future regarding this service or policy, how will you include equalities considerations within this?	We plan to continue our conversation with local residents to involve them in the development and delivery of the action plan. We will use the feedback received so far and the guide referred to above to inform our approach.				
3. Assessment of impact: ‘Equality analysis’						
	Based upon any data you have considered, or the results of consultation or research, use the spaces below to demonstrate you have analysed how the service or policy: - Meets any particular needs of equalities groups or could help promote equality in some way. - Could have a negative or adverse impact for any of the equalities groups					
		<table><tr><th>Examples of what the service has done to promote equality</th><th>Examples of actual or potential negative or adverse impact and what steps have been or could be taken to address this</th></tr><tr><td> 3.1 Issues relating to all groups and protected characteristics The Action Plan is applicable to all groups in the community who are experiencing food insecurity. The alliance terms of reference clearly state the equalities principles in which it will work. These include; The Right to Food The Right to Food is about ensuring that all people regardless of their gender, race, immigration status or age are able to access food in a dignified way. The United Nations Convention on Human Rights, to which the UK government is a signatory, declares that it is the State that </td><td></td></tr></table>	Examples of what the service has done to promote equality	Examples of actual or potential negative or adverse impact and what steps have been or could be taken to address this	3.1 Issues relating to all groups and protected characteristics The Action Plan is applicable to all groups in the community who are experiencing food insecurity. The alliance terms of reference clearly state the equalities principles in which it will work. These include; The Right to Food The Right to Food is about ensuring that all people regardless of their gender, race, immigration status or age are able to access food in a dignified way. The United Nations Convention on Human Rights, to which the UK government is a signatory, declares that it is the State that	
Examples of what the service has done to promote equality	Examples of actual or potential negative or adverse impact and what steps have been or could be taken to address this					
3.1 Issues relating to all groups and protected characteristics The Action Plan is applicable to all groups in the community who are experiencing food insecurity. The alliance terms of reference clearly state the equalities principles in which it will work. These include; The Right to Food The Right to Food is about ensuring that all people regardless of their gender, race, immigration status or age are able to access food in a dignified way. The United Nations Convention on Human Rights, to which the UK government is a signatory, declares that it is the State that						

		has an obligation to fulfil the right to food.² The Right to Food is defined by former United Nations Special Rapporteur Jean Ziegler as: “The right to have regular, permanent and unrestricted access, either directly or by means of financial purchases, to quantitatively and qualitatively adequate and sufficient food corresponding to the cultural traditions of the people to which the consumer belongs, and which ensure a physical and mental, individual and collective, fulfilling and dignified life free of fear.” The UK has ratified a number of international treaties that refer to the Right to Food and broader socioeconomic rights. These include the International Covenant on Social, Economic and Cultural Rights, the convention on the rights of the child and the convention on the rights of people with disabilities.³ By adopting this principle, the alliance is looking to raise awareness of the universal right to access food, with the aim of specifically empowering those with lived experience. Addressing health inequalities Food insecurity disproportionately impacts on women and children and those with long term conditions and disabilities. By developing a food equity action plan in partnership with a wide range of local stakeholders and partners, we will strengthen collective action to support residents experiencing food poverty and through a focus	

² <https://www.ohchr.org/en/issues/food/pages/foodindex.aspx>

³ https://www.sustainweb.org/resources/files/reports/Why_we_need_the_right_to_food.pdf

		on preventative action contribute towards addressing health inequalities longer term. It must also be acknowledged that the impact of the COVID 19 pandemic will affect a wider proportion of the population and broaden the profile of those experiencing food poverty in the short to medium term. Social perspective of poverty Food insecurity is driven by of a combination of structural issues relating to the security and cost of housing, quality of employment, adequacy of welfare provision and the cost of living generally. A social perspective of poverty is concerned with the structures and organisation of society and how it relates to social problems and individual lives, looking at the issue of poverty through the lens of how society is organised rather than a focus solely on individuals' behaviour and choices. Involving those with life experience This work will be guided by the meaningful involvement of people with life experience of food insecurity. Those with lived experience will be actively involved at all levels to identify and develop local solutions as well as advocating for longer term sustainable action both locally and nationally. Community engagement Engagement with local residents, communities and the 3rd sector is essential to understanding need and developing sustainable solutions to food insecurity. This work will reflect the principles in the Council' Community Engagement Charter.	

		Safeguarding This principle relates to our moral duty of care to provide a healthy food system for all. Future proofing This means taking into account how local responses to food insecurity can be resilient to local, national and global change including the transition of residents to Universal Credit, the impact of COVID 19, Brexit and climate change for example.	
3.2	Sex – identify the impact/potential impact of the policy on women and men.	Women with children are disproportionately impacted by food insecurity. The work of the alliance has a significant focus on families with children e.g 16/35 projects within the affordable food network are working directly with households with children.	
3.3	Pregnancy and maternity	The Healthy Start scheme is a key benefit for those who are pregnant and on low income and uptake of this scheme is actively promoted by the alliance.	
3.4	Gender reassignment – identify the impact/potential impact of the policy on transgender people	Stonewall research indicates that trans people can be at risk of homelessness due to discrimination in accessing housing. The Action Plan is applicable to all groups in the community who are experiencing food insecurity.	
3.5	Disability – identify the impact/potential impact of the policy on disabled people (ensure consideration both physical, sensory and mental impairments and mental health)	Those with long term health conditions are at risk of food insecurity if they are on low income or unable to work due to their condition or have additional expenses due to their health needs for example. The Action Plan has identified the need to engage further with groups supporting those with disabilities to ensure awareness and access to local affordable food and financial support.	

3.6	Age – identify the impact/potential impact of the policy on different age groups	AFN members are working with all age groups in the community. The Action Plan consultation has identified a need to better understand the barriers to food security for older people and those aged 18 – 24 yr who are living away from home.	
3.7	Race – identify the impact/potential impact on across different ethnic groups	The BFFA has engaged proactively with BEMSCA to support active engagement in the affordable food network and understanding of specific food needs and preferences. The AFN have developed a list of Ukrainian foods to encourage provision by projects where appropriate The AFN has proactively engaged with Bath Welcome Refugees to help with support to asylum seekers in B&NES	
3.8	Sexual orientation – identify the impact/potential impact of the policy on lesbian, gay, bisexual, heterosexual people	The alliance action plan is looking to benefit everyone experiencing food insecurity. Some research suggests LGBT young people are at higher risk of homelessness due to conflict within the family linked to coming out. The action plan has identified a need to better understand the needs of young people living away from home.	
3.9	Marriage and civil partnership – does the policy/strategy treat married and civil partnered people equally?	The action plan priorities treat married and civil partnered people equally.	
3.10	Religion/belief – identify the impact/potential impact of the policy on people of different religious/faith groups and also	The alliance has active representation from a range of Christian organisations and has been working to reach out to organisations representing the Muslim community to better understand needs.	

	upon those with no religion.		
3.11	Socio-economically disadvantaged* – identify the impact on people who are disadvantaged due to factors like family background, educational attainment, neighbourhood, employment status can influence life chances (this is not a legal requirement, but is a local priority).	The alliance action plan is aimed at specifically supporting those on low incomes to access affordable food and advice and support to maximise their income, manage debt, access employment support and skills and support with digital inclusion.	
3.12	Rural communities* identify the impact / potential impact on people living in rural communities	Rural communities experiencing food insecurity are disadvantaged by the additional costs associated with transport and purchasing goods from small local/convenience stores in particular. Provision of local support services in rural areas is also likely to be less frequent and less accessible. The alliance actively works to ensure provision of advice, information and support is available across the whole of B&NES and maps to areas of high risk of food insecurity. There is good representation from rural areas in the affordable food network.	
3.13	Armed Forces Community ** serving members; reservists; veterans and their families, including the bereaved. Public services will soon be required by law to pay due regard to the Armed Forces Community when developing policy, procedures	Armed forces community are not represented on the alliance as a body but the work of the alliance members will benefit anyone experiencing financial and food insecurity including members of the armed forces community. Recording participation from the armed forces community is an area for development.	

	and making decisions, particularly in the areas of public housing, education and healthcare (to remove disadvantage and consider special provision).		

*There is no requirement within the public sector duty of the Equality Act to consider groups who may be disadvantaged due to socio economic status, or because of living in a rural area. However, these are significant issues within B&NES and have therefore been included here.

** The Equality Act does not cover armed forces community. However, when the Armed Forces Bill becomes law there will be a requirement to pay 'due regard' to make sure the Armed Forces Community are not disadvantaged when accessing public services.

4. Bath and North East Somerset Council & NHS B&NES Equality Impact Assessment Improvement Plan

Please list actions that you plan to take as a result of this assessment/analysis. These actions should be based upon the analysis of data and engagement, any gaps in the data you have identified, and any steps you will be taking to address any negative impacts or remove barriers. The actions need to be built into your service planning framework. Actions/targets should be measurable, achievable, realistic and time framed.

Issues identified	Actions required	Progress milestones	Officer responsible	By when
The need for improved equalities data for people accessing food projects in the community	Working with Fare Share SW and the Affordable Food Network to gather service user data where available	Data collection process agreed with AFN	Cathy McMahon	Sept 22

Understanding the needs of older people in terms of food insecurity	Use existing or newly formed networks to raise awareness of support in the community for older people experiencing food insecurity	Increased representation from agencies working directly with vulnerable older people in the BFFA	Cathy McMahon	Sept 22
Continue to work on reducing stigma attached to accessing support	Promotion of culturally sensitive and nutritionally balanced and accessible food provision via food banks/clubs/pantries Work with AFN members and 3SG to offer Dignity in Practice training and practice development workshops Proactive engagement of agencies working with marginalised and vulnerable groups, young people living away from home, BAME communities and those with disabilities.	Dignity in practice training plan Increased representation of agencies working with vulnerable groups on BFFA	Cathy McMahon	March 23
Earlier identification of food and financial insecurity in the community	Develop a training package, building in existing resources used by IMG and AFN members, to support induction and staff awareness of early identification and support available	Number of workers trained in early identification	Cathy McMahon	Nov 22
Continue to build local knowledge of need and involvement of those with lived experience	Review report on research findings from University of Bath and incorporate recommendations into FFA action plan as appropriate. Use research findings to develop	Publication of report on website Dissemination of findings Production of community engagement guide	Cathy McMahon	Jun 22

	a resource for local agencies to inform further work on community engagement. Disseminate research and consultation findings to internal and external stakeholders to inform other partnership strategies			

5. Sign off

Signed off by: Rebecca Reynolds, Director of Public Health and Prevention

Date:04/05/2022

Bath & North East Somerset Council	
MEETING:	Council
MEETING DATE:	21st July 2022
TITLE:	Policy Development & Scrutiny Annual Report 2021-2022
WARD:	All
AN OPEN PUBLIC ITEM	
List of attachments to this report: 1. Policy Development & Scrutiny Annual Report	

1 THE ISSUE

- 1.1 To consider the Policy Development & Scrutiny Annual Report for 2021-2022.

2 RECOMMENDATION

The Council is asked to;

- 2.1** Note the work of the Policy Development & Scrutiny Panels, as set out in the Annual Report attached at Appendix 1.

3 THE REPORT

- 3.1 As part of its statutory duty the Council is required to appoint at least one Overview and Scrutiny Committee / Panel that will have sole responsibility to discharge the functions under Sections 9F and 9FA to 9FI of the Local Government Act 2000, as relevant to the Council's statutory duties and responsibilities. The current model includes; 3 Policy Development & Scrutiny Panels. They provide a system of checks and balances implemented by Councillors who monitor the activity of the Cabinet members and assist them in developing policy.
- 3.2 The Policy Development & Scrutiny Chairs & Vice Chairs Group agreed that it would provide an annual report to the Council summarising the work of the Scrutiny over the previous year.
- 3.3 The PDS chairs and vice chairs group have an oversight of the work of each of the Panels and responsibility for coordinating the Council's scrutiny activity. Each of the

Chairs has provided a synopsis of the work that their committee have carried out this year.

- 3.4 The Annual Report provides an opportunity to highlight some of the positive work carried out by the Panels and Committee both internally / externally, and particularly with partners and agencies involved with scrutiny throughout the year.

4 STATUTORY CONSIDERATIONS

- 4.1 The Policy Development & Scrutiny Chairs & Vice Chairs Group are not required to produce an annual report however it is good practice to do so.

5 RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS (FINANCE, PROPERTY, PEOPLE)

- 5.1 There are no direct implications arising from this report.

6 RISK MANAGEMENT

- 6.1 A risk assessment related to the issue and recommendations has been undertaken, in compliance with the Council's decision making risk management guidance.

7 EQUALITIES

- 7.1 The Corporate Panel includes Equalities within its remit and will consult the Race Equality Panel if relevant to the item being scrutinised.

8 CLIMATE CHANGE

- 8.1 The report highlights some of the work carried out by the Climate Emergency & Sustainability Panel.

9 OTHER OPTIONS CONSIDERED

- 9.1 None.

10 CONSULTATION

- 10.1 Monitoring Officer.

Contact person	Cllr Karen Warrington Chair of the PDS Chairs & Vice Chairs Group
Background papers	None.
Please contact the report author if you need to access this report in an alternative format	

Policy Development & Scrutiny Annual Report

2021- 2022



Foreword - Cllr Karen Warrington

This year has continued to be busy as the panels navigate through the pandemic and ensure that we collectively continue to investigate areas that are of concern for residents, particularly surrounding our recovery plans and on reflecting on the lessons learned on our response to the Pandemic.

May I also take this opportunity to thank everyone who has played a part, no matter how small, in contributing to the work of the Council's three scrutiny Panels 2021/22. Collectively, Members have risen to the ongoing challenges and adapted our procedures and practices to focus scrutiny resources on the areas where we can make the most Impact.



To conclude, although this year has continued to be challenging in our attempts to prioritise our workplans and identify where scrutiny can make the most value. I would like to take this opportunity to thank my Scrutiny Member colleagues for their support, flexibility, and commitment during this period. This also includes my fellow Chairs & Vice Chairs who have been working on how to continuously improve the efficiency and effectiveness of the work of the panels and have sought to implement the recommendations suggested, following the 'Good Governance in Scrutiny' session, attended by members and officers in September 2021. I would also like to extend thanks to Cabinet, residents, businesses who have contributed, and specifically those council officers without whose support we would not be so effective.

I believe that this report provides a flavour of some of the continued excellent work that the Policy Development & Scrutiny Panels have done this year.

Cllr Karen Warrington
Chair of the PDS Chairs & Vice Chairs Group

Annual Report — Contents

1. Key Information about Policy Development & Scrutiny
2. Key successes for 2021-22
3. Good Governance in Scrutiny Session
4. Snapshot of the work of the Climate Emergency & Sustainability Panel
5. Snapshot of the work of the Children, Adult, Health & Wellbeing Panel
6. Snapshot of the work of the Corporate Panel
7. Call-in of decision
8. Community Involvement
9. Contact

1

■ Key information about Scrutiny

The Overview & Scrutiny function is known as Policy Development & Scrutiny (PDS). The function consists of 3 PDS Panels

- Climate Emergency & Sustainability Panel
- Corporate Panel
- Children, Adults, Health & Wellbeing Panel

Scrutiny's Role

- To make recommendations to the Cabinet or Council
- To act or challenge as a critical friend to the Cabinet
- Panels do not make decisions about council policies and services
- Panels do not deal with individual queries or complaints; or investigate planning or licensing decisions.

Meetings

- Are open to the public to attend
- Typically last 2-3 hrs
- Meet regularly (during daytime and evenings)
- Have a formal structure, but are run in an accessible way
- Papers published at www.bathnes.gov.uk

Residents and stakeholders can get involved by

- Attending public meetings
- Giving evidence to one of the panels
- Sending in comments about a review
- Watching the meetings in full on our YouTube channel
<https://www.youtube.com/user/bathnescouncil> – either live or afterwards

2

■ Key successes for 2021 - 22

Summary of the main achievements of Scrutiny during 21/22

- The Panels have continued to be busy throughout the COVID Pandemic and have [carefully monitored the impact that this has had on front line services and on our budget](#). The Panels had 22 formal meetings scrutinising 68 items during this year, including one call-in meeting and one Scrutiny Inquiry Day, which was a virtual meeting involving a wider variety of partners and key stakeholders.
- [Members have continued to adapt to the 'virtual' meeting setting due to the COVID Pandemic](#). However, moving into 2022 and as the restrictions for COVID were slowly lifted the Panels have now started to return to public facing meetings and have started to engage as they would have done pre pandemic, which will also hopefully improve public engagement.
- [The Panel members have looked to continually improve the effectiveness of the scrutiny function and have undertaken a 'Good Governance in Scrutiny Session'](#) to look at where we can improve what we do. The feedback and recommendations from this session are detailed within this year's annual report. The continuous improvement of Scrutiny within B&NES Council will now be considered annually by the Chairs & Vice Chairs group.
- The Children's Adult Health & Wellbeing Panel have experienced difficulty in prioritising many items, including some that were delayed from being scrutinised due to the COVID Pandemic. This resulted in several Panel meetings that had longer agendas than normal. [Moving forward into 2022, the Panel will now be trialling a new approach of alternating the focus of Panel meetings between Adult and Children's Services](#). This will result in a few extra meetings throughout 2022 with a 6-month review of its effectiveness, which will be reported in next year's Annual Report.
- [The Chairs & Vice Chairs have also been developing ways of improving the questioning of report authors at Panel meetings](#) with some Panels requesting a two-question rule to help manage Panels' meeting time effectively and further questions sent to officers in advance of the meeting so that they can come prepared with answers.

The LGA team were invited to Bath and North East Somerset Council (B&NES) on the 1st of September to present a session on Good Governance in Scrutiny. This followed a resolution at a Council meeting held on the 10th of September 2020 that *'Council welcomes the opportunity to consider this annual PDS report and, in the interest of continuous improvement, requests an external peer review by the LGA of the Council's approach to scrutiny and policy development and the particular effectiveness of the current panels'*.

The session was attended by 2 Cabinet members, 9 Scrutiny members and 16 officers.

Feedback from the session included: -

- There is a good understanding of the basics of scrutiny amongst members and officers.
- The importance of scrutiny being about taking the opportunity to influence rather than having power, and to focus on outcomes that would have impact.
- Members were reminded of the need to use evidence in their recommendations to increase the credibility of scrutiny.
- That a robust process for agenda planning and prioritisation would address any work planning concerns. The use of the prioritisation matrix must also be used consistently across all three Panels.
- The importance of building relationships and trust across the council for Scrutiny to be effective.

The following recommendations were considered: -

1. **A Cabinet Forward Plan, including appropriate detail, is essential to allow Scrutiny to have early involvement in policy development and pre-decision input. A business plan for the council that gives a timeline for significant pieces of work or decisions will be similarly helpful and allow Scrutiny to be engaged early in the process.** - The Corporate Panel will be considering how Performance Management Reporting can be scrutinised more effectively by the panels in 2022. However further work on ensuring early involvement in Policy Development still requires future work planning.
2. **Use the Prioritisation Matrix form to assist with agenda planning. A consistent approach will ensure that the Panels make best use of their limited time and resource. The form will support working across Panels and ensure a fair approach in dealing with all requests for agenda items, both internally and externally – All three Panels are now using the priority Matrix form for new item requests to help prioritise their workload.**
3. **Monitor the work undertaken by Scrutiny, to evidence the impact of Scrutiny outcomes and support the prioritisation and agenda planning activity.** – A spreadsheet has been developed to record and monitor the items that are scrutinised by the Panels and to help track the outcomes of decisions or considerations.

4.

Snapshot of the work of the Climate Emergency & Sustainability Panel

During 2021 the Climate Emergency & Sustainability Panel have continued to adapt to the effects of the COVID Pandemic and adjust their workplan to accommodate emerging plans. They have also continued to balance these time critical items against the priorities that the council is committed to delivering.

At the June 2021 Panel meeting members listened to an officer's presentation on Climate Emergency with a focus on our Area Carbon Footprint and Performance monitoring. This ensured that the Panel members understood the Council's progress towards the actions taken against the 2019 commitments. The Panel also requested that the Cabinet Member reports back with some specific goals and target dates at a future Panel meeting and requested a greater focus for future Annual progress reports setting out specific measurable actions that can be carefully monitored by the panel in the future.

The Panel scrutinised the Council's proposals for investment in Neighbourhood Services at its March 2022 meeting and carefully considered how we can communicate and engage with communities further on our clean and green activities. The Panel made several comments and suggestions on the 11 priority activities which were forwarded to the Cabinet Member for Neighbourhood Services and relevant officers to consider in their future planning.

The Chair & Vice Chair have been carefully forward planning their 2022 workplan and have scheduled items that will cover the various detailed aspects of the work that we are delivering on our Climate Emergency and Sustainability commitments and following an agreement at a Chairs & Vice Chairs meeting the Panel will also now scrutinise the Housing and Transport issues of the West of England Combined Authority alongside the scrutiny of our local transport and housing issues. This work will now be showcased in future Annual Reports.

Items Scrutinised by the Panel 2021—2022

- Climate Emergency (Area Carbon Footprint update and Performance Monitoring)
- Climate Emergency Procurement Strategy
- Liveable neighbourhoods Update
- Clean Air Zone Update
- Development of Neighbourhood Services
- Progress Report on the Local Plan Partial Update associated supplementary planning documents and the WECA Spatial Strategy
- Final Strategy for Planting Trees in B&NES
- 22/23 Draft Budget Assumptions
- Council House Building Programme
- Air Quality Update
- Draft Annual Report – Climate Emergency
- Neighbourhood Cleansing
- City Region Sustainable Transport Settlement
- Journey to Net Zero - Reducing the Environmental Impact of Transport in Bath

5.

Snapshot of the work of the Children, Adults, Health & Wellbeing Panel

This year the work of the Children, Adults, Health & Wellbeing Panel (CAHW) has continued to be busy. The impact of COVID has continued to place pressure on prioritising the workload of the Panel as some delayed items have been looked at during 2021 and the scrutiny of these items have resulted in longer Panel meetings.

The Panel continued to receive regular updates on progress of the 'shaping a Healthier Future', which was formally the New Hospital Programme. The Panel provided the opportunity for public engagement on its business case and progress. At the January 2022 Panel meeting, members of the Panel also scrutinised the Music Service and were assured that previous key areas of weakness in the delivery of the service have been addressed and that the service now needs to have its future secured for the long term. The Panel agreed the proposal for B&NES Music Service to join a West of England Music (and Arts) Alliance; a tri-hub music alliance (shared service) between B&NES, North Somerset, and South Gloucestershire. During 2021/ 22 the members have also been understanding the adverse impacts of COVID on the B&NES workforce and have heard from officers on the research that they have been doing to understand the impacts and identifying any differences between men and women. This has been an opportunity for members to learn from the Pandemic and to inform future decision making.

The Panel have also been regularly kept informed of the commissioning of Virgin Care Services since March 2021 and have requested a specific focus for each report to Panel to be carefully monitored and made recommendations to Cabinet on the extension of its contract. However more recently the Panel have been consulted on the transfer of this contract with HCRG and what the new arrangements will now look like.

Moving forward, the Panel will ensure that every item adds value, whilst balancing the items between Children and Adults. The Panel will pilot rotating the meetings between Adult and Children and reviewing its effectiveness in early 2023.

Items Scrutinised by the Panel 2021—2022

- Narrowing the Education Gap
- Exploitation
- Corporate Parenting
- Food Insecurity
- Adoption West Annual Scrutiny Report
- Shaping a Healthier Future (Formally New Hospital Programme)
- Complaints & Feedback Annual report for Adult Social Care 2020- 21
- Community Mental Health Services Framework
- Complaints & Feedback Annual report for Adult Social Care 2021-22
- Adverse effects of the impact of COVID on women
- Virgin Care Update
- Health & Social Care Bill ICS Update
- Regional Schools Commissioner Presentation
- Virgin Care Contract Extension - Option Appraisal
- B&NES Community Safety & Safeguarding Partnership Annual Report
- Independent Reviewing Officer (IRO) Annual Report
- The Impact of COVID on the B&NES Workforce
- Draft Budget Assumption 2022/23
- Music Service
- Adoption West Contract Extension
- HCRG -Report on Children's Community Health Service

6.

Snapshot of the work of the Corporate Panel

As we move out of Covid the Panel have been looking at the work that the Council has been doing on preparing for the future and reviewed the upgrading work at the Keynsham Civic Centre as well as at our other office accommodation scrutinising any equalities issues and any cost implications. Panel members have also been monitoring staff feedback and recruitment and retention issues as we prepare for the future and moving towards 2023.

The Panel have also been kept up to date with the Community Contribution Fund which was launched in March 2021 to enable residents to donate funds to support local causes. The fund has reached a sufficient level where grants can now be awarded. This followed the scrutiny of the original development of the CCF at the September 2020 Panel meeting when members resolved to report back to Council with recommendations on how a Community Contribution Fund might work in practice.

Alongside detailed briefings on key topic areas that will have a wider impact on the delivery of our services, such as the emerging digital data and Technology Strategy the Panel continued to monitor and scrutinise the medium-term financial plans and draft budget setting at its meeting in January. Moving forward, the Panel would like to have a greater understanding of Performance Management Reporting with a focus on understanding our KPI's, narrowing down possibly 3-5 KPI's to monitor how the Council are delivering in certain areas.

The Panel also took the lead in a Call-in meeting in June on the mission theatre which is highlighted on the next page of this year's Annual Report.

Items Scrutinised by the Panel 2021 -2022

- Call In Decision Mission theatre – CAT
- Corporate Strategy
- Customer Contact
- Emerging Digital Data & Technology Strategy
- Preparing for the Future
- Costs of Delivering Highways Safety Infrastructure
- Planning Gain
- Integrated performance Framework Measures
- Medium Term Financial Strategies
- Draft Budget Assumption 2022/23
- Economic Development
- Draft Budget
- Community Contribution Fund Progress Report
- Council Budget
- People Strategy
- Preparing for the Future
- Corporate Risk Register

What is a call-in?

Scrutiny legislation allows for a Scrutiny Panel to investigate, make reports and recommendations on Cabinet decisions that have been agreed but not yet put into action. Legislation allows for action on these decisions to be suspended pending such a Scrutiny investigation. This process is referred to as a scrutiny 'Call-in'. Following any scrutiny call-in, the Scrutiny Panel may request Cabinet reconsider its decision on the basis of the further evidence gathered.



The Corporate Panel reviewed one Cabinet decision during the period 2021/22. The call-in meeting took place on June 14th, 2021, on the decision regarding the Mission Theatre Community Asset Transfer which reviewed the original Approval agreement to delegate authority to the Head of Estates to;

- complete the disposal of Mission Theatre by way of a lease in line with the draft Heads of Terms.
- abate the rent to a peppercorn subject to Next Stage Theatre Company satisfying the Council that they will use the building for the purposes set out in their Business Plan.
- The CAT is offered on a lease term of 99 years. The transfer will take place on the basis of the current condition of the building and liabilities for maintenance will be the responsibility of NSTC.
- This proposal is in line with the Council's policy regarding Community Asset Transfers the aim of which is to help secure community benefits in line with the Council priorities and objectives.

The call-in notice received objected to this decision on the following grounds:

1. There has been no opportunity for elected members to scrutinise the proposal.
2. The report is limited and does not demonstrate how the council arrived at this decision based on a request from a private company to be given our asset.
3. Why an Asset Transfer? In this case it seems to be a sledgehammer to crack a nut. There is an existing lease arrangement that the private company running Mission Theatre have been adhering to. That could have been amended to reflect any financial support being offered.
4. Is the existing lease 'full repairing', if so, the onus is on the building occupiers to meet the repair and update costs. They are fund raising to meet that obligation.
5. We need reassurance that we will avoid a situation arising in the future.

6. In the context of the redevelopment of Bath Quays it seems premature to be relinquishing this building for 99 years when its future may be part of the new development.

To assist in their deliberations, the Corporate Panel received a range of written and verbal evidence, interviewed the Cabinet Member for Resources, Council officers, and a representative Councillor, on behalf of those Councillors who signed the request to review the decision for the call-in.

However, after a detailed discussion and debate the Panel voted to dismiss the call-in and allow the decision to be implemented.

The minutes of these meetings can be found on our public website.

8.

Community Involvement



Our PDS Panels work closely with a wide selection of groups, organisations, and individuals. We welcome the opportunities to hear from members of the public at our Panel meetings whose input is important in understanding the concerns and needs from our community.

In the past, individuals, campaign groups and local organisations have been involved in our Call-in meetings, presented at Scrutiny Inquiry Days, fed into scrutiny review work, and provided briefings to inform Panel members on key topics.

Without positive, trusting and mutually beneficial relationships, the work of the PDS Panels would not be nearly as valuable.

How to get involved in scrutiny

- [Attend meetings](#) - All our scrutiny meetings are open to the public and you are welcome to come along and listen to the debate and discussion. Please note that reports may be considered in private if they contain confidential information.
- [Ask a question or make a point](#) - All we ask is that if you want a formal detailed response, please let us have details of the question five days in advance.
- [Present a petition](#) – You can present a petition to a meeting.
- [Request a review](#) - If there is something you think scrutiny should look at, then let us know. Contact a Scrutiny Chair or Member of the Panel/Committee or contact Scrutiny directly.
- [Consultation and participation](#) - You could be asked for your views on an issue or be invited to provide specialist knowledge you might have by being a witness in a scrutiny review. You are also free to offer your knowledge on any on-going reviews.
- [Watch the meetings in full on our YouTube channel](#) - <https://www.youtube.com/user/bathnescouncil> – either live or afterwards

9. ■ Contacts

For further information about this document, or to get involved, please contact:

Senior Scrutiny Officer - Donna Vercoe 01225 396053
Donna Vercoe (01225) 396053

For specific Committee enquiries, please contact:

Senior Democratic Services Officer— Michaela Gay (01225) 394411

- Climate Emergency & Sustainability Panel
- Corporate Panel

Democratic Services Officer— Mark Durnford (01225) 394458

- Children, Adults, Health & Wellbeing Panel

All correspondence to:

Policy Development and Scrutiny
Bath and North East Somerset Council
Keynsham Civic Centre
BS31 1FS

scrutiny@bathnes.gov.uk

If you require this document in a different format (such as Braille, large print etc.) or have any further comments on this report or any aspects of the work of policy development and scrutiny, please contact us.

This page is intentionally left blank

Bath & North East Somerset Council		
MEETING	Council	
MEETING DATE:	21 July 2022	
TITLE:	Constitution Refresh	
WARD:	All	
AN OPEN PUBLIC ITEM		
List of attachments to this report: Appendix 1 Table summarising changes in structure to the old Constitution Appendix 2 Table showing the destination of the content of the Articles Appendix 3 LGA 2000 Direction Constitution Checklist Appendix 4 Draft new Constitution		

1 THE ISSUE

1.1 In November 2021 the Council tasked the Constitution Working Group (CWG) to review the Council's current Constitution within a set of defined parameters and in accordance with the following principles to recommend an updated Constitution that is:

- accessible and modern
- easier and simpler to understand
- streamlined by removing sections not formally required to be within the Constitution
- removes duplication
- digitally compatible & easily read across screens

- cross referenced through hyperlinks and searchable text
 - provides a summary and overview of how the Council operates
 - includes a glossary for consistent use of terminology
 - clarifies responsibility for decision making
 - ensures legislative requirements are current
 - is future proofed
- 1.2 Due to the format of the current Constitution (having a general summary, a set of Articles then substantive sections), issues are said two and three times, often in slightly different ways and it is difficult to be certain that the full or correct picture is being presented on any issue without exhaustive searching.
- 1.3 The Constitution has been re-drafted with the above in mind, along with an objective view of potential changes and streamlining of functions that ought to be clearer and thereby improve efficiency and effectiveness.
- 1.4 It is timely that the review has taken place at this point in the 4 year election cycle, as it draws on the input of experienced members, and will ensure that an updated Constitution is in place for the new intake of Councillors in 2023.
- 1.5 This review is also supported by the Council's auditors in their 2020/21 Value For Money report which stated

We noted that the Constitution is being refreshed in 2021/22 to improve accessibility, ease of use, digital compatibility, links to other Council information, and to remove duplication and clarify responsibility for decision making. We noted that the Constitution can be complicated to navigate and we endorse these proposed improvements.

2 RECOMMENDATION

The Council is asked to;

- 2.1 Consider the changes unanimously approved and proposed by the Constitution Working Group and adopt the updated Constitution as set out at Appendix 4;**
- 2.2 Determine the date of adoption of the Updated Constitution to be the 2nd August 2022.**
- 2.3 Agree that the Constitution Working Group should continue to meet in order to advise on the further rationalisation work to be done on the Financial Regulations and Contract Standing Orders, and pick up any glitches identified.**

3 THE REPORT

- 3.1 The current Constitution is over 570 pages long with 8 separate sections. The CWG have sought to reduce this considerably, by moving some non- statutory policies into an online Library (now accessible through hyper-links in the Constitution), and removing duplication of identical rules appearing in separate

sections. The draft updated Constitution currently comprises 369 pages in total and the further work proposed for stage 2 of the review (see Financial Regulations and Contract Standing Orders section later) will substantially reduce the total page count further.

- 3.2 Whilst undertaking this work, officers and the CWG were reassured that the current Constitution is fit for purpose and legislatively and corporately accurate. The work undertaken was therefore an opportunity to refine and update as issues were reviewed. The CWG have also sought to ensure that the Constitution reflects the way in which the Council currently operates.
- 3.3 Members will be aware that some areas of dispute were brought to the May Council meeting. The CWG considered comments and representations made following that meeting and their final agreed position has been incorporated in the Constitution (at paragraph 3.1.23 and 3.2.20) which they are now recommending to Council for adoption.

4 FORM & STRUCTURE OF THE CONSTITUTION

- 4.1 The CWG identified that the Council's current Constitution does not read as a modern document and could be improved significantly through the use of more modern language, web links, graphics and better presentation.
- 4.2 The Articles have been removed from the Constitution and, where appropriate, content from the Articles has been moved elsewhere in the Constitution. The aim of moving this content has been to ensure that information about specific functions/committees/officers etc appears in as few separate places as possible so that the document is easier to navigate. Some of the content from the Articles has been removed altogether as it is either duplicated elsewhere or is out of date and does not reflect how the Council operates.
- 4.3 The CWG have also removed a number of sections of the Constitution. This is for a number of reasons:
- (1) A number of the Council's codes, protocols, policies and guidance documents do not need to be in the Council's Constitution. These can be referenced through web links which makes the whole document less daunting and unwieldy.
 - (2) Where documents are not a formal part of the Constitution, it allows them more easily to be updated/refreshed.
 - (3) Reducing the length of the Constitution makes it more accessible and understandable. This makes it easier for Councillors and Officers to refer to the Constitution in performing their duties. It also makes it more transparent to members of the public.
 - (4) Having a clear, well-structured and easily understood constitution assists members and officers with complying with the Constitution.
- 4.4 There are now 6 sections as follows:

- Part 1 - Summary and explanation
- Part 2 - Responsibility for functions
- Part 3 - Rules of Procedure

- Part 4 - Codes and Protocols
- Part 5 - Members allowances scheme
- Part 6 – Glossary

4.5 Included at Appendix 1 below is a table which summarises the changes in structure to the Current Constitution and Appendix 2 shows the destination of the content of the Articles.

5 ACCURACY, UPDATING & FUTURE PROOFING

5.1 Local authority arrangements evolve and whilst this means Constitutions have to be updated, this should not be a constant exercise. The CWG have generally reduced the number of references to legislation, and to specific named individuals, to reduce the burden on the Council in keeping the Constitution updated.

5.2 The draft updated Constitution has been amended to reflect recent changes in the structure of local government. The Joint Arrangements section has been updated to reflect the relationships that the Council has with the West of England Combined Authority and Joint Committee, the Police and Crime Panel for Avon & Somerset and other joint arrangements that may change from time to time.

6 DECISION MAKING

6.1 A key part of the Constitution (and one which sets the tone for the culture the Council wishes to operate) is how decisions are taken. This includes the balance between:

- Cabinet collective decision making or powers of individual portfolio holders; and
- Member decision making or officer delegation.

6.2 The sections in the Constitution dealing with Responsibility for Functions and the Terms of Reference have been changed to make this fundamental approach clearer (and also make the document more manageable and future-proof).

6.3 Delegations have been separated to make it clear what is being delegated to whom and by whom. In doing so the following approach has been adopted.

- (1) A diagram has been included at Part 2 showing the Council's decision making bodies.
- (2) The table of local choice functions has been retained.
- (3) Each committees' specific terms of reference are now referred to as Functions and have been standardised and retained.
- (4) A description of the Council's Joint Arrangements has been included in one place.

- (5) The scheme of officer delegation has been retained which sets out the general principles by which officers are authorised to act and which also includes specific delegations to the council's Chief Officers. Through the 'cascade principle', these functions may be further sub-delegated.
- (6) Detail of the Council's Proper Officer arrangements has been retained to comply with the requirements of the Constitution Direction, with the addition of a new role of designated Local Government Pensions officer.

6.4 Over time the Council has added a number of plans and strategies to the Policy Framework. This creates additional bureaucracy, including the need for both Council and Cabinet approval to such plans and strategies. Failure to follow the approvals process could render decisions on such matters more likely to be challenged. For that reason, the updated Constitution has reduced the number of documents which require the approval of full Council to the statutory minimum, as follows.

Current Policy Framework	Updated Policy framework
• Sustainable Community Strategy • Local Plan/ Local Development Framework • Children and Young Peoples' Plan • Youth Justice Plan • Community Safety Plan • Corporate Plan (including Budget, Financial Plan • (Joint) Local Transport Plan • Licensing Authority Policy Statement • Health & Wellbeing Strategy • Crime & Disorder Reduction Strategy	• The Children and Young People's Plan; • Licensing Authority Policy Statement; • Youth Justice Plan; • Crime and Disorder Reduction Strategy; • Local Transport Plan; and • Development Plan Documents (including the Local Plan and any Neighbourhood Plans); and all plans and alterations which together comprise the Development Plan.

6.5 There will be other plans and strategies that will be approved by Council on the recommendation of Cabinet, such as the Corporate Plan, the Medium Term Financial Plan and Budget, the Joint Health and Wellbeing Strategy etc

;however, this list now reflects the list of the plans required to be submitted to both under the Functions and Responsibilities Regulations 2000.

- 6.6 In relation to the Council and Cabinet Procedure Rules, the CWG have not made any significant suggestions for changes to the content (which are considered to be generally clear and comprehensive), save those ones already brought to the May 2022 Council meeting and described in Appendix 1.

7 CHANGES TO THE NON-EXECUTIVE COMMITTEES

- 7.1 Few changes have been made to the structure of the Council's Committees, other than to bring the Responsibility for Functions up to date. A new Independent Persons Panel has been created that will link to the work of the Restructuring Implementation Committee which currently deals with the potential for recommendations to Council to deal with Chief Officer discipline, capability and grievances in line with the Terms and Conditions of Service of those statutory officers.

8 FINANCIAL REGULATIONS & CONTRACT STANDING ORDERS

- 8.1 The Budget and Policy Framework Procedure Rules, the Financial Procedure Rules and the Contract Standing Orders have been included in their entirety. However, in the next stage of the review, it is proposed that these sections could be substantially reduced.
- 8.2 The following financial limits are retained on the delegation of functions to Officers:

Officer	Limit in respect of revenue expenditure	Limit in respect of capital expenditure
Head of Paid Service and Chief Officers in consultation with a relevant portfolio holder	£500,000	No limit where Council has approved the scheme in the budget and/or the Cabinet has agreed to progress the scheme

9 OTHER PROCEDURES, CODES AND PROTOCOLS

- 9.1 A number of the Codes and Protocols have been removed from the Constitution, and placed in the Library, as detailed in **Appendix 1**. This is to reduce the administrative burden on the Council, and to create a more manageable and relevant constitution.
- 9.2 All of the documents that have been removed from this section are "operational" documents. Whilst these are important to the Council, they are not required to be part of the Constitution. As operational documents they are likely to be updated regularly and, from experience, the requirement for all amendments to be approved by Full Council can result in these documents being updated less

regularly than if there was a more streamlined procedure for reviewing and amending them.

10 STATUTORY CONSIDERATIONS

10.1 A local authority is under a duty to prepare and keep up to date its Constitution under s.9P Local Government Act 2000 as amended (Localism Act 2011).

10.2 The Constitution must contain:

- the standing orders/procedure rules;
- the members' code of conduct;
- such information as the Secretary of State may direct;
- such other information (if any) as the authority considers appropriate.

10.3 A Constitution Direction was issued by the Secretary of State in December 2000 that required around 80 matters to be included within constitutions, covering members' allowances schemes, details of procedures for meetings, details of joint arrangements with other local authorities and a description of the rights of inhabitants of the area, amongst other things. The Direction is archived but remains applicable by virtue of S.17 (2) (b) of the Interpretation Act 1978. A table at Appendix 3 shows where these aspects feature in the new Constitution.

11 RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS (FINANCE, PROPERTY, PEOPLE)

11.1 The Constitution refresh has only incurred staff & CWG members' time and is therefore cost neutral.

12 RISK MANAGEMENT

12.1 A risk assessment related to the issue and recommendations has been undertaken, in compliance with the Council's decision making risk management guidance.

13 EQUALITIES

13.1 None

14 CLIMATE CHANGE

14.1 None

15 OTHER OPTIONS CONSIDERED

15.1 None

16 CONSULTATION

16.1 Councillors, Political Assistants, Chief Officers, the Constitutional working group, Monitoring Officer & S.151 officer have been consulted in the drafting of this report and its recommendations; in particular, the draft updated Constitution.

16.2 Councillors have been engaged through a webinar, and encouraged to submit comments to the Constitution Working group prior to this final version. Any comments are taken into account in this version.

Contact person	Michael Hewitt, Monitoring Officer tel: 01225 395125
Background papers	Report to Council 18 November 2021
Please contact the report author if you need to access this report in an alternative format	

Appendix 1 - Summary of structural changes to the Constitution

Section in Current Constitution	Location in new constitution	Summary of Changes
Part 1 – Summary	Part 1 Summary and Explanation	A glossary has been created. ----- The term “Chair” will be used throughout the Constitution. ----- Section on Political Groups moved here from the Procedural Rules section.
Part 2 - Articles	Removed/relocated	These have been removed and the information has largely been relocated as detailed in Appendix 2 or omitted since it was duplication.
Part 3 – Responsibility for Functions	Part 2 – Functions who does what	A diagram of decision-making bodies has been added. ----- The local members for Lambridge are now voting members of the Alice Park Trust Sub-Committee making a total of five voting members. ----- Licensing Committee – the Council’s objectives on Licensing have been removed as they are set out in the Licensing Statement of Policy. The list of legislation has been removed as it is not considered to be necessary and is set out in the Table of Delegations of Licensing Functions, which will be in the Library. ----- An Independent Person Panel has now been established. ----- The Health and Care Board has been removed as it no longer exists. Details relating to the Integrated Care System will be included once the new governance arrangements have been agreed. ----- Part 2.12 Officer Delegations Avon Pension Fund – The Director of One West is given responsibility rather than the S151 Officer.

Section in Current Constitution	Location in new constitution	Summary of Changes			
		Part 2.36 now reads: LOCAL GOVERNMENT PENSION SCHEME REGULATIONS 2013 <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Reg 2 (3B) & Statutory Guidance</td><td>Designated LGPS Senior Officer</td><td>Director – One West</td></tr> </table> Pensions Fund Investment Panel - membership amended to read: “The Panel shall comprise a maximum of 6 voting Members of the Avon Pension Fund Committee, of which 3 shall be Bath and North East Somerset Councillors and 3 shall be the independent members of the Committee. (The membership shall include the Chairman of the Committee and /or the Vice-Chair).” Pensions Fund Investment Panel - Members shall be appointed for a period of four years in line with the Avon Pension Fund Committee.” (This was previously one year). Part 2.35 & 2.36 Delegation Scheme. Various amendments; • Clarification added regarding the Cascade Principle and links to local schemes of delegation, now held in the Library. • Removed wording General provisions. This conflicted with General provisions in section D and created confusion. • Clarification added that delegation applies to postholder rather than person • Clarification added that New Legislation delegated to postholder to prevent a lacuna. • Clarification added regarding powers of duly authorised officers under legislation. • Added Power under S.86 to declare office of councillor vacant after 6 months in compliance with LLG/ADSO guidance.	Reg 2 (3B) & Statutory Guidance	Designated LGPS Senior Officer	Director – One West
Reg 2 (3B) & Statutory Guidance	Designated LGPS Senior Officer	Director – One West			

Section in Current Constitution	Location in new constitution	Summary of Changes
		At Section 2.36.3 Proper Officer functions: - The reference to Head of Property Services has been removed as the role no longer exists. - A new entry has been made as follows: DIRECTOR OF PEOPLE & POLICY To approve any special severance cases up to a maximum of £20,000 in accordance with the Council's published policy for severance payments. ----- A "Joint Arrangements" section has been created at the end of the document. The Avon Fire Authority and Joint Health Scrutiny Committee have both been added to this section.
Part 4 – Procedural Rules	Rule 3.1.22 & 3.1.23	Clarification added that this rule does not apply to PDS panels and Committees where questions can only be asked of the Chair, and that Group Leader questions only refer to Council.
4A – Rule 2	Rule 3.3.5	The time and place of all member meetings will be determined by the Monitoring Officer and notified in the summons rather than being set at the Annual Council Meeting, to reflect what happens in practice.
4A - Rule 5	Rule 3.1.7	Special or Extraordinary meetings - Questions from the Public and Councillors will not be permitted unless these relate to the business to be discussed. [This qualification is reproduced in 3.2.19 for Cabinet meetings.]
4A – Rule 13(iv)	Rule 3.1.6	Revised wording regarding the Leader statements at Council.
4A, rule 15		Reports of the Cabinet, non-executive committees and Overview and Scrutiny Panels has been removed. This is picked up in the Overview and Scrutiny rules and functions of Council.

Section in Current Constitution	Location in new constitution	Summary of Changes
4A – Rule 27	Rule 3.1.19	Chair taking part in debate – Wording has been amended to provide greater clarity.
4A - Rules 32 and 33	Rule 3.1.22	Requirement to provide 4 clear working days' notice of a question extended to all committees, previously 4 clear working days only applied to Council and Cabinet. The maximum number of questions that will be permitted for both councillors and the public will be three. Previously this was unlimited.
4A Rules 32, 33 and 34	Rule 3.1.22	Removal of the paragraph inviting the Leaders of any Political Group with at least 20% of Council seats to indicate if they require a 10-minute debate on any issue raised in a particular question or statement. The 10-minute debate was considered to be inadequate for any meaningful discussion.
4A Rules 32, 33 and 34	Rule 3.1.22 and 3.1.23	Statements or questions will not be accepted if they are “defamatory, frivolous or offensive”.
4A Rule 34 & duplicate in other sections	Rule 3.1.23	Councillors and members of the public have the right to put forward petitions and statements at a Council meeting. The submission must be relevant to the Council and/or the Bath & North East Somerset area. Advance notice of all statements (including those supporting a petition) must be submitted in writing (this to include transmission by e mail) stating the subject matter, and must be lodged with the Monitoring Officer no later than close of business 2 clear working days before the day of the meeting at which the submission is to be made (e.g. Monday 5pm for a meeting on a Thursday). Where possible, members of the public and Councillors are strongly encouraged to submit the text of their statement in advance to enable Members to read it before the meeting. Guidance is available on drafting/submitting a statement <i>(a link will be provided)</i>.

Section in Current Constitution	Location in new constitution	Summary of Changes
4A Rule 35	Rule 3.1.26	Motions – A small amendment giving some discretion to the Chair regarding the response by the mover of a proposal to the adjustment of the wording.
4A Rule 39	Rule 3.1.30	Withdrawal of Motion – A mover may withdraw a motion with the consent of the seconder (without the need for the consent of the meeting as this is not a legislative requirement).
	Rule 3.2.18, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24	Rules re-instated in Cabinet section to aid use at meetings so no need to refer elsewhere.
4C, Rule 2	Rule 3.7.2	Policy Budget and Framework Rules – 3.7 - List of Plans and Strategies amended to set out the statutory minimum which require Council approval. This removes additional bureaucracy and threat of challenge if the approval process is not followed.
4D – Rules 2, 3 & 4		Reference to Leader's Scheme of Delegation and Executive Functions, Sub Delegation of Executive Functions and Requisition of Single Member Planned Decision removed as included in Part 2.
4D Rule 8		Decisions taken by Cabinet at a meeting - removed as referenced in Access to Information Rules.
4D Rule 11		Absence of Cabinet Member or Leader - moved to Part 2.
4D Rule 12		Advice from Overview and Scrutiny Bodies - removed as picked up in policy and budget framework rules.
4D Rule 13		Arrangements for liaison with non-executive Councillors - moved to political groups section in summary and explanation.
4D Rule 25		Attendance by the Public – removed as covered in Access to Information Rules.
4D Rule 27		Conduct of meeting - removed as covered under Chair of meeting.

Section in Current Constitution	Location in new constitution	Summary of Changes
4D(1) Rule 2	Rule 3.2.27	Submission of a call-in notice - If a member signifies support for a call-in by telephone, they should be required to confirm this in writing before the publication deadline for the call-in meeting.
4E Rule 17		Members and Officers attending - reference to petition legislation removed as this no longer applies. The requirement to have a petition scheme was repealed by the Localism Act 2011 and since then it has been a matter for local choice. Full Council agreed in July 2020 that a separate scheme was unnecessary as provisions remain for the public and councillors to submit petitions.
4E Rule 34		Deletion of the section of the paragraph which did not permit members of a PDS Panel to speak to the press without the permission of the Chair.
4E & F	Part 3.3	Non-executive committee and scrutiny rules now combined.
4K	Part 3.6.8	Disciplinary Action and Dismissal – amended to reflect current legislative requirements.
4(I) & 4(J)	Part 3.8 & 3.9	The Financial Regulations and Contract Standing Orders will be considered under the second stage of the Review of the Constitution so they are included here in their entirety.
Part 5 – Terms of Reference	Part 2 – Functions who does what	The Committee Terms of Reference have been brought up to date where necessary. The Terms of Reference now have a more standardised format with similar headings throughout the document.
Part 6 – Codes of Conduct and Working Protocols	Part 4 – Codes and Protocols	This section now just contains the Councillor Code of Conduct, the Protocol on Councillor/Officer Relations and the Employee Code of Conduct. The other Codes and Protocols are now available on the Council's website via a hyperlink.
Part 7 – Allowances	Part 5 – Members' Allowances Scheme	The "suspension" paragraph has been removed as the Localism Act 2011 removed the power to suspend a Councillor. The amounts payable for members' allowances have been updated to reflect current arrangements, in accordance with Council's agreement of the Independent Panel's recommendations. This section has been reconfigured to ensure that future amendments to

Section in Current Constitution	Location in new constitution	Summary of Changes
		remuneration rates only require amendments to one schedule.
Part 8 – Management Structure	Link from Part 1	This is now available on the Council's website via a hyperlink.

This page is intentionally left blank

ARTICLES - DESTINATION OF CONTENT IN NEW CONSTITUTION

In some cases, the text within the Articles was a duplication of text covered elsewhere in the Constitution so this was removed. Where the text required inclusion, the table below shows where this was moved to;

ARTICLE	SECTION IN OLD CONSTITUTION	DESTINATION IN NEW CONSTITUTION
Article 1	The Constitution	Part 1 - Summary & Explanation Part 2 – Functions of Full Council
Article 2	Members of the Council	Part 1 – Summary & Explanation Part 2 – Functions of Full Council Part 2 – Access to Information Procedure rules Part 5 – Members’ Allowances Scheme
Article 3	Citizens and the Council	Part 1 - Summary & Explanation
Article 4	The full Council	Part 1 – Summary & Explanation Part 2 – Functions of full Council Part 3 – Policy & Budget framework Procedure rules
Article 5	Chairing the Council	Part 1 – Summary & Explanation
Article 6	Overview & Scrutiny Panels	Part 2 – Scrutiny Specific Provisions
Article 7	The Cabinet	Part 1 – Summary & Explanation Part 2 – Executive Procedure rules
Article 8	Regulatory & other Committees	Unnecessary duplicate information
Article 9	The Standards Committee	Unnecessary duplicate information
Article 10	Area Committees and Forums	Removed as work of Local Area Forums has replaced this
Article 11	Joint Arrangements	Part 2 – Functions carried out through Joint Arrangements Part 3 – Access to Information

Article 12	Officers	Part 2 – Delegations of Functions to Officers Part 1 – Summary & Explanation – link to Management Structure
Article 13	Decision Making	Part 1 – Summary & Explanation Part 3 – Access to Information rules
Article 14	Finance, Contract & Legal matters	Part 3 – Contract Standing Orders Part 3 – Financial Regulations & Budget Management scheme
Article 15	Review & revision of the Constitution	Part 1 – Summary & Explanation Part 2 – Functions of Full Council
Article 15	Suspension, interpretation & publication of the Constitution	Part 1 – Summary & Explanation

The Local Government Act 2000 (Constitutions) (England) Direction 2000

The Secretary of State for the Environment, Transport and the Regions, in the exercise of his powers under sections 37(1)(a) and 48(7) of the Local Government Act 2000 (c.22) (the Act) and all other powers enabling him in that behalf, hereby directs all local authorities in England to which Part II of the Act applies as follows:

Miscellaneous and interpretation

1. In the direction:

"constitution" has the meaning given by section 37(1) of the Act, "overview and scrutiny committee":

- a. in the case of a local authority which is operating executive arrangements has the meaning given by section 21(1) of the Act; or
- b. in the case of a local authority which is operating alternative arrangements means any committee or sub-committee appointed by the authority in accordance with regulations made under section 32(1)(b) of the Act to review or scrutinise decisions made, or other action taken, in connection with the discharge of functions of the authority.

2. In complying with this direction a local authority must have regard to any guidance issued for the time being by the Secretary of State under section 38 of the Act.

The constitution

3. The constitution prepared and kept up to date in accordance with section 37(1) of the Act by a local authority which is operating executive arrangements or, as the case may be, alternative arrangements must include:

	Requirement of Direction	Relevant part of Council's Constitution	Comment
a	a summary and explanation of the purpose and content of the constitution;	Part 1 - Summary & Explanation	
b	a description of the composition of the council, the scheme of ordinary elections for members of the council and their terms of office;	Part 1 - Summary & Explanation	
c	a description of the principal roles and functions of the members of the council under executive arrangements or, as the case may be, alternative arrangements including the rights and duties of those members;	Part 1 - Summary & Explanation	
d	the scheme of allowances for members of the authority drawn up in accordance with regulations made under section 18 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989 (c.42);	Part 5 - Member Allowances Scheme	
e	a description of the rights and responsibilities of inhabitants of the authority's area including: i. their rights to vote in elections for the return of members of the authority; ii. their rights to access to information about the authority's activities; iii. their rights of access to meetings of the council, its committees and sub-committees and any joint committees established with any other authority; and iv. their rights of access to meetings of the executive and committees of the executive,	Part 1 - Summary & Explanation Part 3 - Access to Information procedure rules Part 3 - Council and Executive procedure rules	

f	a description of the roles of the authority itself under executive arrangements or, as the case may be, alternative arrangements including: i. the functions which may be exercised only by the authority itself or which may to some extent be exercised only by the authority itself (including, in the case of a local authority operating executive arrangements any plans and strategies which are subject to approval or adoption by the authority itself by virtue of regulation 5 of, and paragraph 1 of Schedule 4 to, the Local Authorities (Functions and Responsibilities) (England) Regulations 2000 (S.I. 2000/2853)); and ii. any rules governing the conduct and proceedings of meetings of the authority itself whether specified in the authority's standing orders or otherwise;	Part 2 - Cabinet Functions Part 2 - Allocation of Local Choice Functions Part 3 - Council and Executive procedure rules	
g	a description of the roles and functions of the chairman of the council (including a chairman entitled to the style of mayor);	Part 1 - Summary & Explanation	
h	a description of the functions of the local authority executive which, for the time being, are exercisable by individual members of the local authority executive stating as respects each function, the name of the member by whom it is exercisable;	Part 2 - Cabinet Functions	
i	a description of the functions of the local authority executive which, for the time being, are exercisable by the executive collectively or a committee of the executive, stating as respects each function, the membership of the body by who it is exercisable;	Part 2 - Cabinet Functions	
j	a description of those powers of the executive which for the time being are exercisable by an officer of the local authority stating the title of the officer by whom each of the powers so specified is for the time being exercisable, other than any power exercisable by the officer for a specified period not exceeding six months;	Part 2 - Delegations of Functions to Officers Part 2 - Proper Officer Functions	
k	a description of the arrangements for the operation of overview and scrutiny committees including: i. the terms of reference and membership of those committees and any rules governing the exercise of their functions; and ii. any rules governing the conduct and proceedings of meetings of those committees whether specified in the authority's standing orders or otherwise;	Part 2 - Overview & Scrutiny - General Part 2 - individual PDS Panel Functions Part 3 - Overview & Scrutiny & Non-Exec rules	

l	in the case of a local authority which is operating executive arrangements, a description of the roles of the executive, committees of the executive and members of the executive including: i. the roles, functions, rights, responsibilities and duties of members of the executive; ii. in the case of a local authority which is operating executive arrangements which include a leader and cabinet form of executive, any rules governing the election of the executive leader; iii. any rules governing the appointment of members of the executive;iv. any provisions in the local authority's executive arrangements with respect to the quorum, proceedings and location of meetings of the executive; v. any provisions in the local authority's executive arrangements with respect to the quorum, proceedings and location of meetings of any committees of the executive; vi. any provisions in the local authority's executive arrangements with respect to the appointment of committees of the executive; and vii. in the case of a local authority which is operating executive arrangements which include a mayor and council manager form of executive, any roles of committees appointed by the elected mayor to advise the executive in accordance with paragraphs 3(14) and (15) of Schedule 1 to the Act;	Part 1 - Summary & Explanation Part 2 - Cabinet Functions Part 3 - Executive Procedure rules	
m	in the case of a local authority which is operating executive arrangements which include a mayor and council manager form of executive, a description of the roles, functions, rights, responsibilities and duties of the deputy mayor appointed in accordance with paragraph 3(3) of Schedule 1 to the Act;	N/a	
n	a description of the roles of any committees or sub-committees appointed by the authority in accordance with section 101 of the Local Government Act 1972 (c.70) including: i. the membership, terms of reference and functions of such committees or sub-committees; and ii. any rules governing the conduct and proceedings of meetings of those committees or sub-committees whether specified in the authority's standing orders or otherwise;	Part 2 - Committees, Panels & Boards - General functions, and specific committee functions Part 3 - Council procedure rules Part 3 - O&S & Non-exec procedure rules	
o	a description of those powers of the council which for the time being are exercisable by an officer of the local authority stating the title of the officer by whom each of the powers so specified is for the time being exercisable, other than any power exercisable by the officer for a specified period not exceeding six months;	Part 2 - Delegations of Functions to Officers Part 2 - Proper Officer Functions	

p	a description of the roles of the local authority's Standards Committee and any parish council sub-committee of the Standards Committee appointed in accordance with sections 53 or 55 of the Act including: i. the membership, terms of reference and functions of that committee or sub-committee; and ii. any rules governing the conduct and proceedings of meetings of that committee or sub-committee whether specified in the authority's standing orders or otherwise;	Part 2 - Standards committee functions Part 3 - Council Procedure rules	
q	a description of the roles of any area committees appointed by the authority to exercise functions in accordance with regulations 16A of the Local Government (Committees and Political Groups) Regulations 1990 (SI 1990/1553) or, as the case may be, section 18 of the Act and the Local Authorities (Arrangements for the Discharge of Functions)(England) Regulations 2000 (SI 2000/2851) including: i. the membership, terms of reference and functions of such committees; and ii. any rules governing the conduct and proceedings of meetings of those committees whether specified in the authority's standing orders or otherwise;	N/A	
r	a description of any joint arrangements made with any other local authorities under section 101(5) of the Local Government Act 1972 including: i. the terms of those arrangements; ii. the membership, terms of reference and functions of any joint committees established under those arrangements; and iii. any rules governing the conduct and proceedings of meetings of those joint committees whether specified in the authority's standing orders or otherwise	Part 2 - Joint Arrangements	
s	a description of any arrangements made with another local authority for the discharge of functions by that other local authority or the executive of that other local authority in accordance with section 101(1)(b) of the Local Government Act 1972 or, as the case may be, Local Authorities (Arrangements for the Discharge of Functions) (England) Regulations 2000;	Part 2 - Joint Arrangements Part 2 - Cabinet procedure rules	

t	a description of the roles of officers of the local authority including: i. the management structure for officers of the authority ii. any arrangements made under section 101 of the Local Government Act 1972 or, as the case may be, section 14, 15 or 16 of the Act for the discharge of functions by officers of the authority; iii. the roles and functions of the head of paid service, monitoring officer and chief finance officer; iv. the code of conduct for local government employees issued by the Secretary of State in accordance with section 82 of the Act; v. any rules governing the recruitment, appointment, dismissal and disciplinary action for officers of the authority; vi. any protocol established by the authority in respect of relationships between members of the authority and officers of the authority;	Part 1 - Summary & Explanation Part 2 - Delegations of Functions to Officers Part 2 - Proper Officer functions Part 3 - Employment Procedure rules Part 4 - Protocol on Councillor/ Officer relations Part 4 - Employee Code of Conduct	
u	a description of the arrangements the authority has in place for access of the public, members of the authority and officers of the authority to meetings of the authority, committees and sub-committees of the authority, joint committees established with any other local authority, the executive and committees of the executive;	Part 3 - Access to information rules	
v	a description of the arrangements the authority has in place for access of the public, members of the authority and officers of the authority to information about the decisions made or to be made by in respect of local authority's functions and activities;	Part 3 - Access to information rules	
w	a register stating: i. the name and address of every member of the local authority executive for the time being and the ward or division (if any) which he represents; and ii. the name of every member of each committee of the local authority's executive for the time being;	<u>Part 1 - Summary & Explanation</u> <u>https://democracy.bathnes.gov.uk/mqMemberIndex.aspx?bcr=1</u>	
x	a description of the rules and procedures for the management of its financial, contractual and legal affairs including: i. procedures for auditing of the local authority; ii. the local authority's financial rules or regulations or such equivalent provisions as the local authority may have in place whether specified in the authority's standing orders or otherwise; iii. rules, regulations and procedures in respect of contracts and procurement including authentication of documents whether specified in the authority's standing orders or otherwise; and iv. rules and procedures in respect of legal proceedings brought by and against the local authority;	Part 1 - Summary & Explanation Part 3.8 - Contract Standing Orders Part 3.9 - Financial Regulations and Budget Management Scheme Part 2 - Section C Proper Officer Functions	
y	a description of the register of interests of members and co-opted members of the authority required under section 81 of the Act, together with the procedures for publicising, maintaining and updating that register.	Part 4 - Councillor Code of Conduct	

z	a description of the rules and procedures for review and revision of the authority's constitution and executive arrangements or, as the case may be, alternative arrangements.	Part 1 - Summary & Explanation Part 2 - Cabinet Procedure rules	

4. This direction shall have effect from 19th December 2000.

Signed by authority of the Secretary of State for the Environment, Transport and the Regions

Bath & North East Somerset Council

Improving People's Lives

Bath and North East Somerset Council

Constitution

CONTENTS

CONTENTS.....	2
PART 1 SUMMARY AND EXPLANATION.....	4
1.1 WHAT IS IN THE CONSTITUTION	5
1.2 PURPOSE OF THE CONSTITUTION	5
1.3 THE COUNCIL.....	6
1.4 COUNCILLORS	6
1.5 POLITICAL GROUPS	7
1.6 THE CABINET	8
1.7 THE ROLE OF THE COUNCIL CHAIR	9
1.8 OFFICERS	10
1.9 RESIDENT RIGHTS & RESPONSIBILITIES	10
1.10 JOINT ARRANGEMENTS	12
1.11 OVERVIEW & SCRUTINY ARRANGEMENTS	12
1.12 DECISION MAKING (INCLUDING KEY DECISIONS)	12
1.13 DUTY TO MONITOR AND REVIEW THE CONSTITUTION.....	13
1.14 SUSPENSION OF THE CONSTITUTION.....	14
PART 2 RESPONSIBILITY FOR FUNCTIONS AND DELEGATION SCHEMES	15
DIAGRAM OF COUNCIL'S DECISION MAKING BODIES.....	16
2.1 COUNCIL	17
2.2 CABINET	18
2.3 ALLOCATION OF LOCAL CHOICE FUNCTIONS.....	23
2.4 THE ROLE OF THE POLICY & BUDGET FRAMEWORK IN DECISION MAKING	25
2.5 COMMITTEES, PANELS AND BOARDS - GENERAL	25
2.6 OVERVIEW & SCRUTINY – GENERAL.....	27
2.7 ALICE PARK TRUST SUB-COMMITTEE	30
2.8 AVON PENSION FUND COMMITTEE	31
2.9 AVON PENSION FUND INVESTMENT PANEL	33
2.10 BRUNEL OVERSIGHT BOARD REPRESENTATIVE	35
2.11 BRUNEL PENSION PARTNERSHIP WORKING GROUP	36
2.12 OFFICER DELEGATIONS AVON PENSION FUND	37
2.13 FUNDING AND RISK MANAGEMENT GROUP.....	39
2.14 CHARITABLE TRUST BOARD	40
2.15 CHILDREN, ADULTS, HEALTH & WELLBEING POLICY DEVELOPMENT AND SCRUTINY PANEL	42
2.16 CLIMATE EMERGENCY AND SUSTAINABILITY POLICY DEVELOPMENT AND SCRUTINY PANEL	45
2.17 CORPORATE AUDIT COMMITTEE	46
2.18 CORPORATE POLICY DEVELOPMENT AND SCRUTINY PANEL	48
2.19 EMPLOYMENT COMMITTEE	49
2.20 HEALTH & WELLBEING BOARD	50
2.21 INDEPENDENT PERSON PANEL.....	53
2.22 INDEPENDENT REMUNERATION PANEL.....	55
2.23 LICENSING COMMITTEE	57
2.24 LICENSING SUB-COMMITTEE.....	58
2.25 PARISH LIAISON MEETING.....	59

2.26	PLANNING COMMITTEE	62
2.27	RE-STRUCTURING IMPLEMENTATION COMMITTEE.....	64
2.28	STANDARDS COMMITTEE	65
2.29	FUNCTIONS CARRIED OUT THROUGH JOINT ARRANGEMENTS	68
2.30	WEST OF ENGLAND COMBINED AUTHORITY	69
2.31	WEST OF ENGLAND JOINT COMMITTEE	70
2.32	AVON FIRE AUTHORITY	71
2.33	AVON & SOMERSET POLICE AND CRIME PANEL	72
2.34	JOINT HEALTH SCRUTINY FUNCTION	72
2.35	DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS TO OFFICERS	74
2.36	PROPER OFFICER FUNCTIONS.....	82
PART 3 PROCEDURAL RULES		93
3.1	COUNCIL PROCEDURE RULES	94
3.2	EXECUTIVE PROCEDURE RULES	114
3.2.25	CALL-IN OF EXECUTIVE DECISIONS	125
3.3	OVERVIEW & SCRUTINY & NON-EXECUTIVE PROCEDURE RULES.....	128
3.4	URGENT BUSINESS AND ABSENCE PROCEDURE RULES	137
3.5	ACCESS TO INFORMATION PROCEDURE RULES	139
3.6	EMPLOYMENT PROCEDURE RULES.....	154
3.7	POLICY AND BUDGET FRAMEWORK PROCEDURE RULES	158
3.8	CONTRACT STANDING ORDERS	164
3.9	FINANCIAL REGULATIONS AND BUDGET MANAGEMENT SCHEME	205
PART 4 CODES & PROTOCOLS.....		302
4.1	PROTOCOL ON COUNCILLOR / OFFICER RELATIONS	303
4.2	GENERAL PROPOSITIONS	311
4.3	MANAGEMENT OF THE MEMBER/OFFICER PROTOCOL	312
4.4	COUNCILLOR CODE OF CONDUCT	314
4.5	APPENDIX A – THE SEVEN PRINCIPLES OF PUBLIC LIFE.....	325
4.6	APPENDIX B – REGISTERING INTERESTS.....	326
4.7	APPENDIX C – THE COMMITTEE ON STANDARDS IN PUBLIC LIFE	333
4.8	EMPLOYEE CODE OF CONDUCT	335
PART 5 MEMBERS’ ALLOWANCES SCHEME.....		348
5.1	COUNCILLORS’ ALLOWANCES.....	349
5.2	SCHEDULE 1 PART 1 – ALLOWANCE AMOUNTS.....	352
5.3	SCHEDULE 1 PART 2 – AVON PENSION FUND.....	354
5.4	SCHEDULE 1 PART 3 – APPROVED DUTIES.....	355
GLOSSARY		356

PART 1 SUMMARY AND EXPLANATION

1.1 WHAT IS IN THE CONSTITUTION

The Constitution has six parts:

- **Part 1** is this summary and explanation.
- [Part 2](#) sets out which parts of the Council are responsible for carrying out the various functions of the Council (who does what).
- [Part 3](#) contains the various Procedure Rules – which govern how the Council conducts its business, including how it makes decisions and how meetings are conducted.
- [Part 4](#) includes codes and protocols that govern how Councillors (also known as “Members” of the Council) and officers of the Council must behave in performing their duties.
- [Part 5](#) is the Councillors’ Allowances Scheme which sets the level of financial allowances which Councillors receive for performing their duties.
- [Part 6](#) is a Glossary which explains some of the terminology used in this document.

There are a number of other codes, protocols and policy documents that govern how the Council operates which do not form part of this Constitution. Where the Constitution refers to these documents, they will be made available on the Council's website via a hyperlink.

1.2 PURPOSE OF THE CONSTITUTION

Bath and North East Somerset Council has agreed a constitution which sets out how the Council operates, how decisions are made and the procedures which are followed to ensure that the Council’s business is efficient, transparent and accountable to local people. Some matters addressed in this Constitution are required by the law, while others are a matter for the Council to choose.

This is a document to help residents, businesses, partners, stakeholders, Councillors and Officers to understand how the Council works. We have included hyperlinks between different parts of the Constitution wherever possible to make it easy to navigate your way around the information. We have also included hyperlinks to other documents/sites where we think this will be helpful. All hyperlinks are [coloured blue like this](#).

1.3 THE COUNCIL

The Council comprises 59 Councillors elected every four years. Councillors are democratically accountable to residents of their ward. The overriding duty of Councillors is to the whole community, but they have a special duty to their constituents, including those who did not vote for them.

All Councillors meet together as the Council. Meetings of the Council are open to the public, (unless when meetings resolve to exclude the public). Here, Councillors decide some of the Council's overall policies and set the budget each year. Certain decisions must be taken by full Council, but most may be delegated to other decision making bodies or officers. Further information about who has responsibility for the Council's functions is set out in [Part 2 of the Constitution](#).

There are three different types of Council meeting

- The Annual Meeting of the Council.
- Ordinary meetings; and
- Extraordinary meetings, which will be called as and when required in accordance with the Council Procedure Rules.

You can find details of Council meetings on the Council's website

1.4 COUNCILLORS

Councillors are directly accountable to residents and local businesses for the running of the Council. They have a duty to represent all constituents in their Ward (including those who did not vote for them) and they must make decisions in the best interests of the area as a whole. They are involved in decision making in accordance with the Council's Procedure Rules. Councillors can also represent the authority on external bodies.

The regular election of Councillors will be held on the first Thursday in May once every four years, with all Councillors being elected at the same time. The last election was in 2019. The term of office of Councillors will start on the fourth day after being elected and will

finish on the fourth day after the date of the next regular election (except for the Leader who remains in office until the Annual Meeting). You can find out more about [Councillors, the political groups that they may represent, committee memberships, declarations of interest on the Council's website.](#)

1.5 POLITICAL GROUPS

For a political group to be recognised by the Council, the following must occur:

- the Chief Executive must receive a notice signed by at least 2 Councillors who wish to be treated as a political group;
- the notice must identify the name of the political group and the name of the group's Leader and any Deputy Leader(s) (who must be one of the Councillors signing the notice);
- All Councillors who wish to be regarded as Members of the political group must sign the notice.

Political Groups on the Council may nominate Members to act as informal points of liaison for Cabinet Members.

Councillors carry out the following roles and functions, they:

- collectively are the ultimate policy makers and determine certain of the Council's policies and budget;
- represent their communities and bring their views into the Council's decision-making process i.e. become the spokesperson of and for their communities;
- contribute to the good governance of the area and actively encourage community participation and resident involvement in decision making;
- deal with individual casework and act as a spokesperson for constituents in resolving particular concerns or grievances;
- respond to constituents' enquiries and representations, fairly and impartially, balancing different interests identified within the ward or electoral division to represent it as a whole;
- take decisions at full Council, and through membership of Cabinet, or the Council's Committees or Panels;

- participate in reviewing and scrutinising decisions made or actions taken in the exercise of the Council's functions;
- are available within the terms of the Constitution to represent the Council on other bodies; and
- promote and maintain the highest standards of conduct and ethics in the way they undertake their duties.

Councillors are required to comply with the Members' Code of Conduct, the Protocol on Councillor/Officer Relations and any other [Codes and Protocols set out in Part 4](#) of this Constitution.

The Council's Monitoring Officer is responsible for the provision of training and advice to Councillors on the role of a Councillor including the Code of Conduct.

Councillors will be entitled to receive allowances in accordance with the Members' Allowances Scheme, following review and recommendations by an Independent Allowances Panel, as set out in [Part 5 of this Constitution](#).

1.6 THE CABINET

The Cabinet (which is also called "the Executive") is the part of the Council which is responsible for most of the significant decisions. The Cabinet is made up of the Leader of the Council, who is elected by the Council, and up to nine other Councillors appointed by the Leader. One or more of the Cabinet Members is also appointed by the Leader as their deputy. The Leader determines which executive decisions will be made by the Cabinet collectively and which decisions may be taken either by a committee of Cabinet or by individual Cabinet Members or Officers.

When "Key Decisions" are to be discussed or made, these are published in the Cabinet's Forward Plan (except in cases of urgent decisions where this is not possible). If Key Decisions are on the agenda for a meeting of the Cabinet, this will generally be open for the public to attend except where, for example, personal or confidential matters are being discussed (further details are set out in the [Access to Information Procedure Rules](#)). The Cabinet has to make decisions which are in line with the Council's overall Policy and Budget framework. If Cabinet wishes to make a decision which is outside this framework, this must be referred to the Council as a whole to decide.

Each Member of Cabinet is responsible for a particular functional area (known as a "Portfolio"), and the allocations of [portfolios to Cabinet Members](#) is determined by the Leader. The Leader may allocate a portfolio area to be shared (joint portfolio) between two Cabinet Members, in which case, it remains a single portfolio and the allowance is shared between the Cabinet Members.

The Leader may amend and update the Executive arrangements at any time and shall notify the Monitoring Officer of any changes.

Proceedings of the Cabinet shall take place in accordance with the Cabinet Procedures Rules set out in [Part 3 of this Constitution](#).

1.7 THE ROLE OF THE COUNCIL CHAIR

The Council will, at its Annual Meeting, elect a Councillor to be its Chair for the Municipal Year i.e. until the next Annual Meeting. The Council will also appoint a Councillor to be the Vice Chair.

The functions of the Chair of Council are as follows:

- To uphold and promote the purposes of the Constitution insofar as they relate to the conduct of Council meetings;
- To preside over meetings of the Council so that its business can be carried out efficiently and with regard to the rights of Councillors and the interests of the community;
- To make rulings at meetings of the Council on the interpretation of the Council's procedural rules in the context of efficient and effective decision making;
- To exercise discretion in the management of public and Councillor submissions;
- To ensure that the Council meeting is a forum for the debate of matters of concern to the local community;
- To promote the Council's strategic objectives and values in exercising all functional responsibilities;
- To promote public involvement in the Council's activities;
- To attend such civic and ceremonial functions as the Council and s/he determines appropriate.

The Chair will be guided by the Chair's Civic Handbook.

[Note;

The Chair (person) of the Council is a different office to that of the Civic Mayor of Bath. The latter is an office conferred by Civic Charter on the person selected by the Charter Trustees of the City of Bath to hold that position for any given year. The Mayor of Bath is a civic and ceremonial office.

The Charter Trustees comprise all the Bath & North East Somerset Councillors elected to represent wards within the City of Bath. The Charter Trustees have no local government administrative powers and are a separate corporate body from the Council.]

1.8 OFFICERS

The Council has people working for it (called 'officers') to give advice, implement decisions and manage the day-to-day delivery of its services. Some officers have a specific duty to ensure that the Council acts within the law and uses its resources wisely with certain officers having extra responsibilities.

The structure of management roles within the Council is set out in the [Management Structure chart](#).

The functions and responsibilities which the Council and the Cabinet have given to officers are detailed in [Part 2 of the Constitution](#).

A protocol governs the relationships between officers and Members of the council. This protocol is included within [Part 4 of the Constitution](#).

The Council has a [Code of Conduct for Employees](#)

The Council produces an annual Pay Policy Statement which sets out the Council's approach to setting the pay of its employees (other than those working in local authority schools).

1.9 RESIDENT RIGHTS & RESPONSIBILITIES

Everyone has an equal right to access Council services. Residents also have the following rights to:

- vote in Council elections (if they are registered);
- attend meetings of the Council, the Cabinet and Council committees except where confidential or exempt information (as defined in the Local Government Act, 1972 as amended and in accordance with Part 4B) is likely to be disclosed, and the meeting or part of it is therefore held in private;
- ask questions, present petitions or make statements to the Council, the Cabinet or any of the Council's committees;
- report on the proceedings at open meetings of the Council, Cabinet and Committees, by filming, photographing, audio-recording or by any other means, and to provide written commentaries during a meeting and oral commentaries outside a meeting;
- find out from the published [forward plan](#) of executive business what key and other decisions will be taken by the Cabinet or individual Cabinet Members and when;
- see reports and background papers, and any records of decisions made by the Council and the Cabinet (subject to restrictions in connection with exempt or confidential information);
- inspect the Council's accounts and make their views known to the external auditor;
- attend Councillors' Ward Surgeries (if they take place);
- stand for election as a Councillor;
- contact the Council in person, in writing, by telephone, using e-mail or by accessing the Council's web site;
- be consulted where required by law or where the Council chooses to consult;
- expect the Council to strive to meet its targets for responding to correspondence, telephone calls, electronic messages and complaints;
- complain to;
 - the Council itself under its [complaints scheme](#);
 - the Local Government Ombudsman if they feel the Council has not followed its procedures properly, but only after first exhausting the Council's own

complaints scheme (this is a normal requirement of the Ombudsman);

- the Council's Monitoring Officer about an alleged breach of the Council's Local Code of Conduct by an elected Member or a co-opted member.
- Residents on the electoral roll for the area have the right to demand a referendum on a directly elected mayor form of executive arrangement under the Local Government Act 2000 by raising a petition comprising 5% of the electorate. Residents on the electoral roll may request referenda on other matters by petitioning the Council. Residents may petition the Council on any other matters relating to the Council's activities or within its general powers of wellbeing.
- Residents must not be violent, abusive or threatening to Councillors or officers and must not wilfully or recklessly harm things owned by the Council, Councillors or officers.

1.10 JOINT ARRANGEMENTS

The Council is able to enter into various forms of joint arrangements with other Local Authorities and Bodies. Details of Joint Arrangements which the Council has entered into are available in [Part 2 of the Constitution](#).

1.11 OVERVIEW & SCRUTINY ARRANGEMENTS

The Council at its Annual Meeting will appoint at least one Overview and Scrutiny Panel (in this Authority, currently known as a Policy Development & Scrutiny Panel). Overview and Scrutiny Panels allow residents to have a greater say in Council matters by holding public inquiries into some matters of local concern. These lead to reports and recommendations to the Cabinet and to the Council on its policies, budget and service delivery. Overview and scrutiny Panels also monitor the decisions of the Cabinet and other executive persons/bodies.

The scope, functions and composition of the Council's Scrutiny Panels are set out in [Part 2 of the Constitution](#).

1.12 DECISION MAKING (INCLUDING KEY DECISIONS)

The Local Government Act 2000 (“the 2000 Act”) divides functions of the Council into two categories; executive and non-executive. Non-executive functions (or Council functions) are specified in Regulations issued under the 2000 Act and include functions such as those relating to planning, licensing and registration. Non-executive functions may be delegated to committees, sub-committees or officers under section 101 of the Local Government Act 1972 (“the 1972 Act”). Unless specified as a non-executive function, a function is presumed to be an executive function.

Executive Decisions may be taken by the Leader, the Cabinet as set out in paragraph 1.6 above or delegated to a committee of Cabinet, a portfolio holder or an officer, under the Local Government Act 2000.

The Council will issue and keep up to date a record of what part of the Council or individual has responsibility for particular types of decisions or decisions relating to particular areas or functions. This record is set out in [Part 2 of the Constitution](#). Local schemes of delegation maintained by the Council's Chief Officers are held in the [Library](#).

Where a decision is delegated under this Constitution, that does not prevent the person or body that has delegated the function from taking back the delegation and themselves exercising the function.

A “key decision” is defined in law as one which is likely to:

- result in the local authority incurring expenditure, or the making of savings, over a financial threshold of £500k; and/or
- be significant in terms of its effects on communities living or working in an area comprising two or more wards or electoral divisions in the area of the local authority.

The definition of key decision does not apply to proposals or decisions of the Leader acting in their capacity as Shareholder of a Local Authority Company owned or operated by the Council.

1.13 DUTY TO MONITOR AND REVIEW THE CONSTITUTION

The Monitoring Officer will monitor, review and evaluate the operation of the Constitution to ensure that the aims and principles of the Constitution are given full effect.

The Monitoring Officer has delegated authority to update the

Constitution arising from;

- decisions of the Council or Cabinet;
- where legislation requires a change in wording or terminology;
- minor or inconsequential changes;
- changes that are predominantly managerial in their nature where there is agreement from the other two statutory officers (the Chief Executive and the Section 151 Officer) and where the matter has been subject to consultation with the appropriate Members (normally the relevant Cabinet Member and Group Leaders).

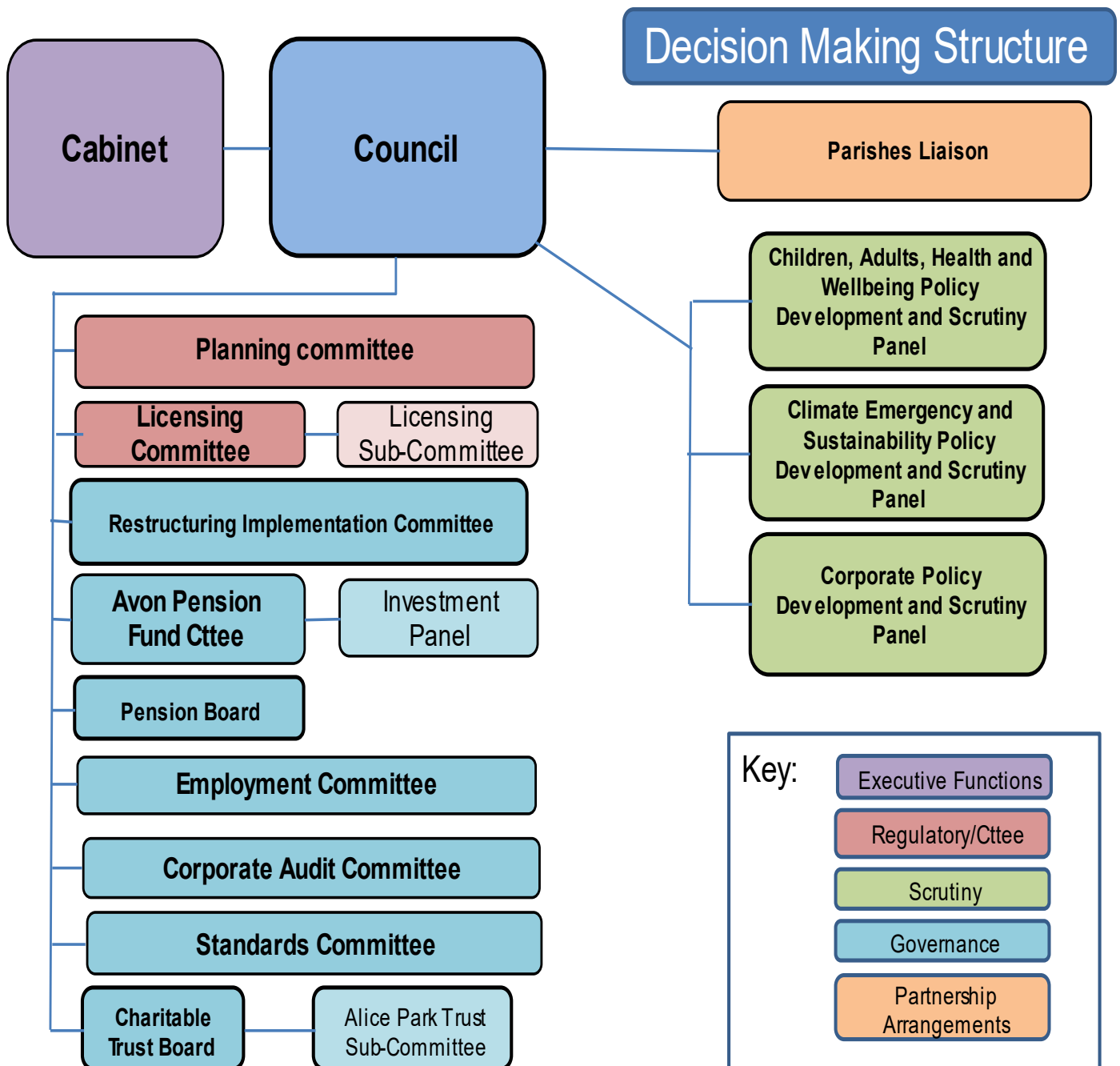
1.14 SUSPENSION OF THE CONSTITUTION

There are occasions when it is helpful to the conduct of a meeting, or for other reasons, not to apply the Procedural Rules (to the extent permitted within the law). Any such motion to suspend must be supported by at least one half of the whole number of voting Members present. The extent and duration of suspension must be stated in the proposal. This is usually done to facilitate the smooth running of a meeting eg; proposing an extension to the 10pm meeting close, so that business can be concluded.

Any issues of interpretation of the Constitution shall be determined by the Monitoring Officer after consultation with the Chief Executive.

PART 2 RESPONSIBILITY FOR FUNCTIONS AND DELEGATION SCHEMES

Diagram Of Council's Decision Making Bodies



2.1 COUNCIL

2.1.1 Functions

The Council will exercise the following functions:

- i. adopting and changing the Constitution;
- ii. approving or amending the Policy and Budget Framework and the budget;
- iii. deciding matters relating to the discharge of executive functions where a possible decision is considered contrary to the Policy and Budget Framework or contrary to or not wholly in accordance with the budget (this does not apply in cases of urgency)
- iv. appointing a Councillor to be the Leader of the Council (except where there is a directly elected Mayor in which case no Leader shall be appointed) or removing the leader. The removal will take effect immediately on the passing of the resolution. Where the Council has resolved to remove the leader, a new leader is to be elected either at the same meeting or at a subsequent meeting.
- v. agreeing and/or amending the terms of reference and powers and duties of committees of the Council, including overview and scrutiny panels, deciding on their composition, making appointments to them and determining the allocation of chairing arrangements and seats between political groups;
- vi. appointing representatives to outside bodies and Joint Arrangements (including Statutory and other Joint Committees) unless the appointment is an executive function or has been delegated by the Council;
- vii. adopting an allowances scheme for Councillors, taking into account the recommendations of an Independent Panel;
- viii. conferring the title of Honorary Alderman/Freeman of B&NES;
- ix. approving the appointment of the Head of Paid Service, Chief Financial Officer and Monitoring Officer (on a recommendation of the Employment Committee);
- x. making, amending, revoking, re-enacting or adopting bylaws and promoting or opposing the making of local

legislation or personal Bills;

- xi. undertaking all functions in relations to elections;
- xii. approving the annual accounts;
- xiii. accepting or otherwise a delegation from another local authority or the Cabinet of another authority;
- xiv. all local choice functions set out in [Part 2 of this Constitution](#) which the Council decides should be undertaken by itself rather than by the Cabinet;
- xv. undertaking all other matters which, by law, must be reserved to Council.

2.1.2 Composition

The Council comprises 59 Members, otherwise called Councillors. One or more Councillors will be elected by the voters of each ward in accordance with a scheme drawn up by the Local Government Commission and approved by the Secretary of State.

Where a change in the political proportionality of the Council occurs, (proportionality addresses the number of Council seats held by each confirmed political group and the number of committee places allocated in proportion), the Council will, as a consequence, review this Constitution and make such changes as are appropriate to reflect the new position and which are consistent with the law.

2.1.3 Quorum

No business shall be transacted at a meeting of the Council unless at least one quarter of the whole number of Members of the Council is present. This is taken to be 15 elected Councillors of Bath & North East Somerset.

2.2 CABINET

2.2.1 Scope

This section sets out the functions and responsibilities of the

Executive/Cabinet. The Cabinet, as the Executive, will carry out all of the local authority's functions which are not the responsibility of any other part of the Council whether by law or under this Constitution.

2.2.2 Functions

The business of Cabinet includes;

- To propose key Policy and Budget Framework items to the Council, including the budget;
- To ensure that all action is taken to implement the key policies and objectives of the Council as contained in the Policy Framework, including the setting of secondary policies;
- To maintain an active dialogue with Overview and Scrutiny bodies in ensuring that the overall integrity of the decision making process and the delivery of Council services is maintained;
- To respond directly or through the Council meeting as appropriate to Overview and Scrutiny activity or to individual Member initiatives formally proposed at a Council meeting;
- To receive performance management reports including updates on action plans and major projects;
- To pursue as appropriate negotiations on local area agreements or similar in order to promote the economic, social and environmental wellbeing of the area and to determine such agreements except where it relates to a matter reserved to the Council for determination;
- To perform its functional responsibilities in accordance with the arrangements prescribed in the [Executive Procedural Rules](#) within the Council's Constitution.

2.2.3 Composition

The Cabinet consists of the Leader of the Council and up to nine other Cabinet Members, one of whom will be appointed by the Leader as his or her statutory Deputy Leader. All such appointments will be notified in writing to the Proper Officer of the Council.

The Cabinet comprises of the following individual Cabinet Members whose allocated portfolios of responsibility are detailed on the Council's website;

- The Leader
- Economic Development and Resources (Deputy Leader – statutory)
- Climate and Sustainable Travel (Deputy Leader)
- Adult Services and Council House Building
- Children and Young People, and Communities
- Neighbourhood Services
- Transport
- Planning and Licensing

The Cabinet may appoint Advisory Bodies to help it in its work. Those bodies will normally make their minutes available to all Council Members. They may receive specific requests for advice from the Cabinet collectively or from an individual Cabinet Member. These advisory bodies will not be prevented from giving advice directly to an Overview and Scrutiny Panel when asked to do so.

The Cabinet may appoint Committees to fulfil executive functions on its behalf. The details of any such committees will be included in the Scheme of Delegation maintained by the Monitoring Officer.

The Leader will be a Councillor elected as Leader at a meeting of the full Council. The Leader will hold office until the annual meeting immediately following the next local government elections, unless:

- a) he/she resigns from the office;
- b) he/she becomes disqualified from membership of the Council, either for a specific period, or indefinitely;
- c) he/she is no longer a Councillor; or
- d) he/she is removed from office by resolution of the Council or otherwise.

Where a Councillor has been elected as Leader for a term which expires at an Annual Meeting of the Council then their term as Leader

(and their position as a Councillor) will continue until the Annual Meeting of the Council notwithstanding that he/she may have otherwise ceased to be a Councillor following an election.

It is now a function of the Leader to appoint Executive Councillors who remain in office until they are removed from office by the Leader or until they are no longer Councillors.

The Leader must approve a scheme of delegation of executive functions. The Leader may vary the allocation of portfolio responsibilities, or the scope of any portfolio responsibility.

Arrangements for the undertaking of business in the event of absence, or where for any reason it is considered that the decision should not be made by a particular Councillor (conflicted), are set out below.

The Leader of the Council may designate any other Member of the Cabinet to take temporary responsibility for the absent Member's portfolio and for any associated decision making during the period of absence/conflict. The Leader may alternatively designate such decisions for the whole Cabinet to determine, during the period of absence/conflict. The Leader's decisions on how to deal with such business will be notified to and published by the Chief Executive.

Where the Leader of the Council is absent and unable to exercise his or her functions for a period exceeding 3 consecutive working days, or as otherwise agreed by the Leader in advance, or is otherwise unable to act by virtue of a prejudicial interest or for any other reason whereby he or she considers it would be inappropriate to act, the Deputy Leader shall have the power to exercise all the executive and leadership functions of the Leader. If there is no Deputy Leader appointed, the Council will determine what arrangements are to operate in the event of the Leader being absent for a stated period of time.

If the Leader, the Cabinet or a committee of the Cabinet, or an individual Cabinet Member responsible for an executive function, decides to delegate to a committee of the Cabinet, an Area Committee (where these are established), a joint Committee or an officer, or amend or withdraw a delegation, written notice must be given to the Chief Executive. The notice must set out the extent of the amendment to the scheme of delegation and whether it entails the withdrawal of delegation from any person or body. Even when executive functions have been delegated, that fact does not prevent the discharge of delegated functions by the person or body who delegated, nor obliges the person/body to exercise that power or

duty. These amendments will be published via the Weekly list.

A Cabinet Member may require that a decision within their portfolio is made instead by the Cabinet.

2.2.4 Quorum

No business shall be transacted at a meeting of the Cabinet unless 50% of the membership is present.

2.2.5 Substitution

No substitutes for Cabinet Members are permitted.

2.3 ALLOCATION OF LOCAL CHOICE FUNCTIONS

Certain functions of local authorities are classified as “Local Choice” functions under the Local Government Act 2000 and the Local Authorities (Functions and Responsibilities) Regulations 2000, Schedule 2. The Council will decide which of these decisions should be taken by the Full Council and which should be taken by Cabinet.

The following table sets out the decision-maker for each Local Choice Function:

Function	Decision Making Body
1. Any function under a local Act other than a function specified or referred to in regulation 2 or Schedule 1 of the Local Authorities (Functions and Responsibilities) (England) Regulations 2000.	Cabinet
2. The determination of an appeal against any decision made by or on behalf of the authority (where a right of appeal exists)	Council
3. The making of arrangements pursuant to subsection (1) of section 67 of, and Schedule 18 to, the 1998 Act (appeals against exclusion of pupils)	Cabinet
4. The making of arrangements pursuant to section 94 (1) and (4) of, and Schedule 24 to, the 1998 Act (admission appeals).	Cabinet
5. The making of arrangements pursuant to section 95(2) of, and Schedule 25 to, the 1998 Act (children to whom section 87 applies: appeals by governing bodies).	Cabinet
6. Any function relating to contaminated land (see footnote a) .	Cabinet
7. The discharge of any function relating to the control of pollution or the management of air quality (see footnote b) .	Cabinet
8. The service of an abatement notice in respect of statutory nuisance (see footnote c) .	Cabinet

9. The passing of a resolution that Schedule 2 to the Noise and Statutory Nuisance Act 1993 should apply in the authority's area (see footnote d) .	Cabinet
10. The inspection of the authority's area to detect any statutory nuisance (see footnote e) .	Cabinet
11. The investigation of any complaint as to the existence of a statutory nuisance (see footnote f)	Cabinet
12. The obtaining of information under section 330 of the Town and Country Planning Act 1990 (see footnote g) as to interest in land.	Cabinet
13. The obtaining of particulars of persons interested in land under section 16 of the Local Government (Miscellaneous Provisions) Act 1976 (see footnote h) .	Cabinet and all non-executive committees in relation to their functions
14. The making of agreements for the execution of highways works (see footnote i) .	Cabinet
15. The appointment of any individual: (a) To any office other than an office in which he is employed by the authority; (b) To anybody other than – (i) the authority (ii) a joint committee of two of more authorities; or (c) to any committee or sub-committee of such a body. and the revocation of any such appointment	Cabinet in relation to executive functions. Non-executive committees in relation to non-executive functions delegated.
16. The responsibility for preparation, submission and modification of a draft Local Area Agreement	Cabinet

- (a) Part IIA of the Environmental Protection Act 1990 (c.43) and subordinate legislation under that Part.
- (b) See the Pollution Prevention and Control Act 1990 (c.24), Part IV of the Environment Act 1995 (c.25), Part I of the Environmental Protection Act 1990 (c.43) and the Clean Air Act 1993 (c.11).
- (c) Section 80(1) of the Environment Protection Act 1990.

- (d) Section 8 of the Noise and Statutory Nuisance Act 1993 (c.40).
- (e) Section 79 of the Environmental Protection Act 1990.
- (f) Section 79 of the Environmental Protection Act 1990.
- (g) 1990c.8.
- (h) 1976c.57.
- (i) Section 278 of the Highways Act 1980 (c.66), substituted by the New Roads and Street Works Act 1991 (c.22), Section 23

2.4 THE ROLE OF THE POLICY & BUDGET FRAMEWORK IN DECISION MAKING

The terms “Policy and Budget Framework” and “the Budget” are used throughout this Constitution. The meanings of these terms are set out below;

2.4.1 Policy and Budget Framework

The Policy and Budget Framework means the list of plans and strategies agreed by the Council as being those that collectively form the Framework and which are determined by the Council. The current list of such plans and strategies is contained in the [Policy and Budget Framework Procedure Rules](#).

2.4.2 Budget

The budget includes the allocation of financial resources to different services and projects, proposed contingency funds, the council tax base, setting the council tax and decisions relating to the control of the Council’s borrowing requirement, the control of its capital expenditure and the setting of budget transfer limits, as defined in the [Budget Management Scheme](#).

2.5 COMMITTEES, PANELS AND BOARDS - GENERAL

The Council has delegated responsibility for certain functions to a number of Committees, Panels and Boards. The functions, roles and responsibilities of these bodies are set out later in Part 2.

In summary, the Committees, Panels and Boards are as follows;

- Alice Park Trust Sub-Committee
- Avon Pension Fund Committee, Investment Panel, Brunel Board & working groups

- Charitable Trust Board
- Children, Adults, Health & Wellbeing Policy Development & Scrutiny Panel
- Climate Emergency & Sustainability Policy Development & Scrutiny Panel
- Corporate Audit Committee
- Corporate Policy Development & Scrutiny Panel
- Employment Committee
- Health & Care Board
- Health & Wellbeing Board
- Independent Persons Panel
- Independent Remuneration Panel
- Licensing Committee & Sub-Committee
- Local Pension Board
- Parish Liaison meeting
- Planning Committee
- Restructuring Implementation Committee
- Standards Committee

2.6 OVERVIEW & SCRUTINY – GENERAL

2.6.1 Role of Policy Development & Scrutiny Panels

In accordance with Section 9FA – 9FI of the Local Government Act 2000, the Council is required to appoint at least one Overview and Scrutiny Panel to discharge these functions.

Overview and Scrutiny is the name in legislation given to the system of checks and balances implemented by the rest of the Councillors as they monitor the activity of the Cabinet, and also assist them in developing policy. In Bath & North East Somerset Council, it is known as Policy Development and Scrutiny and is a key part of local government allowing citizens to have a greater say in Council matters by holding public inquiries into matters of local concern.

The main decision-making powers in Bath & North East Somerset Council lie with Councillors who sit on the Cabinet, intended to create clear leadership and accountability for service delivery. By contrast, Policy Development and Scrutiny is intended to review the work of the Cabinet and to enhance the performance of services. It is also designed to provide a forum through which policy review and development can be extensively examined before consideration and decision by the Cabinet and/or Full Council.

The proceedings of all overview and scrutiny bodies will be conducted in accordance with the [Overview and Scrutiny Procedure Rules](#) set out in this Constitution.

The Policy Development & Scrutiny Panel Chairs and Vice Chairs group is an informal group which meets quarterly and has oversight of the overall Policy Development and Scrutiny work planning and responsibility for co-ordinating the Council's scrutiny activity, as follows:

- Share and co-ordinate individual Panel work plans, in order to prioritise resources effectively;
- Decide how to deal with cross-boundary issues, or issues that do not readily fall into the remit of any of the Panels (Integrated forward plan);
- Decide how to respond to/programme instructions from Council or requests from Cabinet;
- Identify training, development and support needs for all Panel members;
- Consider progress and direction of the scrutiny function and

working practices, and identify and implement future developments;

- Have oversight of financial, staff and other resources made available to support scrutiny;
- Discuss or propose variations to Panel membership, operating framework and Terms of Reference (constitutional) for Council approval where appropriate;
- Champion the scrutiny process within the Council and externally;
- Compile (with officers) and approve the Annual Report for submission to Council.

Policy Development and Scrutiny has two key roles:

Overview

- To assist the Council and the Cabinet in the development of new policy.
- To assist the Cabinet by giving comments on issues identified as "key decisions" prior to a decision being made.
- To assist the Cabinet by giving comments on service and budget plans at their draft stage and assisting in the development of its budget and policy framework.

Scrutiny

- To scrutinise performance management information to ensure that the Council is performing to agreed targets and to agreed action plans.
- To determine "call-ins" of decisions made but not yet implemented by the Cabinet.
- To scrutinise particular "key decisions" and other aspects of Cabinet activity to ensure compliance with agreed Council policies and plans.
- Evaluate the impact of Council and or Cabinet decisions and policies.

Within their allocated remits, each Panel has a broad-based responsibility for Policy Development and Scrutiny in its particular area of responsibility, including;

- carrying-out of in-depth reviews, as set out in their work plan;
- reviewing and/or scrutinising decisions made or actions taken in connection with the discharge of any of the Council's functions;
- making recommendations to the Cabinet arising from the outcome of the scrutiny process;
- undertaking scrutiny of particular Key Decisions and other aspects of Cabinet activity, including evaluating the impact of Council and Cabinet decisions and policies;
- offering overview advice and reports of policy development issues;
- dealing with any relevant Councillor Call for Action;
- sending communications and reports directly to other Policy Development and Scrutiny Panels, Cabinet and Council, and providing them to any Member of the Council, subject to provisions regarding confidential and exempt information;
- inviting persons to be co-opted non-voting members (excepting those statutory co-optees with voting rights);
- inviting participants to give evidence, either verbally or in writing, on any issue contained within their work plan, giving a minimum of two weeks' notice unless mutually agreed otherwise
- requiring officers of the Council and Members of the Cabinet to attend to give evidence, subject to the provisions of the Overview and Scrutiny Procedural Rules
- forming discretionary joint bodies with other Councils for the purpose of enabling joint scrutiny of bodies/activities beyond the remit of Bath and North East Somerset, without delegation of any responsibilities or powers.
- conducting research, community and other consultation in the analysis of policy issues and development of possible options for the future, and implementing mechanisms to encourage and enhance community participation in the development of policy options;
- liaising with other external organisations to ensure that the interests of local people are enhanced by collaborative working.

2.7 ALICE PARK TRUST SUB-COMMITTEE

2.7.1 Committee Scope

The Sub-Committee shall discharge the Council's functions as sole corporate trustee in respect of the Alice Park Trust, the site and its resources in accordance with Trust's objects and the duties it owes pursuant to the Charities legislation.

To report to the Charitable Trust Board on an annual basis detailing the work undertaken by the Trust in the preceding year and confirming to the Board that the Trust has complied with the objects of the charity and the Charities Legislation.

Appointed by: The Charitable Trust Board

2.7.2 Functions

To discharge the Council's role as Corporate Trustee for the Alice Park Trust, in line with Charities Commission guidance. The objects of the Alice Park Trust are for use as a public park and children's recreation ground.

To agree the Trust's annual budget and business plan.

To approve the use of any reserves.

To agree the Trust's annual accounts.

To receive and respond to the audit findings relating to the annual accounts.

To receive reports on the effective day to day management and financial performance of the Trust.

To allow interested parties to give their view on the performance and direction of the Trust.

2.7.3 Composition

3 Councillors from the membership of the Charitable Trust Board (excluding the lead Cabinet Member) and the 2 Ward Members (voting) for Lambridge plus 2 non-voting independent members.

The Sub-Committee may co-opt other non-voting members as appropriate.

2.7.4 Quorum

3 voting Members.

2.7.5 Substitution

Substitute Members are permitted in line with [Council Procedure Rule 3.1.4](#).

2.8 AVON PENSION FUND COMMITTEE

[Approved by the Avon Pension Fund Committee 28 June 2021]

2.8.1 Committee Scope

Bath and North East Somerset Council, in its role as administering authority, has executive responsibility for the Avon Pension Fund. The Council delegates its responsibility for administering the Fund to the Avon Pension Fund Committee which is the formal decision-making body for the Fund.

The Avon Pension Fund is a member of the Brunel Pension Partnership (Brunel). Brunel Pension Partnership Ltd (BPP Ltd) will be responsible for implementing the Fund's Investment Strategy. Most of the Fund's assets have transferred to portfolios offered by Brunel with only less liquid legacy assets remaining under direct management of the Fund. Once Avon's assets are held within a Brunel portfolio, the appointment, monitoring and deselection of managers will be the responsibility of BPP Ltd.

2.8.2 Functions and Duties

To discharge the responsibilities of Bath and North East Somerset Council in its role as lead authority for the administration of the Avon Pension Fund. These include determination of all Fund specific policies concerning the administration of the Fund, the investment strategy and the investing of Fund monies and the management of the Fund's solvency level. In addition, the Committee is responsible for all financial and regulatory aspects of the Fund. At all times, the Committee must discharge its responsibility in the best interest of the Avon Pension Fund.

The key duties in discharging this role are:

1. Having taken appropriate advice determining the following:
 - a. the investment strategy and strategic asset allocation
 - b. the administration strategy
 - c. the funding strategy.
2. Monitoring the performance of the investment strategy, scheme administration, and external advisors.

3. Ensuring that the investment strategy can be delivered by the portfolios offered by BPP Ltd. If not, agree alternative arrangements. In relation to Brunel Pension Partnership:
 - a. Monitoring the performance of BPP Ltd in delivering investment services to the Fund. Make representations to the Brunel Oversight Board on matters of concern regarding the service provided by BPP Ltd and the performance of its portfolios.
 - b. Monitoring the governance of Brunel Pension Partnership and making recommendations to the Brunel Oversight Board. Terminating the Service Agreement with BPP Ltd.
4. Approving and monitoring compliance of statutory statements and policies required under the Local Government Pension Scheme Regulations.
5. Approving the annual budget and 3-year Service Plan and resource requirements to deliver the work plan.
6. Approving variances to budget within a financial year.
7. Approving the annual budget for the Pension Board subject to the approval of Pension Board's work plan.
8. Commissioning actuarial valuations in accordance with the provisions of the Local Government Pension Scheme Regulations.
9. Making representations to government and responding to consultations as appropriate concerning any proposed changes to the Local Government Pension Scheme.
10. Nominating a representative (and named substitute) from the Committee to represent the Committee on the Oversight Board for Brunel Pension Partnership.

2.8.3 Delegations

In discharging its role, the Committee can delegate any of the above or implementation thereof to the Sub-Committee (referred to as the Investment Panel) or Officers. The current delegations are set out below.

2.8.4 Composition

Voting Members (14)	5 elected Members from B&NES (subject to the rules of political proportionality of the Council) 3 independent members 1 elected Member nominated from each of Bristol City Council, North Somerset Council and South Gloucestershire Council 1 nominated from the Higher and Further education bodies 1 nominated from the Academy bodies 1 nominated by the trades unions

Non-voting members (3)	1 nominated from the Parish Councils Up to 2 nominated from different Trades Unions

The Council will nominate the Chair and Vice Chair of the Committee. The Vice Chair will be the Chair of Investment Panel.

2.8.5 Meetings

Meetings will be held at least quarterly. Meetings will be held in public, though the public may be excluded from individual items of business in accordance with the usual exemption procedures.

2.8.6 Quorum

The quorum of the Committee shall be 5 voting members who shall include at least 1 Member from Bath and North East Somerset Council.

2.8.7 Substitution

Named substitutes to the Committee are allowed.

2.9 AVON PENSION FUND INVESTMENT PANEL

2.9.1 Committee Scope

The role of the Avon Pension Fund Committee Investment Panel shall be to consider, in detail matters relating to the investment of the assets within the strategic investment framework and performance of investment managers in achieving the Fund's investment objectives.

2.9.2 Functions

The Investment Panel will:

1. Review strategic and emerging opportunities outside the strategic asset allocation and make recommendations to the Committee.
2. Review the performance of the investment and risk management strategies
3. Report matters of strategic importance to the Committee.

And have delegated authority for:

4. Monitoring the transition of assets to the Brunel portfolios and allocate assets to the relevant portfolio offered by Brunel
5. Approve and monitor tactical positions within strategic allocation ranges.
6. Approve allocations to emerging opportunities within the strategic allocations.

7. Approve commitments to Brunel's private market portfolios at each commitment cycle to maintain strategic allocations.
8. For the Risk Management Strategies monitor the outcome versus strategic objectives and consider whether any strategic changes are required to manage emerging risks.
9. For assets held outside Brunel:
 - a) Implement investment management arrangements in line with strategic policy.
 - b) Monitor investment managers' investment performance and make decision to terminate mandates on performance grounds.
10. Monitor the investment performance of the portfolios managed by BPP Ltd and report to Committee on investment matters with specific reference to strategy delivery.
11. Delegate specific decisions to Officers as appropriate.

2.9.3 Composition

The Panel shall comprise a maximum of 6 voting Members of the Avon Pension Fund Committee, of which 3 shall be Bath and North East Somerset Councillors and 3 shall be the independent members of the Committee. (The membership shall include the Chair of the Committee and /or the Vice- Chair).

Note: The appointment of Bath and North East Somerset Councillors to the Panel is subject to the rules of political proportionality of the Council.

Members shall be appointed to the Panel for a period of four years in line with the Avon Pension Fund Committee.

The Council will nominate the Chair of the Panel.

2.9.4 Panel Meetings

Though called a "Panel", it is an ordinary sub-committee of the Committee. Accordingly, meetings must be held in public, though the public may be excluded from individual items of business in accordance with the usual exemption procedures.

The Panel shall meet at least quarterly ahead of the Committee meeting on dates agreed by Members of the Panel.

2.9.5 Quorum

The quorum of the Panel shall comprise 3 Members, who shall include at least one Member who is not a Bath & North East Somerset Councillor.

2.9.6 Substitution

Substitutes for the Panel must be Members of Committee or their named Committee substitute.

2.9.7 Minutes

Minutes of Panel meetings (whether or not approved by the Panel) shall appear as an item on the next agenda of the meeting of the Committee that follows a meeting of the Panel.

2.10 BRUNEL OVERSIGHT BOARD REPRESENTATIVE

2.10.1 Committee Scope

Brunel Oversight Board (the Board) is the primary governance body within the Brunel Pension Partnership. Each Fund within the partnership has a representative on the Board and this representative represents the Committee when discharging its duties.

2.10.2 Functions

Acting for the administering authorities in their capacity as shareholders in BPP Ltd., the Board has responsibility for ensuring that BPP Ltd delivers the services required to achieve investment pooling across the Brunel Pension Partnership.

Subject to the terms of reference for the Board and the applicable shareholder documentation, the Board's role is to consider and address relevant matters on behalf of the administering authorities. These include the monitoring and strategic oversight functions necessary to its role, as well as acting as a conduit and focus of shareholder requirements and views.

Consistent with this role, the Board's duties include reviewing and discussing any matter which it considers appropriate in relation to BPP Ltd including BPP Ltd's services, performance, operations, governance, strategy, financing and management.

The main duties of the Board Representative are:

1. To represent the Committee and Shareholder on the Brunel Oversight Board.
2. To ensure that the Committee's views are communicated to the Board and BPP Ltd.

3. To ensure the Fund's and shareholder's interests are protected within Brunel in line with the legal framework within which Brunel operates.
4. To report back to the Committee and Shareholder all relevant issues discussed by the Board and recommendations to the Brunel Client Group and/or the Shareholders.
5. To seek the consensus view of the Committee for Shareholder and Board matters where necessary.
6. To raise issues with the Board at the request of Committee Members, the shareholder representative or Head of Pensions.

2.11 BRUNEL PENSION PARTNERSHIP WORKING GROUP

2.11.1 Committee Scope

This is a group of Committee Members whose role is to consider in greater detail any issues arising from Brunel Pension Partnership with Officers, for example Reserve Matters, papers to be discussed at BOB. This will not include routine investment matters which are monitored by the Investment Panel.

2.11.2 Functions

With regard to any matters arising from Brunel Pension Partnership where the Avon Pension Fund have an interest:

- a) to consider each matter that will be brought to the Pension Committee and / or Shareholder representative for decisions in due course
- b) to provide guidance to the Pension Committee and / or Shareholder Representative in relation to each matter when they are being considered
- c) to provide guidance to the BOB representative as required
- d) to make recommendations to the Pension Committee regarding general oversight of the pool, as considered appropriate.

2.11.3 Composition

This group will consist of:

- a) the BOB Representative,
- b) named BOB substitute

- c) the Chair and/or Vice Chair if not the BOB representative /substitute
- d) an independent committee member.
- e) Head of Pensions
- f) Group Manager, Funding, Investments and Risk

2.11.4 Quorum

The Working Group shall be quorate if three Members are in attendance, with at least 2 that are not fund officers. The Head of Pensions shall chair the Working Group.

2.11.5 Meeting Arrangements

The Working Group shall meet as and when required as determined by the Head of Pensions. Meetings may be via telephone conference.

Key discussions and action points from the Working Group will be recorded and the committee will be updated at the next committee meeting.

2.12 OFFICER DELEGATIONS AVON PENSION FUND

In addition to the responsibilities listed in the Council's scheme of delegation, some additional responsibilities for functions specifically related to pension fund activities and the authorisation of transactions have been delegated to officers by the Pension Fund Committee. These are set out in the Fund's Scheme of Delegation and include the following:

1. Implementation and day to day monitoring of the administration, investment and funding strategies and related policies.
2. Implementing investments in emerging opportunities within strategic allocations, either to be managed outside Brunel or instruct allocation to Brunel portfolio.
3. Implementing investment management arrangements in line with the strategic policy as follows:
 - a. For assets managed outside Brunel, this includes the setting of mandate parameters and the appointment of managers, in consultation with the Investment Panel.
 - b. For assets managed within Brunel, deciding and instructing the allocation to each Brunel portfolio.

4. Implement the strategic risk management objectives of the Fund and take necessary action to ensure delivery of strategic outcomes. Ongoing consideration of these issues will be undertaken by the Funding and Risk Management Group (see section 6) who will report decisions and ongoing considerations to the Investment Panel.
5. Rebalancing the investment assets to target strategic allocations, when deemed prudent to do so, taking account of tactical allocations approved by the Investment Panel.
6. Representing the Fund on the Brunel Client Group to develop Brunel investment strategies and policies which effectively support the interests of the Fund.
7. Commissioning Elective Services from BPP Ltd and issuing instructions as permitted by the Brunel Service Agreement to BPP Ltd.
8. The appointment of specialist advisors to support the Committee and Officers in discharging their functions.
9. Determining policies that support the investment and funding strategies having taken expert advice.
10. In consultation with the Chair of the Committee, the Head of Pensions will approve the draft Statement of Accounts and Annual Report for audit.
11. Authorising expenditure from the Fund in accordance with the annual budget.
12. Admitting new admitted bodies into the Fund subject to them meeting Fund policy.
13. The Director – One West (or Section 151 Officer in their absence) has authority to dismiss investment managers, advisors and 3rd party providers if urgent action is required (does not refer to performance failures but to their inability to fulfil their contractual obligations or a material failing of the company).
14. The Director – One West (or Section 151 Officer in their absence) has authority to suspend policy (in consultation with the Chairs of Committee and Panel) in times of extreme market volatility where protection of capital is paramount.
15. Under its wider delegated powers, the Director – One West (or Section 151 Officer in their absence) has delegated authority to effectively manage the liabilities of the Fund including the recovery of debt.
16. Exercising the discretions specified in the Local Government Pension Scheme Regulations in connection with deciding entitlement to pension benefits or the award or distribution thereof.

2.13 FUNDING AND RISK MANAGEMENT GROUP

2.13.1 Committee Scope

The Funding and Risk Management Group (FRMG) is a group of Avon Pension Fund officers and specialist advisors whose role is to consider in greater detail all strategic and operational aspects of the Risk Management Strategies.

2.13.2 Functions

In addition, it has specific delegated authority as follows:

1. Agree the operational structures to meet the strategic objectives determined by the Avon Pension Committee
2. Make changes to the structures as needed to ensure strategic outcomes continue to be achieved or to manage emerging risk
3. Implement the strategies including
 - a. Counterparty selection
 - b. Trigger frameworks
 - c. Collateral arrangements
 - d. Setting benchmarks
4. Determine the framework for monitoring the strategies and reporting to Panel & Committee

2.13.3 Composition

The Group will consist of the following:

From the Avon Pension Fund:

- Head of Pensions
- Group Manager, Funding, Investments and Risk
- Investment Manager
- Senior Investments Officer
- Other Fund Officers as required (for example Funding Manager, Governance & Risk Advisor)

Advisors

- Investment Consultant or deputy
- Risk Consultant or deputy
- Scheme Actuary or deputy

- Investment Manager as required

2.13.3 Quorum

FRMG shall be quorate if the following are in attendance:

- 2 Pension Fund Officers one of which must be the Head of Pensions or Group Manager, Funding, Investments and Risk
- Risk Consultant or deputy
- Investment Consultant or Scheme Actuary

2.13.4 Meeting Arrangements

FRMG will meet as and when required as determined by the Head of Pensions/Group Manager, Funding, Investments and Risk, but at a minimum quarterly. Meetings will be virtual/ by telephone conference.

Meetings will be chaired by the Head of Pensions or Group Manager, Funding, Investments and Risk. Key discussion and action points will be recorded, and minutes will be circulated to the Investment Panel. The group will also update the Panel at the following meeting.

2.14 CHARITABLE TRUST BOARD

2.14.1 Committee Scope

The purpose of the Charitable Trust Board is to facilitate the management of the charitable trusts for which the Council is the sole trustee; independently, in accordance with their governing documents and in the best interests of the charity.

2.14.2 Functions

In respect of the charities listed in Schedule 1 the Charitable Trust Board shall have the following powers delegated to it.

The Role of the Board is to exercise the powers delegated to it for the management of the trust, namely;

- to manage the charity in pursuit of the charitable purposes,
- to manage the finances of the charity and ensure its solvency,
- to ensure the charity acts within the governing documents,
- to ensure the charity deals with their regulatory and public accountability obligations, and
- to identify and manage potential conflicts of interest.

In respect of the charities listed in Schedule 2 the Charitable Trust Board shall investigate the governing documents of each charity and recommend to Council the inclusion of any Charity suitable for incorporation into Schedule 1 and until such time as the Council decides to delegate its functions in respect of such Trust to the Charitable Trust Board it shall advise the Council as trustee on;

- the strategic direction of those Trusts,
- the financial resources needed to operate those Trusts;

The Charitable Trust Board shall, in respect of all Trusts, ensure compliance with the Charity Commission's registration and reporting requirements and periodically consider if Trust's assets could be consolidated and more efficiently /effectively used in conjunction with another Trust. Where appropriate it should consult on consolidation proposals with the Charity Commission and interested parties and make any recommendations for consolidation in its annual report to Council.

Decisions about requests for works to be undertaken, or events to be approved that fall outside of the Charitable Trust Board cycle shall be delegated to the Chair of the Trust Board in consultation with the Lead Officer.

Urgent works required under health and safety legislation shall be delegated to the Lead Officer to action promptly.

The Board shall have the power to create a sub-committee for each charity listed in Schedule 1 to ensure that each charity shall be separately administered. Each sub- committee shall consist of at least 3 Councillors and co-opted voting members consisting of the ward Councillor(s) for the area where any land subject to the Trust is situated and any other non-voting members who may be able to assist it in its work. The Trust Board and each sub-committee shall undertake its duties through meetings as required and will meet at least twice annually.

In any meeting, the affairs of each Trust will be considered separately and in relation to the purpose and governing document of each Trust.

Each sub-committee will report annually to the Trust Board after submitting any annual report to the Charity Commissioners and the Trust Board shall thereafter provide an annual report to Council on the financial standing of each Trust and update the Council on the work undertaken by each Trust in the preceding year

2.14.3 Composition

- Five Councillors
(to include the Cabinet Member responsible for Neighbourhood Services and at least one Councillor who is not a Member of the

controlling group but whose appointment is determined by the controlling group), and

- One independent person with suitable skills, experience or interests to be appointed by the Board from applicants who wish to be considered following advertisement of the role.

The Board will elect a Chair and Vice Chair.

2.14.4 Quorum

Quorum will be three Councillors. Decisions will be by a majority of the Councillors present.

2.14.5 Substitution

Substitute Members are permitted in line with [Council Procedure Rule 3.1.4](#).

2.14.6 Support Arrangements

Support for the Board and sub-committees as necessary will be provided through the relevant Council sections. Lead advisors will be identified for each Charitable Trust in Schedule 1.

Schedule 1 Charitable Trust for which the Council is sole trustee	Schedule 2 Charitable Trusts for which the Council is responsible
The Alice Park Free Fields (Rainbow Woods)	Weston Recreation Ground 4, The Circus Firs Field Beechen Cliff Backstones Innox Park Post Office Museum

2.15 CHILDREN, ADULTS, HEALTH & WELLBEING POLICY DEVELOPMENT AND SCRUTINY PANEL

2.15.1 Committee Scope

To undertake a system of checks and balances to monitor and review the activity of the Cabinet and to assist with policy development in respect of the functions set out below.

2.15.2 Functions

The Panel remit is:

- Health Scrutiny including Healthwatch and Community Safety
- Public Health
- Integrated Commissioning including, Mental Health & Substances, Children, Better Care Fund, Learning disability, Transformation
- Safeguarding Outcomes
- Care Outcomes including Corporate Parenting
- Inclusion (SEND)
- Prevention (CYP)
- Safeguarding Children & Young People
- Safeguarding of Adults & Quality Assurance including Data Protection & Complaints
- Service Development
- Health, Safety & Wellbeing
- Education Transformation including Virtual Schools, School Improvement and Music
- Delegated Committee for the statutory health scrutiny function under the Health & Social Care Act 2012
- Delegated Crime & Disorder Panel
- Delegated Curriculum Complaints Panel

In addition to General Terms of Reference:

Further to the **Police and Justice Act 2006** (and associated regulations), the designated Crime and Disorder Panel in relation to responsible authorities (or co-operating bodies or persons) may:

- a. review the decisions and performance at least once per year
- b. with reasonable notice, require the attendance of an officer or employee to answer questions, and more recently to include the new Police and Crime Commissioner
- c. require a response in writing to reports and recommendations of the Panel within 28 days, or as soon as reasonably possible

Further to the **Local Government and Public Involvement in Health Act 2007** (and associated regulations), the designated Health Scrutiny Committee may:

- a. receive referrals from the Local Healthwatch and acknowledge receipt,
- b. decide which if any of its powers are exercisable in relation to the matter and whether to exercise them (either by Council or by the delegated Committee), and
- c. keep the referrer informed of the Committee's actions and decisions

in relation to the matter.

Health Scrutiny - The Health and Social Care Act 2012 requires local authorities with social services responsibilities to have in place arrangements to scrutinise health services. This function is bestowed on the local authority's Full Council but can be delegated however the Full Council sees fit. In Bath & North East Somerset Council, the function is delegated to the Scrutiny Panel with responsibility for health. Councillors on this Panel therefore have a role, as representatives of the public, to hold to account local Health organisations when they are making big decisions about the future of health care provision in Bath & North East Somerset.

Provisions of the Health Scrutiny Regulations

- The council's overview and scrutiny body can scrutinise any NHS Commissioning Board, Clinical Commissioning Group or NHS body that provides services for people in the council's area.
- Local NHS bodies must provide any information the council reasonably requires (excluding information about individuals), and NHS staff can be required to attend and provide information.
- Scrutiny reports can be made to the council and to NHS bodies. If requested, the NHS body must respond within 28 days.
- NHS bodies must consult the designated health scrutiny function of the council about proposals for substantial development or variation of NHS services in the area. The designated health scrutiny function can refer a matter to the Secretary of State for Health, if the local authority is not satisfied of the merits for change or if it considers there has been inadequate consultation on the proposals.
- Councils can set up joint health scrutiny committees with one or more other councils. Councils can delegate aspects of this role to another council's overview and scrutiny body. Joint Health Scrutiny Committees also have the power to directly refer a matter to the Secretary of State for Health.
- County councils can co-opt neighbouring authority council members onto their scrutiny committees dealing with health scrutiny, either for an indefinite time or for a particular project.
- Following any health overview & scrutiny topic undertaken, the Committee will make a report with recommendations to NHS bodies and B&NES Council. Such reports will also be copied to key stakeholders including local MPs, Healthwatch, Clinical Commissioning Groups and/or the NHS Commissioning Board.

2.15.3 Composition

The size of the Panel will be determined by Council. Appointments will be made having regard to rules on political proportionality – as set out in the [proportionality table](#).

2.15.4 Quorum

One quarter of the membership or 3 Councillor/voting Members of the Committee whichever is greater.

2.15.5 Substitution

Substitute Members are permitted in line with [Council Procedure Rule 3.1.4](#).

2.16 CLIMATE EMERGENCY AND SUSTAINABILITY POLICY DEVELOPMENT AND SCRUTINY PANEL

2.16.1 Committee Scope

To undertake a system of checks and balances to monitor and review the activity of the Cabinet and to assist with policy development in respect of the functions set out below.

2.16.2 Functions

The Panel remit is:

- Tackling Climate Emergency¹
- Natural Environment & Green Infrastructure
- Planning Policy, including Conservation and Enforcement
- Building Control & Public Protection including Health & Environment
- Housing, including Strategy, Enabling & Development, Standards & Improvement and Homelessness Policy
- WECA (Housing & Transport)
- Transport & Parking
- Highways & Traffic
- Neighbourhoods including Environmental Services
- Development & Management
- Designated Flood Risk Management Panel

2.16.3 Composition

¹ Whilst this Panel will have primary responsibility for climate change issues, tackling the climate emergency will need consideration by all Panels.

The size of the Panel will be determined by Council. Appointments will be made having regard to rules on political proportionality – as set out in the [proportionality table](#).

2.16.4 Quorum

One quarter of the membership or 3 Councillor/voting Members of the Committee whichever is greater.

2.16.5 Substitution

Substitute Members are permitted in line with [Council Procedure Rule 3.1.4](#).

2.17 CORPORATE AUDIT COMMITTEE

2.17.1 Committee Scope

The Corporate Audit Committee is responsible for the Council's powers and duties relating to the annual accounts, audit plans, the Annual Governance Statement, risk management arrangements and the other key financial governance procedures.

2.17.2 Functions

1. To approve on behalf of the Council its Annual Accounts, as prepared in accordance with the statutory requirements and guidance.
2. To approve the External Auditors' Audit Plan and to monitor its delivery and effectiveness during the year.
3. To approve the Internal Audit Plan within the budget agreed by the Council and to monitor its delivery and effectiveness (including the implementation of audit recommendations).
4. To consider, prior to signature by the Leader of the Council and Chief Executive, the Annual Governance Statement (including the list of significant issues for action in the ensuing year), as prepared in accordance with the statutory requirements and guidance; and to monitor progress on the significant issues and actions identified in the Statement.
5. To review periodically the Council's risk management arrangements, make recommendations and monitor progress on improvements.
6. To review periodically the Council's key financial governance procedures, i.e. Financial Regulations, Contract Standing Orders, Anti-

Fraud & Corruption Policy and to recommend any necessary amendments.

7. To consider the annual Audit & Inspection Letter from the External Auditor and to monitor progress on accepted recommendations.
8. To monitor and promote good corporate governance within the Council and in its dealings with partner bodies and contractors, including review of the Council's Code of Corporate Governance and in any such other ways as the Committee may consider expedient (within the budget agreed by the Council).
9. To consider and make recommendations of any other matters relating to corporate governance which are properly referred to the Committee or which come to its attention.
10. To make an annual report to Council on the work [and findings] of the Committee, including (if necessary) any measures necessary to improve the effectiveness of the Committee.

In all of the above, the Committee will, as appropriate, wish to develop effective liaison with the following:

- a) the Standards Committee of the Council with regard to matters of ethical governance;
- b) the relevant Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel(s) - to complement but not to duplicate the exercise of their legitimate role in checking compliance with Council processes and policies and in reviewing policies and practice;
- c) relevant Cabinet Members, in particular the Leader and the Cabinet Member with responsibility for Resources, whose portfolios include executive functions related to the matters covered by these terms of reference
- d) the Council when developing the Council's Code of Corporate Governance

2.17.3 Composition

The size of the Panel will be determined by Council. Appointments will be made having regard to rules on political proportionality – as set out in the [proportionality table](#). There will also be one independent non-voting co-opted member.

2.17.4 Quorum

One quarter of the membership or 3 Councillor/voting Members of the Committee whichever is greater.

2.17.5 Substitution

Substitute Members are permitted in line with [Council Procedure Rule 3.1.4](#).

2.18 CORPORATE POLICY DEVELOPMENT AND SCRUTINY PANEL

2.18.1 Committee Scope

To undertake a system of checks and balances to monitor and review the activity of the Cabinet and to assist with policy development in respect of the functions set out below.

2.18.2 Functions

The Panel remit is:

- Democratic & Legal Services including Registration and Electoral Services
- Corporate Finance
- Procurement & Commissioning
- Pensions & Financial Administration
- Management Accounts
- Human Resources & Organisation Development
- Strategy, Engagement & Marketing Including Equalities
- Business Support, Programmes & Performance
- Digital & Customer Services
- Commercial Including Audit & Assurance²
- Property Investment including Estates
- Construction Maintenance & FM
- Heritage, including Tourism & Arts
- Growth & Enterprise including Regeneration, Employment & Skills, Business Growth, Bath Enterprise Area
- WECA (Skills & Business)

2.18.3 Composition

² While it is appropriate for scrutiny to pay due regard to the authority's financial position, this will need to happen in the context of the formal audit role which is undertaken by the Council's Corporate Audit Committee

The size of the Panel will be determined by Council. Appointments will be made having regard to rules on political proportionality – as set out in the [proportionality table](#).

2.18.4 Quorum

One quarter of the membership or 3 Councillor/voting Members of the Committee whichever is greater.

2.18.5 Substitution

Substitute Members are permitted in line with [Council Procedure Rule 3.1.4](#).

2.19 EMPLOYMENT COMMITTEE

2.19.1 Committee Scope

The committee fulfils a number of functions relating to the Council's role as an employer.

2.19.2 Functions

To exercise all powers and duties of the Council under section 112 of the Local Government Act, 1972 relating to its role as an employer, except those reserved to the Restructuring Implementation Committee.

To hear staff appeals requiring Member level involvement, under accepted national or Council schemes of conditions of service.

To conduct investigatory hearings requiring Member level involvement under accepted national or Council schemes of conditions of service, including those relating to disciplinary, capability, grievance and redundancy matters for all staff, including teachers.

To determine on behalf of the Council its powers and duties as an employer relating to pensions.

2.19.3 Composition

The Committee when meeting to consider ordinary business, or as a hearing, will comprise 3 Members having regard to the rules on political proportionality. A chair will be elected at each hearing.

2.19.4 Quorum

3 Members.

2.19.5 Competency

Members shall not sit on the Employment Committee until they have received the necessary training.

2.19.6 Substitution

Substitute Members are permitted in line with [Council Procedure Rule 3.1.4](#) provided they have received the necessary training.

2.20 HEALTH & WELLBEING BOARD

2.20.1 Committee Scope

By working together the Board aspires to provide strategic leadership to reduce health inequalities and improve health and wellbeing in Bath and North East Somerset.

To achieve these aims the Board will work collaboratively with partners to join up commissioning and provision across the NHS, social care, public health and other areas related to health and wellbeing (where appropriate).

The scope of the Bath and North East Somerset Health and Wellbeing Board (“the Board”) shall be set out within the Joint Health and Wellbeing Strategy.

The Board may consider services beyond health and social care enabling the Board to look more broadly at factors affecting the health and wellbeing of the B&NES population.

2.20.2 Functions

The Board will be responsible for:

- developing a strong, place based vision for health and wellbeing
- overseeing the development of local needs assessments, including joint strategic needs assessment (JSNA) and pharmacy needs assessment (PNA)
- leading the development and delivery of the joint health and wellbeing strategy (JHWS)
- considering whether the Clinical Commissioning Groups’ (CCG) commissioning plan has given due regard to the JHWS
- ensuring local placed-based health and social care commissioning plans have adequate regard to the JHWS

- The Improved Better Care Fund for B&NES including sign off and ongoing oversight.

The Board will seek to:

- influence the strategic planning and service delivery of the NHS and Council in B&NES through the promotion of the JSNA, PNA and JHWS
- promote joint working and the use of the NHS Act 2006 flexibilities to increase joint commissioning, pooled and aligned budgets (where appropriate), to support the effective delivery of the JHWS
- work with and influence services including planning, transport, housing, environment, economic development, education and community safety in order to address the wider determinants of health and wellbeing
- work collaboratively across our local partnership framework
- strategically performance manage key activity against the key priorities of the JHWS

2.20.3 Accountability

Those stakeholders with statutory responsibilities will retain responsibility for meeting their individual duties and responsibilities.

The Board is responsible for working with the Children and Young People's Sub Group to deliver strategic commitments and outcomes, in line with the JHWS.

Accountability for safeguarding lies with the Local Safeguarding Adults Board and Local Safeguarding Children's Board.

The Safeguarding Children Board, the Safeguarding Adult Board and the Children and Young People's Sub Group will report to the Board on relevant performance outcomes against the JHWS priorities, through a regular performance reporting process.

2.20.4 Composition

Membership of the Board is:

- B&NES Council x 6 (Cabinet Member for Adult Services, Cabinet Member for Children's Services, Chief Executive, Director of Adult Social Care, Director – Children and Young People, Director of Public Health)
- Clinical Commissioning Group x 2 (CCG Clinical Chair, CCG Chief Officer)

- Healthwatch B&NES x 1
- Avon and Somerset Police x 1
- Avon Fire and Rescue x 1
- Housing provider representative x 1
- Higher and further education representative x 3
- Health and social care provider representatives x 5 (acute care, community care, primary care, mental health service, and voluntary, community and social enterprise sector)
- NHS England x 1

The Board will be co-chaired by the Council's Cabinet Member for Adult Services and the Chair of the Clinical Commissioning Group. Chairing of each meeting will alternate between the two co-chairs and matters of agenda planning will be considered jointly. Co-chairs will also be able to provide cover and support to each other in the absence of one of them.

2.20.5 Quorum

In the event of a vote on a substantive matter, the quorum for the meeting will be:

- 3 Members of the Council
- 1 member of the CCG
- 1 member of Healthwatch B&NES
- 1 health and social care provider representative
- 1 member of Avon and Somerset Police, Avon Fire and Rescue,
- Higher and Further Education representative or Housing representative

Board members may nominate a named substitute from an appropriate member of their organisation or service.

2.20.6 Stakeholder engagement

By working together the Health and Wellbeing Board will proactively embed good public and patient engagement within the day-to-day business of the Board through adhering to the following principles:

- Taking responsibility for good public engagement
- Clarity about purpose
- Harnessing a range of engagement methods
- Engaging with everyone

- Committed to cultural change
- Providing access to information
- In partnership
- Feeding back engagement results
- With Healthwatch B&NES
- Evaluating engagement

The Board will seek to engage all stakeholders (including key health and social care providers) on the JHWS and commissioning plans.

The Council's policy development and scrutiny function offers an opportunity for broader engagement on key issues.

It is intended that one representative of each Political Group on the council, not currently represented on the board, be invited to formal Board meetings in an observer capacity.

2.20.7 Business management

The Board is a statutory committee of the Council and will be treated as if it were a committee appointed by the Council under section 102 of the Local Government Act 1972.

The Board will act in accordance with the Council's committee procedures.

Formal Board meetings shall be held in public. The Board may resolve to hold closed sessions in accordance with the Access to Information rules.

The Board will develop a work programme framed by the JHWS which will guide its work.

The Board will meet at least 5 times per year.

The Board may establish sub-groups to lead on issues such as children and young people, JSNA, joint commissioning and health inequalities.

2.21 INDEPENDENT PERSON PANEL

The Independent Person Panel is an advisory committee appointed by the authority under section 102(4) of the Local Government Act 1972 for the purpose of advising on matters relating to the dismissal of officers designated as the Head of Paid Service, the Chief Finance Officer and the Monitoring Officer (the "Statutory Officers") in accordance with Schedule 3 to the Local Authorities (Standing orders) (England) Regulations 2001 as amended.

The Independent Panel will:

- a) hear, consider, ask questions and comment in respect of Statutory Officer discipline that could lead to dismissal; and
- b) make a report and recommendation to Full Council in accordance with the Council's policies and Employment Procedure Rules

The quorum is 2 Independent Persons (minimum).

The panel will operate in accordance with the following procedure rules:

- a) The Employment Procedure Rules and Council Procedure Rules will apply to this Panel.
- b) The Independent Person Panel may meet concurrently with the Restructuring Implementation Committee where a hearing or meeting could result in a recommendation to Council for dismissal of a Statutory Officer; or meet separately.
- c) All of the Council's Independent Persons appointed pursuant to section 28 (7) Localism Act 2011 shall be invited to attend and, if at the relevant time there are fewer than two such persons who are able to attend, then the Independent Persons appointed by another neighbouring Council shall be invited to attend.
- d) The Panel shall be appointed from those Independent Persons who have accepted an invitation to be considered for appointment in the following priority order:
 - An Independent Person who has been appointed by the Council and who is a local government elector in the Council's area;
 - Any other Independent Person who has been appointed by the Council;
 - An Independent Person who has been appointed by another local authority or local authorities.
- e) Independent Persons must have undertaken appropriate training.
- f) The Panel shall have access to external legal and professional

advice as necessary, via the Monitoring Officer.

2.22 INDEPENDENT REMUNERATION PANEL

2.22.1 Preamble:

The Members' Allowances Independent Remuneration Panel is established in accordance with the Local Authorities (Members' Allowances) (England) Regulations 2003. This requires local authorities to establish and maintain an independent remuneration panel which will broadly have the functions of providing the local authority with recommendations on its remuneration scheme and the amounts to be paid.

2.22.2 Objects:

- 1) To make recommendations to the Council on the appropriate form and level of remunerations (as required) for
 - all Councillors (i.e. the basic allowance);
 - special responsibility allowances;
 - childcare and dependent carer's allowances for Councillors;
 - travel and subsistence allowances;
 - conference and meetings allowances.
- 2) In providing such advice, the Panel will have regard to:
 - the roles which Councillors are expected to fulfil and the differing roles and responsibilities of particular Councillors;
 - the current method of local administration;
 - practice amongst other local authorities in the UK;
 - the current statutory framework for the remuneration of Councillors and the scope which the Council has to establish and vary its own arrangements, and any commentary on that (from the Audit Commission, Local Government Association, Local Government Management Board and other interested parties).
 - the previous recommendations and decisions taken by the Council in respect of the last review.
- 3) To make recommendations to the Avon Pension Fund (if requested) on the level of remuneration of the Chair and Members.
- 4) To make recommendations to the Council (if requested) on any other issues.

- 5) To make recommendations to any parish council (if requested) on allowances schemes.

2.22.3 Frequency of Meetings

The Panel will meet as and when necessary, to meet the obligations set out above.

2.22.5 Membership and chairing

The Panel will comprise 3 independent members and the Chair of the Panel will be appointed by the Panel.

2.22.6 Remit of the Panel

The Panel is an independent body and should not be seen to be influenced by the Council. All Members will be expected to assist the Panel with their deliberations. In recognition of the work the Panel will be required to undertake, administrative support will be provided by the Head - Legal and Democratic Services.

Information provide to the Panel will be dealt with on a confidential basis unless otherwise agreed and the Panel will ensure their confidentiality is maintained.

2.22.7 Terms of Office

- 6) The members of the Panel agree to comply with the Bath & North East Somerset Code of Conduct for Members.
- 7) The Council will have the right to remove particular members from the Panel in special circumstances such as:
 - a) Becoming disqualified from serving on the Panel for any of the reasons set out in the person specification
 - b) Persistent non-attendance
 - c) Breach of confidentiality
 - d) Any conduct that brings the Panel into disrepute and/or prejudices its impartiality or its effective operation.

2.22.8 Indemnity

- 8) The members of the Panel will be indemnified by the Council for their work on the Panel.

2.23 LICENSING COMMITTEE

2.23.1 Committee Scope

The Licensing Committee is a statutory committee of the Council appointed to discharge the local authority's licensing functions, except the approval of licensing policies, the setting up of the Committee and the resolution not to issue casino licences.

Licensing policies shall be the responsibility of the Cabinet Member with responsibility for Community Services except where there is a statutory requirement for Full Council to determine policies.

The setting up of a Licensing Committee shall be the responsibility of Full Council.

2.23.2 Functions

- 1) At the request of the Council, to review the Council's licensing policies at any time within the statutory period under the Licensing Act 2003 and Gambling Act 2005 and to make recommendations to the Council for change, after the prescribed consultation has been completed.
- 2) To carry out all of the Council's licensing functions as covered in the Licensing Act 2003 and the Gambling Act 2005, excluding the making of licensing policies, the setting up of a Licensing Committee and the resolution not to issue casino licences (these being functions of the Council).
- 3) To determine individual licence applications which fall outside Officer delegations, or which are referred by Officers for Member attention, in relation to the issue and renewal of all registrations, licences, permits, consents etc. in relation to the enactments listed below and all such enactments as may fall within the remit of the Committee.
- 4) To determine appeals against decisions made by the Proper Officer under the Marriages and Civil Partnerships (Approved Premises) Regulations 2005.

5) To establish one or more Sub-Committees and, subject to statutorily prescribed exceptions, to delegate any of its functions to such Sub Committee(s).

6) Subject to statutorily prescribed exceptions, to delegate any of its functions to an Officer of the authority.

2.23.3 Composition

The size of the Committee will be determined by Council. Appointments will be made having regard to rules on political proportionality – as set out in the [proportionality table](#).

2.23.4 Quorum

One quarter of the membership or 3 Councillor/voting Members of the Committee whichever is greater.

2.23.5 Competency

Members of the Licensing Committee shall not sit on the Licensing Committee until they have attended training.

2.23.6 Substitutions

Substitute Members are permitted in line with [Council Procedure Rules](#) and having received licensing training.

2.24 LICENSING SUB-COMMITTEE

2.24.1 Committee Scope

This Licensing Sub-Committee shall hear and determine all licence applications as set out in the Bath and North East Somerset Council [Statement of Licensing Policy](#)

2.24.2 Functions

The Licensing Sub Committee has appointed by the Licensing Committee to discharge the Council's licensing functions.

2.24.3 Composition

Licensing Sub-Committee shall consist of 3 Members in accordance with political proportionality.

2.24.4 Quorum

The quorum shall be three.

2.24.5 Substitutions

Substitutes for the Licensing Sub Committee will be drawn from the membership of the Licensing Committee. Any Member of the Licensing Committee substituting at a Licensing Sub-Committee meeting will do so in accordance with the wishes of the political group arranging the substitution.

A substitute will substitute for the entirety of the meeting.

2.25 PARISH LIAISON MEETING

2.25.1 Committee Scope

Parish Liaison is a partnership meeting between Bath & North East Somerset Council and the parishes within its district to facilitate the way in which they work together to serve the people of Bath and North East Somerset.

The [Parish Charter](#) is the framework within which the Parish Liaison meetings operate and support the implementation of the Charter's key principles of:

- Respecting and valuing each other
- Strengthening relationships
- Providing practical support
- Making the best of our skills and resources

2.25.2 Functions

The Parish Liaison meeting does not have any decision-making powers but can advise and make representations to Bath & North East Somerset Council.

2.25.3 Composition

Membership of the Parish Liaison meeting is limited to elected representatives of Bath & North East Somerset Council and representatives of the parishes within the district.

Bath & North East Somerset Council will appoint representatives to the Parish Liaison meetings in such numbers as it decides.

The parishes will each be entitled to send their nominated representative (usually the Chair of the Council) and their Clerk to the meetings. Additional parish representatives may attend subject to notification to Democratic Services prior to the meeting and the subsequent approval of the Chair of the meeting.

The Avon Local Councils Association for Bath and North East Somerset will be entitled to send representation to the meetings in their own right.

Officers of Bath & North East Somerset Council will attend meetings as necessary to advise and assist discussion.

2.25.4 Meetings

There will normally be three meetings per year, held in open session.

Meetings will usually be held in the evening for no longer than three hours.

There is an option for one of these meetings to be 'conference style' for networking and to provide training; updates; briefing and presentations on good practice from parishes. Where appropriate these will also be provided at other meetings in the cycle.

The meetings will be chaired by an agreed, elected representative of Bath & North East Somerset Council. The meeting Chair shall act independently and work on behalf of the Parish Liaison meeting for the wider benefit.

The Parish Liaison meeting is not a statutory meeting of the Council.

The general public may attend Parish Liaison meetings as observers but have no automatic right to speak or make statements. The Chair may exercise their discretion if a member of the public has given notice prior to the meeting date that they wish to raise an item of general interest and relevance to the membership.

Agendas and papers for meetings will be circulated a minimum of seven calendar days before a meeting. A record of each meeting will be taken.

2.25.5 Conduct at Meetings

The Parish Liaison meeting recognises that the Council and parishes have a common purpose to promote the wellbeing of Bath and North East Somerset; and serve the same residents. While the meeting relies on open discussions there is a need to respect and value each other's views and opinions.

Attendees will:

- Engage positively in discussions
- Working together on finding solutions
- Sharing good practice
- Help strengthen relationships

All those attending Parish Liaison meetings shall be accorded the same degree of respect, dignity and consideration by all other attendees, irrespective of people's protected characteristics: age, disability, gender reassignment, marriage and civil partnership, pregnancy and maternity, race, religion and belief, sex and sexual orientation and with regard to equalities legislation.

2.25.6 Agenda Setting

Parish Liaison will convene a sub-group for the purpose of setting the agendas for Parish Liaison as well as monitoring the Parish Charter. The sub-group will consist of representatives from the Council, parishes and Avon Local Councils' Association for Bath and North East Somerset.

Agenda items of relevance for discussion at Parish Liaison meetings will be those:

- That are strategic or legislative issues
- That have direct impact on all, or a significant number of parishes
- That support an effective working partnership between tiers of local government
- That relate to the Parish Charter
- Where a collective view from parishes would be helpful

Items that are not relevant for Parish Liaison will be those:

- That relate to a single, or small number of parishes, other than important items raised by a single parish or a small number of parishes that are agreed by the Parish Liaison agenda setting group which will be included on the agenda
- For which other, effective channels of communication exist
- That are day to day operational issues

- That need to be addressed immediately

The agenda items will take account of other local Forums' interests in discussions on topics and will avoid duplication where possible. Further information on protocols can be found in the Parish Toolkit.

The infrequency of Parish Liaison meetings means that it is not a practical forum through which to engage in routine enquiries and those that require immediate action.

2.25.7 Review

The Terms of Reference will be reviewed annually, and any agreed changes will be ratified at the Annual General Meetings of Bath & North East Somerset Council and Avon Local Councils' Association for Bath and North East Somerset, usually held in May.

2.25.8 Definition of terms

For the purposes of these Terms of Reference, the term 'parishes' relates to Town, Parish and Village Councils and Parish meetings.

2.26 PLANNING COMMITTEE

2.26.1 Committee Scope

The Committee will exercise the Council's functions as Local Planning Authority. The Committee will also discharge the Council's powers and duties in respect of public rights of way and commons registration. All of the Committee's decisions are subject to the applicable schemes of delegation, depending on the specific decision being taken. In addition, decisions of the Committee on planning matters are subject to the limit on delegations of functions as described below. With regard to planning decisions, the Committee will act in accordance with the planning policy framework for B&NES which includes National Planning Policy Guidance and the National Planning Policy Framework.

2.26.2 Functions

The Committee has delegated authority to exercise the Council's functions as Local Planning Authority.

The Committee has delegated authority to exercise the Council's powers and duties in respect of public rights of way and commons registration.

The Committee has delegated authority to establish working practices and protocols for operation on a District-wide basis.

The Committee has delegated authority to exercise all the Council's powers and duties in respect of:

- (1) Modification Orders, Reclassification Orders and Public Path Orders where the matters are contentious.
- (2) Commons Registration (including Town and Village Greens) where the matters are contentious.

Note 1 – *The Assistant Director Highways and Transport and Team Manager - Highway Maintenance and Drainage have been delegated general as well as specific responsibility in respect of these functions.*

Note 2 – *For these purposes, 'contentious' is defined as an application which receives more than 12 objections or an application which has received an objection from either the affected parish/town council or one of the affected ward Members.*

Limitation on delegation of functions

The exercise of this delegated authority is subject to the Director with overall responsibility for planning, or the Head of Planning (or any of the other Managers specifically listed in the Planning Scheme of Delegation when standing in for the Head of Planning) being authorised, in exceptional circumstances, to refer any decision or determination of the Planning Committee which is clearly contrary to law or locally or nationally adopted planning policy and against officer advice, to a subsequent meeting of the Planning Committee. When such a decision or determination is referred, it shall be of no effect until the Committee has fully reconsidered the matter in the light of all the information originally before the Committee plus such additional information and advice as the Director or the Head of Planning (as the case may be) considers necessary. Further to such reconsideration, the Committee shall be entitled to make such decision or determination as it sees fit.

The [Planning scheme of delegation](#)

2.26.3 Composition

The size of the Committee will be determined by Council. Appointments will be made having regard to rules on political proportionality – as set out in the [proportionality table](#).

2.26.4 Quorum

One quarter of the membership or 3 Councillor/voting Members of the Committee whichever is greater.

2.26.5 Competency

Members of the Committee shall not sit on the Committee until they have attended training.

2.26.5 Substitution

Substitutions will be permitted at meetings of the Committee from among other Members of the Council having attended training.

A substitute will substitute for the entirety of the meeting.

2.26.6 Support arrangements

In exercising the above powers and duties, the Committee may also:

- establish such sub committees and working parties as are considered helpful in exercising the above functions.
- delegate any of its functions to a sub-committee and to delegate any of its non-policy making functions to Officers (see delegation scheme).
- To monitor service delivery and service trends and to make recommendations.
- To be a body of influence across its geographical area of responsibility and with the community in its area.
- To engage in consultation with the community and specifically with other bodies which have an interest in the span of responsibility of this Committee.
- To participate with others in joint initiatives on planning.

2.27 RE-STRUCTURING IMPLEMENTATION COMMITTEE

2.27.1 Committee Scope

To determine all necessary arrangements for implementing the indicative senior management structure.

2.27.2 Functions

To decide on numbers of 1st and 2nd Tier officers and the span of work responsibility allocations for those officers.

To determine appointments to or dismissal from the posts of Director and other JNC Officers reporting to the Chief Executive, or Head of Paid Service, subject to there being no objection to the appointment / dismissal being lodged by the Leader of the Council.

To recommend to the Council the appointment or dismissal of the Head of Paid Service, the Monitoring Officer and the Chief Financial Officer.

Approving any special severance cases for any employee above £20,000 up to a maximum of £100,000. Approving all voluntary redundancy and flexible retirement cases for any employee that are in excess of £100,000 on total costs including redundancy, pay in lieu of notice, holiday pay and pension costs.

Compulsory redundancy cases in excess of £100,000 do not require approval of the RIC, but a note will be shared at the next available meeting for information, or communicated to RIC Members if no meeting is scheduled.

2.27.3 Composition

The Committee shall comprise one Member from each political group (by convention, this is the Group Leaders).

2.28 STANDARDS COMMITTEE

2.28.1 Committee Scope

Promote and maintain high standards of conduct by Councillors; Parish Councillors; co-opted members and church and parent governor representatives.

Oversee the effectiveness of the Council's Constitutional arrangements from an ethical perspective and make recommendations to the Council on any desirable or necessary changes.

Recommend to the Council Codes of Conduct and Practice or Protocols for Members and/or employees of the Council, including planning issues and Arrangements for dealing with complaints.

Monitor and review such Codes and Protocols and the Register of Members interests

2.28.2 Functions

Consider and determine any allegations of misconduct against Members of the Council in accordance with the Codes and the Arrangements for dealing with complaints against Councillors

Grant dispensations to Councillors; Parish Councillors; co-opted members and church and parent governor representatives relating to disclosable pecuniary interests as set out in the Localism Act 2011.

Consider

- any application for exemption from political restrictions in respect of a post, by the holder of that post, and
- any application from any person for a direction requiring a post to be included in the list of politically restricted posts.

Consider any reports from the Council's Monitoring Officer regarding illegality, unlawfulness or maladministration and any report of the Local Government Ombudsman.

Consider and determine the Council's response to any internal or District Audit regulatory recommendations referred to the Committee by the Monitoring Officer.

Make representations to the Government, Local Government Association and other external bodies on matters relating to the general principles of conduct for Members and employees of the Council.

Make arrangements for training to Councillors; Parish Councillors; co-opted members and employees in connection with any matter within the terms of reference of the Committee.

Liaise with the District Auditor and the Local Government Ombudsman in connection with any matter within the committee's terms of reference;

Recommend to the Council from time to time as necessary the appointment of Independent Members to the Committee following open advertisement, short listing and interview.

2.28.3 Composition

- 5 x elected Members (voting)
- 3 x independent members - one of whom will chair the Committee (non-voting)
- 3 x Parish representatives (non-voting)
- The Independent Persons will be invited to attend the meeting and provide relevant comment.

2.28.4 Quorum

For ordinary business, the quorum is 3 Members, plus one independent member. When considering parish matters, the quorum shall include at least one parish representative.

For considering individual cases, the quorum shall be 5 Members, including at least one independent member, and if a parish matter, at least one parish representative.

No more than one Cabinet Member may be appointed to the Committee. The Leader of the Council may not be a member of the Committee. In no circumstances may a Cabinet Member chair a meeting of the Standards Committee.

2.28.5 Substitution

Substitute Members are permitted in line with [Council Procedure Rule 3.1.4.](#)

2.29 FUNCTIONS CARRIED OUT THROUGH JOINT ARRANGEMENTS

The Council and Cabinet are able to enter into various forms of joint arrangements with other local authorities and bodies.

The Council and Cabinet may establish joint arrangements with one or more local authorities and/or their Cabinets to exercise functions jointly or, advise the Council. Such arrangements may involve the delegation of functions to another authority, an officer of the authority or the establishment of a joint committee with those other local authorities.

Where three or more Councillors are appointed to a non-executive function joint committee, those Members must be appointed in political balance. Subject to below, the Cabinet may only appoint Cabinet Members to a joint committee that exercises executive functions, and those Members need not reflect the political composition of the local authority.

Where a joint committee involves mixed functions then there is no need for political balance but both Cabinet and Council must approve the arrangements.

The Cabinet may appoint Members to a joint committee from outside the Cabinet in the following circumstances:

- a) the joint committee has functions for only part of the area of the Council, and that area is two-fifths (or smaller) of the Council by area or population. In such cases, the Cabinet may appoint to the joint committee any Councillor who is a Member for a ward which is wholly or partly contained within the area; and
- b) the joint committee is discharging a function in relation to five or more local authorities; or the function which the joint committee is discharging is a function which is required by statute to be discharged by a joint committee.

In these cases, the political balance requirements do not apply to such appointments.

Where a joint committee is formed with health bodies pursuant to section 75 of the National Health Service Act 2006 and Regulation 10 of the NHS Bodies and Local Authorities Partnership Arrangement Regulations 2000, then a non-executive Member may be appointed in addition to Cabinet Members.

Where arrangements provide for the discharge of functions by a joint committee and one or more, but not all, of the functions to be

discharged by the joint committee are the responsibility of the Cabinet, then

- a) where only one Councillor is a Member of the joint committee, that person may be, but need not be, a Member of the Cabinet; and
- b) where more than one Councillor is a Member of the joint committee, at least one Member of the Cabinet must be a Member of the joint committee.

Details of joint arrangements including any delegations to joint committees shall be maintained by the Proper Officer.

The [Access to Information Procedure Rules](#) apply to Joint Arrangements.

If all the Members of a joint committee are members of the Cabinet in each of the participating authorities, then its access to information regime is the same as that applied to the Cabinet.

If the joint committee contains members who are not on the Cabinet of any participating authority, then the access to information rules in Part VA of the Local Government Act 1972 will apply.

The Council may delegate non-executive functions to another local authority or, in certain circumstances, the Cabinet of another local authority.

The Cabinet may delegate executive functions to another local authority or to the Cabinet of another local authority in certain circumstances.

The decision whether or not to accept a delegation from another local authority shall be reserved to a meeting of the Council.

The Cabinet may contract out to another body or organisation functions which may be exercised by an officer and which are subject to an order under section 70 of the Deregulation and Contracting Out Act 1994, or under contracting arrangements where the contractor acts as the Council's agent under usual contracting principles, provided there is no delegation of the Council's discretionary decision making.

Current Joint arrangements are detailed below;

2.30 WEST OF ENGLAND COMBINED AUTHORITY

Since 9 February 2017 the Council has been part of the West of England Combined Authority <https://www.westofengland-ca.gov.uk/wp-content/uploads/2021/09/ConstitutionJune2020.pdf.pdf>

The Combined Authority was created by The West of England Combined Authority Order 2017 (“the Order”). The Order covers the area of 3 local authorities (Constituent Councils):

- Bath & North East Somerset Council
- Bristol City Council
- South Gloucestershire Council

The Combined Authority operates with a directly elected Mayor and is responsible for a number of Local Transport, Strategic Planning and skills functions as well as powers to grow the local economy.

The Combined Authority Operates an executive model, with a Cabinet comprising:

An elected Mayor

Representatives of each of the Constituent Councils

The Chair of the West of England Local Enterprise Partnership (Participant)

The Leader of the Council is the Council’s appointed Member of the combined Authority. The deputy Leader is the substitute Member of the Combined Authority, in the absence of the Leader.

2.31 WEST OF ENGLAND JOINT COMMITTEE

Since 28 June 2017 the Council has been part of the West of England Joint Committee. The West of England Joint Committee is responsible for any relevant functions that fall outside those set out in the West of England Combined Authority Order. The Joint Committee was formed to provide cross boundary engagement to cover all four Unitary Authorities across the West of England. The Joint Committee covers the area of 4 local authorities:

- Bath & North East Somerset Council
- Bristol City Council
- North Somerset Council
- South Gloucestershire Council

The Joint Committee is an executive joint arrangement exercising executive functions and comprises:

- The elected Mayor
- Representatives of each of the Constituent Councils
- The Chair of the West of England Local Enterprise Partnership (Participant)

The Leader of the Council is the Council's appointed Member of the Joint Committee. The deputy Leader is the substitute Member of the Joint Committee, in the absence of the Leader.

2.32 AVON FIRE AUTHORITY

Avon Fire Authority provides the Avon Fire & Rescue Service.

Avon Fire Authority ("the Authority") is a corporate body and for many purposes, has the status, rights and duties of a Local Authority under the Local Government Act 1972 and other local government legislation. It is funded from Government Grants and by precepting the constituent councils of Bristol, Bath and North East Somerset, North Somerset and South Gloucestershire. The Authority's membership comprises 20 Elected Members who are appointed by their Council on a politically proportional basis who are accountable in their decisions to the Authority rather than their individual council. B&NES Council holds 3 places on the Fire Authority. The Authority may also appoint other Members from time to time, as permitted by law, such as the local Police & Crime Commissioner(s). The Authority is statutorily responsible for the functions set out in:

- Fire and Rescue Services Act 2004
- Civil Contingencies Act 2004
- Regulatory Reform (Fire Safety) Order 2005
- Policing and Crime Act 2017

The Authority has overall control over the strategic direction, establishment, budget and functions of a fire and rescue service and over the acquisition, disposal and alteration of premises and appliances. The Chief Fire Officer/Chief Executive (CFO) is responsible for the day-to-day management of the organisation and is accountable to the Fire Authority for its efficient operation.

Link to: [Avon Fire Authority](#)

2.33 AVON & SOMERSET POLICE AND CRIME PANEL

The Police Reform and Social Responsibility Act 2011 requires each police area outside of London to have a police and crime panel. The purpose of the panel is to hold the Police and Crime Commissioner to account. Where, as in the case of Avon & Somerset Police, a police force covers a number of local authorities, the police and crime panel for that area takes the form of a joint committee between a number of local authorities. Somerset Council is the lead authority of the Avon & Somerset Police and Crime Panel, which includes the following local authorities;

- Bristol
- Bath and North East Somerset
- Mendip
- North Somerset
- Sedgemoor
- Somerset West and Taunton
- Somerset County Council
- South Gloucestershire South Somerset

More details about the role of the Avon & Somerset Police and Crime Commissioner can be found on the official site of the [Police & Crime Commissioner for Avon & Somerset](#).

The Avon and Somerset Police and Crime Panel has 15 elected members and three independent co-opted members of the public. The unitary authorities have two seats. Somerset County Council and Somerset District/Borough Councils each have one seat. An additional member for Bristol City Council was agreed in 2012 based on the city's population size.

2.34 JOINT HEALTH SCRUTINY FUNCTION

2.34.1 Working across Local Authority Boundaries

Some health issues will be specific to the B&NES area whilst others (e.g. performance of large hospitals or regional health services with a wide catchment area) will extend beyond the B&NES local authority boundaries. B&NES will participate in cross-boundary overview and scrutiny of health services with other local authorities, including the

establishment of joint committees and/or the delegation of functions to another local authority, as appropriate.

2.35 DELEGATION OF FUNCTIONS TO OFFICERS

The following paragraphs and tables explain the Council's [Scheme of Delegations to Officers of the Council](#).

This scheme of delegation is of general application and applies to all of the functions of the authority, both executive and non-executive. It gives senior officers the necessary delegated powers to carry out those functions of the authority which fall within their areas of responsibility.

The Council operates a cascade principle of delegation which means that any officer given powers under this scheme can further delegate those powers to other officers through a Local Scheme of Delegation (which sets out all the standing delegations given to specific officers in defined areas of the Council's service areas).

Under the provisions of this Scheme, the Council makes arrangements for the discharge of its functions by officers of the Council.

[Section A](#) defines these Officers and sets out what they may do.

[Section B](#) sets out the range of activities that may be undertaken by such Officers.

[Section C](#) sets out some activities which may only be undertaken by certain Officers.

[Section D](#) sets out the general provisions of the Scheme, indicating the limits on the powers conferred, conditions prior to their exercise and other necessary information.

[Section E](#) sets out the consideration that could justify the issue in question being referred to a Cabinet Member or the Cabinet for resolution.

2.35.1 SECTION A

The Chief Executive, Chief Operating Officer, Directors and Heads of Service have delegated power to take any decision falling within their area of responsibility other than

- a. those reserved to certain officers (see Section C) where delegated power subsists only for those officers.
- b. The general conditions set out in Section D and

- c. An issue which, under Section E, should be referred to a Cabinet Member or Cabinet Members for resolution.

2.35.2 SECTION B

Applicable to all officers specified in Section A.

The Council has made arrangements for the Officers specified in Section A to discharge the responsibilities outlined therein. Subject only to the limitations set out in Section D below, Officers are authorised to take all action and decisions deemed necessary to enable those responsibilities to be effectively discharged in accordance with the following schemes or arrangements: -

- Budget Management Scheme
- Scheme of Delegation to Officers in respect of day to day human resource management and Employee Code of Conduct
- Financial Regulations
- Corporate Legal Standards
- Standing Orders relating to Contracts
- Protocol for Member/Officer relations

Without prejudice to the generality of this, Officers are authorised to:-

- determine the amount(s) of any fee or charge the Council is entitled or authorised to levy or make in respect of the discharge or any of its functions subject to such charges:
 - a) being in line with the Council's financial plan; and
 - b) in the opinion of the officer concerned, not involving major restructuring of charges or the introduction of any new charges.
- recruit, manage and dismiss staff necessary to enable the Council's powers and duties to be discharged in accordance with the Council's scheme for the management of the employment matters and the employee Code of Conduct referred above.
- prepare and implement necessary or required plans or strategies for appropriate approvals.

- make bids or requests for financial or other support from any government or other agencies with responsibilities which encompass those of the Council.
- determine all applications for financial assistance or grant from the Council.
- manage any allocated building premises or land.
- implement any approved service or business plans.
- liaise with the media (to the extent appropriate for officers) and issue publicity (in accordance with the requirements of the Statutory Code of Guidance and the law).
- respond to government or other consultation papers or documents and make representations on matter of interest to the Council to appropriate authorities.
- take decisions necessary or appropriate to give effect to approved capital and revenue budgets and programmes and take any other decisions necessary or authorised under the provisions of financial regulations the Budget management scheme and Standing Orders relating to contracts.
- manage Council funds, stock and material including taking any necessary action to protect them.
- make comments/objection to any statutory or other body necessary to give effect to a decision of the Council.
- enter into and manage contracts and grant exemptions from contract standing orders for contracts of all values (other than those specifically reserved to specified officers outlined in Section C).
- serve any notices and make, amend or revoke any orders falling within their area of responsibility.

NOTE

The Scheme of Delegation to Officers in respect of day to day human resource management includes within it the right for management to issue instructions. Without prejudice to the generality of the Scheme, the Chief Executive is authorised to issue instructions and directions to any officer of the Council save in

respect of the Council's statutory officers when acting in such capacity. The Council's statutory officers for this purpose are the Director (Finance) as Chief Finance Officer, and the Head of Legal and Democratic Services as Monitoring Officer.)

2.35.3 SECTION C – PROPER OFFICER FUNCTIONS

[See [Proper Officer Functions table](#)]

DIRECTOR (FINANCE)

To carry out the functions of Chief Finance Officer conferred by law and the Council's financial regulations and the budget management scheme.

PEOPLE TEAM LEADER, PLACE TEAM LEADER, RESOURCES TEAM LEADER, LEGAL SERVICES MANAGER AND HEAD OF LEGAL & DEMOCRATIC SERVICES

- To discharge the powers conferred by resolution of the Council dated October 1999 both under hand or electronically.
- The power as an approved signatory to: -
 - electronically affix to documents and witness a digitally formatted Common Seal of the Council;
 - electronically add a digitised signature to a document and as witness to a document;
- To institute and conduct all civil and criminal proceedings by the Council.
- To defend or participate in any legal proceedings brought against the Council (or its employees as a result of actions incurred during the course of their employment) or where the Council's interests are affected and to negotiate settlement.
- To institute and conduct all proceedings and procedures to implement and enforce any decision of the Council.
- To select and instruct Counsel and other legal service providers.

- To enter into contracts for the provision of legal advice and services with public bodies as defined by the Local Authorities (Goods and Services) Act 1970.
- To enter into and merge contracts and grant exemption from Contract Standing Orders for contracts of all values.

DIRECTOR OF PEOPLE & POLICY

To approve any special severance cases up to a maximum of £20,000 in accordance with the Council's published policy for severance payments.

DATA PROTECTION OFFICER

To carry out the functions under the GDPR and the Data Protection Act 2018 as a public authority responsible for the handling of personal data in the role of controller or otherwise and for the control and release of data under the Freedom of Information Act 2000, the Environmental Information regulations 2004 and Local Government (Access to Information) Act 1985.

2.35.4 SECTION D

SCHEME OF DELEGATION TO OFFICERS – GENERAL PROVISIONS

The exercise of the arrangements for the discharge of functions in this document are subject to the provisions of Standing Orders, Financial Regulations, Contract Standing Orders, the Budget Management Scheme, Corporate Legal Standards all relevant legal provisions and the provisions of the Constitution.

All delegated functions shall be deemed to be exercised on behalf of and in the name of the Council.

The exercise of a delegated power, duty or function:

- shall be subject to the Council's policies;
- shall not amount to a new policy or extension of or amendment to an existing policy; and
- shall be subject to the requirements set out above.

Where the exercise of powers is subject to prior consultation with another officer, that officer may give his or her views in general terms in advance to apply to any particular circumstances, to remove the need for consultation for each proposal.

Delegations to officers are subject to:-

- a. the right of the Cabinet or a Cabinet Member to decide any matter in particular case, where they have the power to do so;
- b. the Head of Service or other Officer may in any case in lieu of exercising their delegated power refer to the Cabinet, a Member of Cabinet, a Committee or Sub-Committee for a decision where that body has the power to act; and
- c. any restrictions, conditions or directions of the Leader of the Council.

In exercising delegated powers, the Chief Executive, Chief Operating Officer, Director, Head of Service or other officers shall:-

- a. comply with the requirements of the Corporate Legal Standards and shall address all legal, financial and other professional safeguards as if the matter were not delegated;
- b. exercise the delegation so as to promote the efficient, effective and economic running of that service, and the Council, and in furtherance of the Council's visions and values;
- c. keep a full record of action taken and, where and when appropriate, report back to the decision making body as to the exercise of those delegated powers, and;
- d. carry out necessary consultations

In exercising delegated powers, officers shall not go beyond the provision in the revenue or capital budgets for their service except to the extent permitted by Contract Standing Orders or Financial Regulations.

In exercising delegated powers, officers shall have regard to any advice of the Head of Paid Service, the Monitoring Officer or of the Chief Financial Officer.

An Officer to whom a power, duty or function is delegated may nominate or authorise another Officer to exercise that power, duty or function, provided that Officer reports to or is responsible to the delegator.

Subject to any express instructions to the contrary from the Cabinet, Cabinet Member, Council, Committee or Sub-Committee, any power to approve also includes the power to refuse and the power to impose appropriate conditions.

The powers of this Scheme are delegated to the officers referred to by title within this Scheme of Delegation: so, the delegations apply to whoever holds that post title at any time – not to the individual person.

Any post specifically referred to shall be deemed to include any successor post, or a post which includes within the job description, elements relevant to any particular delegation, which were also present in the earlier post and shall include anyone acting up or seconded.

Where a power or duty is delegated to an Officer and the exercise of the power or duty is contingent upon the opinion of the Council that particular conditions or factual circumstances exist, then the Officer in question has the power to determine whether or not those circumstances exist or those conditions have been fulfilled in the name of and with the authority of the Council.

References to any enactment, regulation, order or byelaw shall be construed as including any re-enactment or re-making of the same, whether or not with amendments. Whenever new legislation relevant or related to those functions exercised by the senior officer is introduced, that officer will have the delegated authority to exercise powers or otherwise take action under that legislation until such time as the full Council, the Executive, a committee or the Chief Executive decides to whom to allocate responsibility for the new legislation.

Any reference to any Act of Parliament includes reference to Regulations, subordinate and European legislation upon which either UK legislation is based, or from which powers, duties and functions of the Council are derived.

When exercising delegated powers, officers shall act as “duly authorised officers” (for the purposes of all relevant legislation) and to enforce/administer the requirements of all relevant regulatory legislation which shall (for the avoidance of doubt) include (but not be limited to) taking the following action (and all actions reasonably necessary, expedient or ancillary in order to facilitate or enable the same):

- Applying for warrants
- Carrying out investigations, inspections or surveys
- Entering land and premises
- Taking samples and seizing property

- Issuing (or declining to issue), revoking or withdrawing licences, certificates or certified copies of documents, approvals, permissions, consents, notices, orders, directions or requisitions for information.

The compilation of a Register of Delegated Powers is a statutory requirement. The Register is maintained by the Monitoring Officer and detailed amendments are added to it as they are made by the Leader of the Council, the Council, Committees and Sub-Committees, the Chief Executive and other Officers. Officers should take care to inform themselves of any subsequent changes to the Register before relying on this document.

Following consultation with the Monitoring Officer, the Chief Executive will have the power to amend the Register to reflect re-organisations, changes in Job Titles and vacancies, where said changes result in re-distributing existing delegations and not the creation of new ones.

All matters of interpretation of this document will be determined by the Monitoring Officer.

Officers shall devolve responsibilities for service delivery and management (whether or not involving sub-delegation under this scheme) to the nearest practicable point to the service user and in a way which clearly identifies accountabilities.

All responsible Officers of the Council are authorised and required to consider and discharge on the Council's behalf its powers and duties under the following statutory provisions:-

Crime and Disorder Act 1988 Section 17

Equalities Act 2010

Data Protection Act 1998

Human Rights Act 1998

Localism Act 2011 Sections 1 – 4

Freedom of Information Act 2000

Environmental Information Regulations 2005

Officers are required to consider before exercising delegated powers, whether in their opinion the criteria set out in Section E below are applicable.

The officers referred to in Section A may make arrangements within their area of responsibility for the discharge of functions to be carried out by other specified officers. Such arrangements must be recorded in writing and notified to the Monitoring Officer who will

ensure such arrangements are recorded in the Register referred to above.

2.35.5 SECTION E – CRITERIA FOR REFERRAL OF AN OFFICER ISSUE FOR MEMBER LEVEL CONSIDERATION OR DECISION

If any of the following criteria apply, the matter is to be considered by Cabinet or a Cabinet Member. The opinion of the Chief Executive in consultation with the Leader of the Council, as to the interpretation and application of these criteria shall be final and conclusive.

- (i) matters of significant political impact including those which impact significantly on the issue of Members' accountability to the electorate;
- (ii) matters of substance relating to key and significant projects;
- (iii) matters which raise specific issues requiring choices between options which themselves might have knock-on effects elsewhere- eg on funding;
- (iv) where significant risks have been identified in proceeding with the issue as a result of risk analysis;
- (v) where issues of timing, presentation, or relationships with other bodies (eg other Councils, outside bodies, central government) have become critical to resolve;
- (vi) where there is a significant deviation from the original intention of a project plan etc;
- (vii) where a decision is required which was not anticipated in the Council's agreed plans or policies;
- (viii) a proposal for a detailed Strategy/Action Plan which is consistent with, but goes beyond the intended scope of an agreed Council Policy;
- (ix) where a high level implementation decision is required.

The relevant lead Officer will be responsible for determining, which is the relevant member body, having considered any advice from the Chief Executive who will be the final arbiter in such matters.

2.36 PROPER OFFICER FUNCTIONS

The Council has appointed the following Proper Officers for the purposes of the statutory provisions set out below. Subject to the proper officer appointments set out below, the Chief Executive and

the Chief Operating Officer shall be authorised to act as the Proper Officer for the statutory responsibilities which fall within their area of responsibility.

LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1972

Section	Purpose of Appointment	Proper Officer
83	To witness and receive declarations of acceptance of the office of Chair and Vice Chair of the Council and of Councillors.	Chief Executive Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Democratic Services Manager
84	To receive written notice of the resignation from the office of Chair and Vice Chair of the Council and of Councillors.	Chief Executive Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services
86	To declare the office of Councillor vacant.	Chief Executive Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services
88(2)	To convene, if necessary, a meeting of the Council when the office of Chair of the Council is vacant.	Chief Executive Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services
89(1)(B)	To receive written notice from two local government electors of a casual vacancy in the office of Councillor.	Chief Executive Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services
100B(2) Inserted by Local Government (Access to Information Act 1985)	To decide whether part or the whole of reports should be excluded from public inspection before a meeting if they relate only to items during which the meeting is likely not to be open to the public.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Democratic Services Manager

100B((7)(c)	To supply to the press additional material supplied to Members of the Council in connection with the item to be discussed.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Democratic Services Manager
100C(2)	To prepare a written summary of proceedings taken by a Committee in private.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Democratic Services Manager
100D(1)	To compile a list of background papers to a report to a Committee.	Chief Operating Officer and Director or other officer in whose name the report is written.
100D(5)(a)	Identifying background papers of reports.	Chief Operating Officer, Director or other officer in whose name the report is written.
100F(2)	Identifying which documents contain exempt information not open to inspection by Members of the Council.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Democratic Services Manager
146	To sign the statutory declaration to enable the transfer of securities in the event of a change in the name or status of the Local Authority.	Director - Finance
191	To receive applications made under Section 1 of the Ordnance Survey Act 1841 for assistance in surveying disputed boundaries.	Chief Operating Officer
210	To exercise certain residual functions relating to charities.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services
225	To receive and retain documents deposited with the Local Authority.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services

229	To certify, for the purpose of any legal proceedings, that a document is a photographic copy of the original document.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services (generally) and all Directors and Chief Operating Officers within their areas of responsibility
234	To sign any notice, order or other document on behalf of the Authority; any document purporting to be so signed being deemed to be issued by the Authority.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services
236	To send to the Council of every Parish in the area a copy of every byelaw made by the Council and confirmed by the Secretary of State.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services
238	Certification of copy of byelaws.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services
Schedule 12 (Paragraph) 4(2)(b)	To sign and send to all Members of the Council the summons to attend meetings of the Council, specifying the business to be transacted.	Chief Executive Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Democratic Services Manager
4(3)	Receiving notice from a Member of the address to which a summons to the meeting is to be sent.	Democratic Services Manager

REGISTRATION SERVICES

4	Appointment of Interim Superintendent Registrars or Interim Registrars of Births and Deaths under Section 9 of the Registration Service Act 1953.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services

4	In relation to the Registration of Births, Deaths and Marriages, to exercise the functions under the Marriage Act 1949	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services
4	In relation to the approval of premises for the solemnisation of marriages under Section 26(1)(bb) and Section 46A of the Marriage Act 1949 (as amended by the Marriage Act 1994) and the Marriages and Civil Partnerships Act (Approved Premises) Regulations 2005.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services

MARRIAGES AND CIVIL PARTNERSHIPS (APPROVED PREMISES) REGULATIONS 2005

	To be the Proper Officer for the purposes of the Registration Act 1953, the Marriage Act 1949 (as amended by the Marriage Act 1994) the Civil Partnership Act 2004, and the Marriages and Civil Partnerships (Approved Premises) (Amendment) Regulations 2011 and to set fees and offer discounts where applicable.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services

LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 1974

30(5)	Giving public notice of receipt of report by a Local Commissioner	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services

HIGHWAYS ACT 1980

59(1)	To certify that extraordinary expenses have been incurred in maintaining the highway by reason of damage caused by	Director of Sustainable Communities

	excessive weight or extraordinary damage.	
205(3)(4) & (5)	To undertake duties in relation to private street works.	Director of Sustainable Communities
210(2)	To certify any amendments to estimated costs and provisional apportionment of costs of street works under the private street works code.	Director of Sustainable Communities
211(1), 212(4), 216(2), and (3)	To make a final apportionment of expenses of street works executed under the private street works code as detailed in the Schedules.	Director of Sustainable Communities
Section 295	Issuing a notice requiring owners to remove materials from non-maintainable streets in which works are due to take place.	Director of Sustainable Communities
Section 321	Authentication of notices, consents, approvals, orders, demands, licenses, certificates or other documents.	Director of Sustainable Communities
Schedule 9, Paragraph 4	Signing plans showing proposed improvement or building lines.	Director of Sustainable Communities

LOCAL GOVERNMENT FINANCE ACT 1988

116(1)	Responsibility for notifying the external auditor of arrangements for a meeting to consider a report from the "Chief Financial Officer"	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Democratic Services Manager

LOCAL GOVERNMENT AND HOUSING ACT 1989

2	To receive on deposit a list of politically restricted posts.	Director of People & Policy
3A	In consultation with the Monitoring Officer, to determine	Chief Executive (as Head of Paid Service)

	applications for exemption from political restriction or for designation of posts as politically restricted.	
15 and 16	To undertake all matters relating to the formal establishment of political groups within the membership of the Council.	Democratic Services Manager

FOOD SAFETY ACT 1990

49(3)	Signing any document authorised or required to be given, made or issued by the Food Authority.	Director of Sustainable Communities

LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 2000

SECTION 9G AND 9GA: MEETINGS AND ACCESS TO INFORMATION ETC

LOCAL AUTHORITIES (EXECUTIVE ARRANGEMENTS) (MEETINGS AND ACCESS TO INFORMATION) (ENGLAND) REGULATIONS 2012 (SI 2012/2089)

Regulation 7	Exclusion of whole or part of any reports to the Cabinet or Cabinet Member where they relate only to items during which the meeting is likely not to be open to the public.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services
Regulation 10	Informing the relevant Select Committee Chair or the Committee Members by notice in writing of decisions to be made, where it has been impracticable to comply with the publicity requirements (in the "Forward Plan") and making available for public inspection notices relating to this.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Democratic Services Manager

Regulation 12	Producing a written statement of Cabinet decisions made at meetings.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Democratic Services Manager
Regulation 13	Producing a written statement of decisions made by individual Cabinet Members.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Democratic Services Manager
Regulation 14	Making a copy of written statements of Cabinet and Cabinet Member and officer executive decisions and associated reports available for inspection by the public.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Democratic Services Manager
Regulation 15 and Regulation 2	Making available for inspection a list of background papers.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Democratic Services Manager
Regulation 16(5)	Determining whether certain documents contain exempt information.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Democratic Services Manager
Regulation 16(7)	Determining whether certain documents contain advice provided by a political adviser or assistant.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Democratic Services Manager
Regulation 20	Determining whether documents contain confidential information, exempt	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services

	information or the advice of a political adviser or assistant.	Democratic Services Manager

LOCAL GOVERNMENT ACT 2000

SECTION 34: LOCAL AUTHORITIES (REFERENDUMS) PETITIONS AND DIRECTIONS) REGULATIONS 2000 (SI 2000/2852)

Regulations 4 and 5	Publishing the verification number of local government electors for the purpose of petitions under the Local Government Act 2000.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Electoral Services Manager

LOCALISM ACT 2011

29	Establish, maintain and publish a Register of Interests.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services
33	Grant a dispensation in circumstances where without the dispensation: - the number of persons prohibited by having a DPI from participating in any particular business would be so great a proportion of the body transacting the business as to impede the transaction of the business, or - the representation of different political groups on the body transacting any particular business would be so upset as to alter the likely outcome of any vote relating to the business;	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services

	each Member of the authority's executive would be prohibited by DPIs from participating in any particular business to be transacted by the authority's executive.	

LOCAL AUTHORITIES (STANDING ORDERS) (ENGLAND) REGULATIONS 2001

1 (Part 11)	Notifications to the Cabinet concerning appointments and dismissals.	Director of People & Policy

REGULATION OF INVESTIGATORY POWERS ACT (RIPA) 2000

21, 22, 27, 28 and 29	The Senior Responsible Officer for RIPA. Designation of officers empowered to grant authorisation for the carrying out of directed surveillance, to authorise the use of covert human intelligence sources and communications data checks.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Chief Executive.

FREEDOM OF INFORMATION ACT 2000

36	Acting as a "qualified person" in respect of information held by the Council.	Monitoring Officer & Head of Legal & Democratic Services Chief Executive.

LOCAL GOVERNMENT, ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT AND CONSTRUCTION ACT 2009

31	Designated Statutory Scrutiny Officer	Policy Development & Scrutiny Officer Chief Executive.

DATA PROTECTION ACT 2018

Part 3, Chapter 4, section 69	Designated Data Protection Officer for Council as Data controller	Director (Risk & Assurance) Chief Executive.

LOCAL GOVERNMENT PENSION SCHEME REGULATIONS 2013

Reg 2 (3B) & Statutory Guidance	Designated LGPS Senior Officer	Director – One West

PART 3 PROCEDURAL RULES

3.1 COUNCIL PROCEDURE RULES

3.1.1 ANNUAL MEETING

DATE OF ANNUAL MEETING OF COUNCIL

In a year when there is an ordinary election of Councillors, the annual meeting is held either on the 8th day after the day of retirement of Members or within 21 days immediately following the day of retirement. The Council will decide which alternative in each election year. In any other year, the annual meeting will take place in March, April or May. The annual meeting may be combined with the business of an ordinary meeting.

3.1.2 CHAIR AND VICE CHAIR OF THE COUNCIL

The first business at the Annual Meeting of the Council is to elect a Councillor to be Chair of the Council for the Municipal Year (i.e. until a successor is appointed at the next Annual Meeting). The current Chair will preside at the meeting over the appointment of their successor unless, in accordance with the provisions of the Local Government Act 1972, he or she is ineligible to do so. In this case the Vice Chair shall preside. No Councillor shall preside over his or her own election as Chair or Vice Chair. The Annual Meeting will also appoint a Councillor to be Vice Chair of the Council for the Municipal Year. Both the Chair and the Vice Chair have the right to declare their preference for how they wish to be addressed.

3.1.3 APPOINTMENT OF COMMITTEES

At its Annual Meeting, the Council will decide:

- which Overview and Scrutiny Panels, non-executive and other Committees to create for the Municipal Year;
- what roles and responsibilities they will have; and
- the proportional allocation of seats to political groups.

The current appointments: [Political Proportionality Table](#)

3.1.4 SUBSTITUTION

All non-executive Members of a committee or Overview and Scrutiny Panel (subject to the rules on membership of such bodies) are eligible to be appointed as a substitute for any Committee or Overview and Scrutiny Panel Member of any political group in accordance with the wishes of that political group. Substitute Members will have all the powers and duties of any ordinary Member of the committee but will not be able to exercise any

special responsibilities or duties exercisable by the Member for whom they are substituting.

Substitute Members may attend meetings in that capacity to take the place of the ordinary Member for whom they are substituting, where the ordinary Member will be absent for the whole of the meeting (including any adjournment). The Member being substituted shall cease to be a Member of the relevant body for the duration of the meeting (including any adjournment of the meeting to another date). The substitute Member shall be a full Member of the body for the same period. Cabinet Members cannot act as a substitute on any Overview and Scrutiny Panel.

3.1.5 ORDER OF BUSINESS AT ANNUAL MEETING OF COUNCIL

The annual meeting will:

- (i) elect a person to preside if the Chair of the Council and the Vice Chair is not present;
- (ii) elect the Chair of the Council;
- (iii) appoint the Vice Chair of the Council;
- (iv) approve the minutes of the last meeting as a correct record and authorise the Chair to sign as such;
- (v) receive any announcements from the Chair or from the Chief Executive;
- (vi) elect the Leader of the Council, following elections held every 4 years;
- (vii) appoint at least one Overview and Scrutiny Committee, a Licensing Committee and such other Committees as the Council considers appropriate to deal with matters which are neither reserved to the Council nor are executive functions;
- (viii) determine the size, terms of reference and delegated powers of those committees and bodies established under part (vii) above on the basis that these matters may also be reviewed during the Municipal Year;
- (ix) determine the allocation of seats on Committees and Overview and Scrutiny Panels to political groups in accordance with the

rules on political balance and arrangements for the appointment of substitute (or temporary) Members (see [Council Procedure Rules](#));

- (x) receive nominations from political groups for Members to serve on Committees and Overview and Scrutiny Panels. Similarly, the Council will receive nominations to serve on outside bodies where the making of such appointments has not been delegated by the Council or is exercisable only by the Cabinet;
- (xi) agree the scheme of delegations or such part of it as the Constitution determines it is for the Council to agree as set out in [Part 2 of this Constitution](#).
- (xii) approve a programme of ordinary meetings of the Council and of its Committees for the year; and
- (xiii) consider any other relevant business set out in the notice convening the meeting.

The agenda and any relevant reports will be endorsed with the name of any local ward to which the business specifically relates.

3.1.6 BUSINESS AT ORDINARY MEETINGS

Ordinary meetings of the Council will take place in accordance with a programme decided at the Council's annual meeting. Ordinary meetings will:

- (i) elect a person to preside if the Chair and Vice Chair are not present;
- (ii) receive any declarations of interest from Members;
- (iii) approve the minutes of the last meeting as a correct record and authorise the Chair to sign as such (*There is no discussion on matters arising from the minutes other than to draw attention to any inaccuracy*);
- (iv) receive any announcements from the Chair or the Chief Executive, and with the approval of the Chair of the meeting receive from the Leader of the Council, a statement on an urgent matter, provided that the Leader of the Opposition shall have an equivalent opportunity to reply to such a statement;

- (v) deal with any business remaining from the previous Council meeting;
- (vi) receive questions, statements, or petitions from members of the Public;
- (vii) receive questions, statements, or petitions from Councillors at the end of the published order of business;
- (viii) receive reports on Policy and Budget Framework matters (normally from the Cabinet);
- (ix) receive and consider any report from the Cabinet on its business since the previous Council meeting;
- (x) consider any other business specific in the summons to the meeting including reports from Officers on Council functions;
- (xi) consider any agenda motions submitted by Members of the Council.

The agenda and any relevant reports will be endorsed with the name of any local ward to which the business specifically relates.

3.1.7 SPECIAL OR EXTRAORDINARY MEETINGS

Occasionally, it will be necessary to call a special or extraordinary meeting of the Council to deal with specific business only. A special or extraordinary meeting may be called:

- i) by resolution of the Council;
- ii) by the Chair of the Council on her/his own initiative;
- iii) by the Chair of the Council, in response to a written request signed by 5 Members;
- iv) by the Monitoring Officer or the Chief Financial Officer, after consultation with the Political Group Leaders and the Chair of the Council.

Those calling the special or extraordinary meeting may specify a date and time for the meeting. This specific business will be limited to that identified by those calling the meeting. Questions from the Public and Councillors will not be permitted unless these relate to the business to be discussed.

When 5 Members submit a written request for a meeting, the Chair may:

- call a meeting within a reasonable time;
- refuse to call a meeting; or
- take no action

If the Chair refuses to call a meeting within 7 days (*i.e. the summons to the meeting is not sent out within 7 days*) or takes no action, the 5 Members who have signed the request may require the Chief Executive in writing to convene a meeting on a date and time they will determine. The Chief Executive shall then convene a meeting on the specified date and at the time stated.

3.1.8 MINUTES AT EXTRAORDINARY MEETINGS

Minutes of an ordinary meeting of the Council will be presented for consideration as a correct record at the same or the next ordinary meeting of the Council. A special or extraordinary meeting of the Council will not be asked to consider for approval the minutes of any ordinary meeting of the Council held prior to the special or extraordinary meeting.

3.1.9 GENERAL PROVISIONS

3.1.10 DATES AND TIMES OF MEETINGS

The time and place of all Member meetings will be determined by the Monitoring Officer and notified in the summons. The Chief Executive, in consultation with Political Group Leaders, is responsible for determining whether a programmed meeting should be postponed or cancelled.

3.1.11 AGENDA DESPATCH

Items to be discussed at any meeting of the Council will be set down in the agenda. The agenda will be sent to every Member of the Council at least 5 clear working days before the meeting. A “clear working day” is a day on which the Council offices are open and does not include the day of despatch or the day of the meeting. In the case of an extraordinary meeting of the Council called to consider an urgent item, a shorter period of notice may be given.

The draft agenda for a Council meeting shall be submitted to each Political Group sufficiently far in advance of the formal agenda despatch to enable all Members of the Council, through Group discussion, to have an opportunity to influence the agenda content for the meeting.

The Chief Executive, in consultation with the Political Group Leaders shall prepare and maintain an annual work plan for the Council for circulation to all Members.

3.1.12 MINIMUM NUMBER OF MEMBERS PRESENT (QUORUM)

No business shall be transacted at a meeting of the Council unless at least one quarter of the whole number of Members of the Council is present. This is 15 elected Councillors of Bath & North East Somerset Council. The quorum for all other committees or panels shall be one quarter of their respective membership, or 3 Councillor/voting Members whichever is the greater or, unless otherwise stated in [Part 2 of the Constitution](#)

If, at the start of or during any meeting of the Council, the Chair, after requiring a count of the number of Members present, declares that there is not a minimum required number present, the meeting shall immediately stand adjourned. The consideration of any business not transacted shall be adjourned to the next ordinary meeting of the Council unless the Chair, or the Council, decides that the meeting should be re-convened at another time or on another date to transact or complete its business. When this happens, the Chair or the Council may also decide the date and / or time at which the meeting shall re-convene.

3.1.13 RECORD OF ATTENDANCE

The names of the Members present during the whole or part of a meeting shall be recorded.

3.1.14 SUSPENSION OF RULES

There are occasions when it is helpful to the effective conduct of a meeting, or for other reasons, not to apply a particular Procedural Rule. It is therefore open to any meeting to suspend one or more of its operational Rules. It is necessary for the suspension of a Rule to be proposed by a Councillor who should make it clear which Rule is being suspended and for how long. A majority of Members present at a meeting must support the proposal to suspend a rule.

3.1.15 CHANGING THE ORDER OF BUSINESS

The Chair may at her/his discretion vary the order of business at the meeting. The Council meeting may also decide to vary the order in which agenda items are taken.

3.1.16 RULES OF DEBATE

3.1.17 CHAIR OF MEETING

At a meeting of the Council, the Chair, if present, shall preside. If the Chair is absent from a meeting, then the Vice Chair, if present, shall preside. If both the Chair and Vice Chair are absent from a meeting, another Member of the Council chosen by the meeting shall preside. The person presiding at the meeting may exercise any power or duty of the Chair in relation to the conduct of the meeting.

3.1.18 POWERS OF THE CHAIR

The powers and duties of the Chair are as follows:

- a) to act as the focal point for debate;
- b) to preserve order and ensure the proper and efficient conduct of the meeting;
- c) to ensure that members of the Public and Councillors are able to follow proceedings;
- d) to confine discussion to the issue under consideration;
- e) to ensure all Councillors have an equal opportunity to participate;
- f) to decide whether proposals put to the meeting are in order;
- g) to decide procedural matters;

- h) to conduct voting and to declare the result;
- i) to sign the minutes of the previous meeting(s) as a correct record when authorised to do so by the meeting;
- j) to adjourn the meeting if circumstances justify such action;
- k) to declare the meeting closed when its business has been completed;
- l) to exercise powers conferred by law on the chair of a meeting.

3.1.19 CHAIR TAKING PART IN DEBATE

The Chair will not normally take part in debate. The Chairperson must, if present, preside and it is not permissible for the Chair to vacate the Chair during consideration of an item. However, in special circumstances signified to the meeting, the Chair may speak but will ensure that his or her contribution to debate is made in such a way as to ensure that the efficient conduct of the meeting is not prejudiced.

3.1.20 MEMBERS TO ADDRESS THE CHAIR

When speaking at a meeting, Members shall address the Chair.

3.1.21 MINUTES

The Chair will invite the meeting to approve the minutes of the previous meeting as a true and correct record. There will be no discussion on the minutes other than on their accuracy. When so approved, the Chair is authorised to sign them.

3.1.22 QUESTIONS FROM COUNCILLORS AND THE PUBLIC

Councillors and the Public have the right to put forward questions for answer at a Council meeting but not at a special/extraordinary Council meeting unless these relate to the business to be discussed. All questions must be submitted in writing (this to include transmission by e mail).

A maximum of 3 questions will be accepted from each member of the Public and from each Councillor (each question to have no more than 2 sub-sections). A question in multiple parts will be treated as a series of individual questions. Notice of the question must be given to the Monitoring Officer no later than close of business 4 clear working days before the day of the meeting (e.g. 5pm on a Thursday for a meeting on the following Thursday).

All questions will be circulated to Members of the Council and the public in advance of the meeting. There is no requirement of the questioner to read out the question, nor of the relevant Councillor to read out the answer if circulated. Where a written answer is circulated in advance, the relevant Councillor may add to that answer orally at the meeting.

A Councillor who is asked a question may

- nominate another Councillor to reply on his or her behalf;
- indicate that a written answer will be provided, in which case that written answer shall be provided no later than 5 clear working days after the day of the meeting, where practicable.

Questions must only be asked of:

- a Cabinet Member (where the matter falls within his or her portfolio) or
- the Leader of the Council or the Deputy Leader (about any aspect of Council policy and practice, service delivery or community interest) or
- a/all Group Leader/s (about an issue not related to executive business)
- a committee or Panel chair
- the Council's spokesperson on the Police Authority

but not an individual Member of the Council who does not hold any of the above positions.

For Policy Development & Scrutiny Panels, and Committees, questions must only be asked of the Chair.

The Chair may rule on the adequacy of an answer given at the meeting by a Cabinet Member (or their nominee).

A question will not be accepted under this Rule if

- the answer would require exempt or confidential information to be divulged;
- the subject matter is about an application for a legal consent or permission where there is an alternative process to challenge the decision or to appeal against it or where the question/answer process might prejudice the proper consideration of such an application;
- it is about a matter which has already been lodged with the Council or with another statutory body as a formal complaint;
- is defamatory, frivolous or offensive;
- it contains an allegation against, or comments about, the conduct of individual Councillors or officers.

The text of written questions to Council, and their written or published responses, should contain no reference to political groups/parties.

3.1.23 PETITIONS AND STATEMENTS FROM COUNCILLORS OR THE PUBLIC

Councillors and [members of the Public](#) have the right to put forward petitions and statements at a Council meeting. The submission must be relevant to the Council and/or the Bath & North East Somerset area. Advance notice of all statements (including those supporting a petition) must be submitted in writing (this to include transmission by e mail) stating the subject matter, and must be lodged with the Monitoring Officer no later than close of business 2 clear working days before the day of the meeting at which the submission is to be made (e.g. Monday 5pm for a meeting on a Thursday). Where possible, members of the public and Councillors are strongly encouraged to submit the text of their statement in advance to enable Members to read it before the meeting.

[Guidance](#) is available on drafting/submitting a statement.

There is no minimum number of signatures required for a petition.

A submission under this Rule will not be accepted if

- it seeks to address exempt or confidential matters;
- the subject matter is about an application for a legal consent or permission where there is an alternative process to challenge the decision or to appeal against it or where this Procedural Rule might prejudice the proper consideration of such an application or consent;
- it is about a matter which has already been lodged with the Council or with another statutory body as a formal complaint;
- is defamatory, frivolous or offensive;
- it contains an allegation against, or comments about, the conduct of individual Councillors or officers.

There is a limit of one submission per item per individual member of the Public.

There is a limit of one hour for items from the Public, extended at the Chair's discretion.

Individual submissions will be limited to a maximum of 3 minutes.

If the submission relates to a general matter not on the agenda for the meeting, it will be taken at the start of the meeting. If it relates to an item on the agenda for the meeting, the person making the submission will be invited to address the meeting either at the start of the meeting or immediately before the item is debated.

Once the submission has been made, the Chair will invite each Group Leader once, if they require any clarification on the submission, to ask factual questions of the person making the submission. The Group Leader can defer this right to another Member within the Group. The meeting will then determine what action it wishes to take on the matters contained in the submission.

[The above provision regarding Group Leader factual questions only relates to Council.]

3.1.24 MOTIONS MOVED WITHOUT NOTICE

The following matters may be proposed as a motion during a meeting, by a Member of the Council, without the need to give notice:

- a) Appointment of a Chair of the meeting
- b) The accuracy of the minutes
- c) To change the order of agenda business
- d) To adopt a recommendation or some other course of action arising from a report to the meeting
- e) Extending the time limit for speeches, for Public and Councillor questions
- f) Amendments to matters raised
- g) That the meeting proceeds to the next business (applies only to certain Members - See Rule 3.1.34)
- h) That the question be now put
- i) That the debate be now adjourned
- j) That the meeting now adjourns
- k) That the meeting continue beyond the prescribed deadline to end no later than a specified time
- l) Suspending Procedural Rules in accordance with Rule 3.1.14
- m) To resolve under Section 100A of the Local Government Act 1972 to exclude the press and the Public
- n) That a Member named under Rule 3.1.39 be not further heard or leave the meeting

3.1.25 NOTICE OF AGENDA MOTIONS

Except for motions which may be moved without notice written notice of every motion, signed by or on behalf of the Member(s) giving notice, with the name of the political group shown after the Member's name (unless the motion is to stand in the name of the Member only) must be delivered to the Monitoring Officer (on behalf of the Chief Executive) not later than 7 clear working days before the date of the meeting.

- Motions will be listed on the agenda in the order in which notice was received by the Monitoring Officer unless, after consulting the Group Leaders, the Chief Executive and the Chair, the Monitoring Officer decides that it would be more effective for the conduct of the Council's business to place them in a different order;
- Motions must be about matters for which Bath & North East Somerset Council has a responsibility or which affect Bath & North East Somerset Council, its functions, its area or part of it or the inhabitants of that area or part of it.

If notice is given of any motion which the Monitoring Officer considers does not fall within the scope of the above or that is ultra vires or otherwise illegal, that motion will be submitted to the Chair. The Chair shall decide to either rule the motion as out of order or to place it on the agenda if he or she considers that the motion required to be properly considered by the Council with a view to determining its validity. In the event of a motion being rejected and not being placed on the agenda, the Monitoring Officer will inform the Member who gave notice of the motion as soon as possible.

A Councillor submitting an agenda motion has the right to speak to it at the Council meeting for no longer than 5 minutes. That Councillor, or their nominee may also attend at any meeting of any other committee or body to which the Council refers the matter. However, he or she will be able to speak to the matter only at the discretion of the Chair of the meeting to which the matter has been referred. The Councillor may not vote on the matter unless s/he is a voting Member of the meeting considering the matter and has no conflict of interest in respect of that matter.

The meeting has the right to determine with advice from Officers whether it wishes to defer the matter to a future meeting for further Officer report/advice.

Notices of motion will not be accepted at the Budget Council meeting, or the Annual meeting of Council.

3.1.26 MOTIONS

A motion is a proposal from a Member at the meeting aimed at opening a debate on an agenda item. A motion once proposed needs a second Member to indicate a willingness for it to be considered. This is called “seconding” the motion. A motion usually takes the form of a proposal to adopt a course of action based on a recommendation in a report. It can be a different proposal to that which is recommended in the report. [A recommendation in a report is not of itself a motion unless or until a Member proposes its adoption].

A Member who moves a proposal may, with the agreement of the seconder, accept a suggestion for a minor adjustment to the wording of the proposal. In indicating acceptance or not, only a brief response is expected (extended at the Chair’s discretion if useful to facilitate a helpful outcome). Where a proposed adjustment is not accepted by the mover, or considered at the meeting to be of significance and not therefore “minor”, it will be treated instead as if it was a formal amendment.

Members will have access to the advice of the Chief Executive and/or Monitoring Officer in drafting motions.

3.1.27 AMENDMENT

An amendment is a proposal by a Member to change the words of a motion which has been moved and seconded. The amendment shall be relevant to the subject matter of the motion and shall be: -

- a. to leave out words, or
- b. to leave out words and insert or add other words, or
- c. to insert or add words, or
- d. to refer the matter to a Committee/Sub Committee, the Cabinet or an Overview and Scrutiny Panel for consideration or reconsideration
- e. to defer consideration of the matter.

An amendment must not;

- be a direct negative of a motion; or
- seek to introduce into the motion a new issue unrelated to the subject dealt with in the motion.

If an amendment seeks to achieve something that is relevant but cannot be achieved by merely voting against the motion, it is likely to be ruled as a valid amendment. The meeting will be advised by the Chief Executive on the validity of amendments and the ruling of the Chair thereon will be final.

Only one amendment may be moved and discussed at a time. No further amendment shall be moved until the amendment under discussion has been disposed of.

Notice of intention to move any further amendment and the nature thereof may, at the discretion of any Member, be given to the Chair before a vote is taken on the current amendment being considered at the meeting.

If an amendment is defeated, other amendments may be moved to the original motion. If an amendment is carried, the motion as amended shall take the place of the original motion and shall become the substantive motion upon which any further amendments may be moved in turn.

[A flow diagram which illustrates the debating process: Debating Flow Chart](#)

3.1.28 SECONDING

Any motion or amendment is only able to be discussed once a second Member has indicated a willingness for it to be considered. This is called “seconding”.

3.1.29 RIGHT OF REPLY

At the end of a debate about a motion, the Member who proposed the substantive motion may exercise a right to reply to the points raised in the debate.

The right to reply to a debate on an amendment also rests with the Member who proposed the motion, not with the Member who proposed the amendment.

If a motion is successfully amended, the mover of the original motion which opened the debate shall be given an opportunity to respond to points made during debate, before the formal right of reply goes to the mover of the substantive motion.

A Member exercising a right of reply shall confine her/his speech to answering points raised by the previous speakers, and shall not introduce new material. The Chair’s ruling in this regard shall be final.

After every right of reply to which this Rule refers, a vote shall be taken without further discussion.

3.1.30 WITHDRAWAL OF MOTION

A motion or amendment may be withdrawn by the mover with the consent of her/his seconder, which shall be signified without discussion. No Member may speak upon it after the mover has asked permission for its withdrawal, unless permission to withdraw it has been refused, in which case it remains open for debate.

3.1.31 RIGHT TO REQUIRE PROPOSAL IN WRITING

Unless notice of the motion or amendment has already been given and published, the Chair may require it to be written down and handed to him/her before it is discussed at the meeting.

3.1.32 NO SPEECHES UNTIL MOTION SECONDED

No speeches may be made after the mover has moved a motion and explained the purpose of it until the motion has been seconded.

3.1.33 CONTENT AND LENGTH OF SPEECHES

A Member shall direct her or his speech to the question under discussion or to a personal explanation or to a point of order (see Rule 3.1.35 below). A Member proposing a motion, a Cabinet Member or a Chair of a Council body when presenting a report from such a body, will be allowed no more than 5 minutes for her or his speech. No other speech by any Councillor or invited other person will exceed 3 minutes.

3.1.34 CLOSURE MOTIONS

A Member who has not spoken in a debate may move without comment at the conclusion of a speech of another Member;

“That the meeting proceed to the next business”,

“That the question be now put” (*In effect “That the vote be now taken”*),

“That the debate be now adjourned”, or

“That the meeting do now adjourn”,

on the seconding of which the Chair shall proceed as follows:-

- a) On a motion “to proceed to next business”: unless in her/his opinion the matter before the meeting has been insufficiently discussed, the Chair shall first give the mover of the substantive motion a right of reply, and then put to the vote the motion “to proceed to the next business”.
- b) On a motion “that the question be now put”: unless in her/his opinion the matter before the meeting has been insufficiently discussed, the Chair shall first put to the vote the motion “that the question be now put”. If that motion is passed, the Chair will invite the mover of the motion under discussion to exercise her/his right of reply under Rule 3.1.29 before putting that original motion to the vote.
- c) On a motion “to adjourn the debate or the meeting”: if in her/his opinion the matter before the meeting has not been sufficiently discussed and cannot reasonably be sufficiently discussed on that occasion, the Chair shall put the adjournment motion to the vote without giving the mover of the substantive motion a right of reply.

Votes on closure motions to be taken by Members standing. If a Member is unable to or prefers not to stand, a raised hand will be counted.

3.1.35 POINTS OF ORDER/POINTS OF PERSONAL EXPLANATION

A Member may indicate a “point of order” or a “point of personal explanation” and shall be entitled to be heard immediately.

- a. A "Point of Order" shall relate only to an alleged breach of a Procedural Rule or statutory provision. The Member shall specify the Procedural Rule or statutory provision and the way in which s/he considers it has been broken.
- b. A "Personal Explanation" shall be confined to some material part of the Member's former speech which may appear to have been misunderstood in the present debate.

The ruling of the Chair on a point of order, or on the admissibility of a personal explanation, shall be final.

3.1.36 SIX MONTH RULE

The Council will not consider any matter which has already been considered by the Council within the previous 6 months, unless

- 1) the matter is coming to the Council meeting as part of a report from an Officer, the Cabinet, an Overview and Scrutiny Panel or a Committee of the Council;

OR

- 2) written notice, requesting the Chief Executive to arrange for the Council to reconsider the matter, and endorsed by no fewer than 15 Members of the Council, is submitted to the Chief Executive. The term "endorsed" shall include individual signatures on the notice or electronic communications from individual Members. The receipt of a communication from at least 15 Members signifying their endorsement of the action requested in the notice will be sufficient authority for the Chief Executive to take action to include the item on a Council agenda.

Any 6-month Rule notice to the Chief Executive should be couched in the following terms:

I hereby require the Council to reconsider its decision of (date) as recorded in minute no (xx) about (subject) and accordingly request the Chief Executive to place an item on the agenda of the (next available) (specified date) Council meeting, together with such reports as s/he thinks appropriate, to enable this reconsideration to take place. - with the optional inclusion of a specific motion for the Council to consider.

Similarly, no proposal which the Council has rejected within the previous 6 months may be put forward, other than in the circumstances described in (1) and (2) above.

3.1.37 VOTING

Subject to the provisions of any enactment all questions coming or arising before the meeting shall be decided by a majority of the Members of the Council (or other persons entitled to vote) present and voting.

The Chair shall ensure that that the proposal to be voted on is clear. Voting will proceed by a show of hands – first those voting “for” the proposal and then those voting “against” the proposal. This will be followed by a show of hands from those who are abstaining from voting.

Sometimes, the law requires special voting procedures and/or sets down the required numbers of votes or a proportion of voting Members required to be in favour. The Chief Executive will inform the Council when these requirements apply.

A recorded vote or votes shall take place when setting the Authority’s budget and determining the level of Council Tax to be levied in the district for each financial year.

If on any vote the numbers “for” and “against” a proposal are equal, the proposal is NOT CARRIED and it therefore falls. The record of the meeting will reflect the “NOT CARRIED” status of the proposal.

While by convention in this Authority, the Chair does not exercise a second or casting vote to resolve issues where there is an equality of votes, the decision on whether or not to exercise a second or casting vote is that of the Chair alone. S/he retains the legal right to proceed as s/he sees fit. Exercise of a second or casting vote will not invalidate the decision.

(A second vote from the Chair means that s/he has voted in the original vote which resulted in tied numbers and votes again to break the deadlock.

A casting vote is exercised when the Chair did not take part in the original vote and casts a vote in favour or against in order to break the deadlock.)

If before a vote is taken, a Member proposes it, and 5 other Members agree, a named vote will be taken of those in favour of or against a proposal, and those abstaining from voting. This information will be recorded in the minutes of the meeting.

Any Member is entitled on request made through the Chair at the meeting to have her/his individual vote or abstention recorded in the minutes.

A Political Group Leader or nominee may require a group vote or abstention to be recorded in the minutes.

3.1.38 EXCLUSION OF PRESS AND PUBLIC

If Council, the Cabinet, Committee or sub-Committee pass a resolution pursuant to Section 100A of the Local Government Act 1972 in accordance with Part 3.5 of this Constitution to exclude the press and public from the whole or part of their proceedings, then the effect of such resolution shall extend to Members of the Council present at the meeting who are not Members of the Committee or sub-Committee concerned: provided that, except when the Committee or sub-Committee are acting in a judicial or quasi-judicial capacity, such Members of the Council shall be permitted to remain if invited to do so by resolution of the Committee or sub-Committee.

A Personal Assistant and/or nominated note taker for a disabled Councillor or other person entitled to remain at a meeting after it has passed a resolution under this Rule, shall also be entitled to remain, provided they have signed an undertaking in advance not to divulge the nature of any exempt or confidential business discussed or submitted.

3.1.39 DISORDERLY CONDUCT

If at a meeting any Member of the Council, in the opinion of the Chair, misconducts her/himself by persistently disregarding the ruling of the Chair, or by behaving irregularly, improperly or offensively, or by wilfully obstructing the business of the meeting, the Chair or any other Member may move "that the Member named be not further heard", and the motion if seconded shall be put and determined immediately without discussion.

If the Member named continues the misconduct after a motion under the foregoing paragraph has been carried the Chair shall -

EITHER move "that the Member named leave the meeting" (in which case the motion shall be put and determined immediately without seconding or discussion):

OR adjourn the meeting for such period as s/he shall consider expedient.

In the event of general disturbance, which in the opinion of the Chair renders the due and orderly despatch of business impossible, the Chair in addition to any other power vested in her/him may, without question put, adjourn the meeting of the Council for such period as s/he in her/his discretion shall consider expedient.

Members shall at all times conduct themselves in a proper, efficient, effective and courteous manner affording due respect to the office of the Chair and to the formality of the Council meeting

3.1.40 DISTURBANCE BY MEMBERS OF THE PUBLIC

The provisions of Rule 3.1.38 (exclusion of the public and press) are without prejudice to any power of exclusion to suppress or prevent disorderly conduct or other misbehaviour at a meeting.

If a member of the public interrupts the proceedings at any meeting the Chair shall issue a warning. If the person continues the interruption, the Chair shall order the person's removal from the meeting room. In case of general disturbance in any part of the chamber open to the public, the Chair may order that part of the meeting room to be cleared and / or may adjourn the meeting for such period as s/he in her/his discretion shall consider expedient.

When the Chair stands during a debate or uses the gavel and invokes this rule, any Councillor or member of the public speaking at the time must stop (and sit down). The meeting must be silent.

3.1.41 DURATION OF COUNCIL MEETING

No meeting of the Council will continue beyond 10pm.

A meeting may decide, on a proposal from the floor, to continue its proceedings to end at a time stated in its resolution arising from such a proposal.

If the meeting is unable to complete its business by 10 pm, and does not agree to continue beyond that time, or fails to complete its business by the alternative end time it has agreed under this Rule, the meeting will automatically stand adjourned. For any item of business being dealt with at the time, the substantive motion will be put immediately to the vote without further debate. All uncompleted business will stand adjourned to be considered at the next meeting or to an adjourned session.

The Chair or the meeting may decide the date and time of the adjourned session.

3.1.42 MEMBER ADVOCATES

The Council may appoint Members from time to time to act as "Advocates" for particular interests both within the Council and outside. The Chief Executive, in consultation with Group Leaders will determine such guidance, protocols and support as is deemed necessary for the effective operation of such roles.

[Current Member Advocates](#)

3.1.43 APPLICATION TO COMMITTEES, SUB-COMMITTEES AND PANELS

All of the Council Rules of Procedure apply to full Council. None of the Rules apply to meetings of the Cabinet.. Only paragraphs 3.1.10 to 3.1.40 apply to meetings of committees, sub-committees and panels (but not

3.1.37 in regard to a recorded vote in setting Council tax), with suitable adjustments

3.2 EXECUTIVE PROCEDURE RULES

3.2.1 WHO MAY MAKE EXECUTIVE DECISIONS?

The Leader of the Council will decide how executive functions are to be exercised. The arrangements may provide for executive functions to be discharged by:

- i) the Cabinet as a whole;
- ii) a committee of the Cabinet;
- iii) an individual Cabinet Member;
- iv) an officer;
- v) an Area Committee;
- vi) another body under an approved joint or agency arrangement; or
- vii) another local authority.

These executive procedure rules apply to a committee of Cabinet.

3.2.2 PUBLICATION OF PROPOSED EXECUTIVE DECISIONS AND DECISIONS TAKEN

All proposed executive decisions and executive (Cabinet) decisions taken will be published in accordance with the Access to Information Procedure Rules at Part 3.5 of this Constitution. The Public can access information about the Cabinet's forward agenda plan and executive decisions on the Council's website.

3.2.3 CABINET MEETINGS

The Cabinet will decide the date and location of its meetings.

3.2.4 SPECIAL (OR EXTRAORDINARY) MEETINGS

Those listed below may request the Chief Executive to call a special formal meeting of the Cabinet in addition to scheduled ordinary meetings:

- i. The Leader of the Council or a Deputy Leader
- ii. The Cabinet by resolution;

- iii. No less than 50% of the membership of the Cabinet if they have signed a requisition presented to the Leader and s/he has refused to call a meeting or has failed to call a meeting within 7 clear working days of the presentation of the requisition to the Chief Executive (i.e. the summons to the meeting is not sent out within 7 clear working days);
- iv. The Chief Executive, the Monitoring Officer or the Chief Financial Officer.

3.2.5 CONSULTATION ON AND NOTICE OF EXECUTIVE DECISIONS

All reports to the Cabinet from any Member of the Cabinet or from an Officer on proposals relating to the Policy and Budget Framework must contain

- a) details of the nature and extent of consultation with stakeholders and relevant Overview and Scrutiny bodies and Officers,

and
- b) the outcomes of that consultation.

Reports about other matters (e.g. secondary policies – see Policy and Budget Framework Rule 3.7.7) will set out the details and outcome of consultation as appropriate. The level of consultation required will be appropriate to the nature of the matter under consideration and in any event will be consistent with the Council's consultation policy and practice.

The Cabinet collectively and Cabinet Members exercising portfolio responsibilities will be expected to consult with or inform local ward Councillors on all relevant issues.

3.2.6 INVOLVEMENT OF OFFICERS

Where delegated decision making powers are given to them, the relevant Cabinet Member will discuss the matter fully with all relevant senior officers before making a decision or formulating a recommendation to another body.

All meetings of the Cabinet will have access to advice from the Head of Paid Service, the Monitoring Officer and the Chief Financial Officer. These Officers will have the right to see all draft reports prior to publication and to attend all formal meetings for the purpose of giving advice as required. The Chief Executive will determine other Officer attendance required at formal meetings of the Cabinet.

3.2.7 RIGHT OF OVERVIEW AND SCRUTINY CHAIR (PERSON) TO SPEAK TO OVERVIEW AND SCRUTINY REPORTS & RESPONSE OF CABINET TO THESE REPORTS

An Overview and Scrutiny body can present a report to a meeting of the Cabinet in accordance with Rule 3.3.15.

When it receives a report direct from a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel, the Cabinet shall follow the procedure set out in the above Procedure rules.

3.2.8 SIX- MONTH RULE

The Cabinet will not consider any matter which it has already considered within the previous 6 months unless:

1. the matter is coming to the Cabinet as part of a report from an Officer, an Overview and Scrutiny body or a Committee of the Council;

OR

2. written notice, requesting the Chief Executive to arrange for the Cabinet to reconsider the matter, and endorsed by no fewer than 3 Members of the Cabinet, is submitted to the Chief Executive. The term “endorsed” shall include individual signatures on the notice or electronic communications from individual Members. The receipt of a communication from at least 3 Members signifying their endorsement of the action requested in the notice will be sufficient authority for the Chief Executive to take action to include the item on a Cabinet agenda.

Any 6-month Rule notice to the Chief Executive should be couched in the following terms:

“I hereby require the Cabinet to reconsider its decision of (date) as recorded in minute no (xx) about (subject) and accordingly request the Chief Executive to place an item on the agenda of the (next available) (specified date) Cabinet meeting, together with such reports as s/he thinks appropriate, to enable this reconsideration to take place.” - with the optional inclusion of a specific motion for the Cabinet to consider.

Similarly, no proposal which the Cabinet has rejected within the previous 6 months may be put forward, subject to (1) and (2) above.

Unless Access to Information Rule 3.5.15 (General Exception) or 3.5.16 (Urgency) applies, the issue coming forward will be required to be published in the Forward Plan of executive business before the matter can be considered. Those Councillors signing a notice to the Chief Executive

will be informed of the publication process and what that means in terms of the timetable for considering the issue.

3.2.9 PREPARATION FOR CABINET MEETINGS

3.2.10 AGENDA PREPARATION

Prior to the agenda being finalised, Officers will brief the Leader of the Council, the Deputy Leader (if there is one) and relevant Cabinet Members on matters coming to the meeting for consideration.

No report shall be included on the agenda of a formal meeting of the Cabinet unless it has been discussed fully with the relevant Cabinet Member and with the Chief Executive, the Monitoring Officer and the Chief Financial Officer as appropriate.

3.2.11 AGENDA DESPATCH

Items to be discussed at any meeting of the Cabinet will be set down in the agenda. The agenda will be sent to every Member of the Cabinet at least 5 clear working days before the meeting.

In the case of an urgent meeting of the Cabinet, a shorter period of notice may be given.

3.2.12 AGENDA CONTENT AND ORDER OF BUSINESS

Formal meetings of the Cabinet which are required to make decisions will do so on the basis of clear agendas which identify:

- a) matters on which the Cabinet has authority to act in implementing the Policy and Budget Framework set by the Council
- b) matters on which the Cabinet is required to make recommendations to the Council
- c) matters relating to an ongoing dialogue with Overview and Scrutiny bodies;
- d) other business related to the discharge of executive functions.

In addition, each meeting will be invited to approve as a correct record the minutes of the previous meeting and to receive any declarations of interest.

Agendas for meetings of the Cabinet will be issued in advance of the

meeting in accordance with the Access to Information Procedure Rules within this Constitution.

The order of business will be determined by the Chief Executive in consultation with the Leader. The Leader, or the meeting itself, may agree to vary the order of business at the meeting.

The agenda and any relevant reports will be endorsed with the name of any local ward to which the business specifically relates.

3.2.13 WHO CAN PUT ITEMS ON THE CABINET AGENDA?

The Chief Executive shall be responsible for the effective management of Cabinet business and shall have the right to place on the agenda of the Cabinet any matter relating to an executive function of the Council.

Any Member of the Council may request the Chief Executive to place an item on the agenda of the next available meeting of the Cabinet for consideration. This may include the submission of a form of words as a motion to be considered by the meeting, for which 7 clear working days' notice in advance of the meeting is required in order to satisfy the agenda despatch Rule 3.2.11 above. The motion will be signed by or on behalf of the Member(s) giving notice, with the name of the political group shown after the Member's name (unless the motion is to stand in the name of the Member only). The meeting has the right to determine with advice from Officers whether it wishes to defer the motion to a future meeting for further Officer report/advice.

The Council Leader, after consulting and taking into account the views of the Deputy Leader and of the Chief Executive, will determine whether or not to include the Member's item on the agenda.

If the item is included, the Member will have the right to attend the meeting and to speak to the item. If the item is not included, a reason will be given.

There will be a standing item on the agenda of each meeting of the Cabinet for matters referred by Overview and Scrutiny bodies.

There will be a standing item on the agenda to enable the Cabinet to consider any items requisitioned by a Cabinet Member for consideration by the full Cabinet.

The Monitoring Officer and/or the Chief Financial Officer may include an item for consideration on the agenda of a Cabinet meeting and may require the Chief Executive to call such a meeting in pursuance of their statutory duties.

Any Member of the Council may make a written submission to the Cabinet

or to the relevant Executive Councillor(s) about an item referred to in the forward agenda plan or on the published agenda of a Cabinet meeting or on the published notice of an imminent Cabinet Member decision.

The Cabinet/Cabinet Member is required to take into account the content of such a submission when making a decision or making a recommendation for consideration.

3.2.14 RULES RELATING TO PROCEDURES AT A MEETING OF THE CABINET

3.2.15 MINIMUM NUMBER OF MEMBERS PRESENT AND SUBSTITUTION

No business shall be transacted at a meeting of the Cabinet unless at least 50% of the membership is present. No substitute Cabinet Members are permitted.

3.2.16 CHAIR OF THE MEETING

The Leader of the Council will normally preside at meetings of the Cabinet. In the absence of the Leader, the Deputy Leader (if there is one) shall preside. If both the Leader and the Deputy Leader are absent, the Cabinet will elect another Cabinet Member to preside at the meeting.

Council Procedural Rule 3.1.18 applies with regard to the powers and duties of the Chair. It is accepted that the proceedings of the Cabinet may need to be flexible and not structured rigidly in terms of debating process. Accordingly, there are no formal rules of debate set down for the Cabinet. The Chair has wide discretion to rule on conduct, process and procedural matters. However, such rulings shall not be inconsistent with the spirit of the Council Procedure Rules for conducting meetings or debate at meetings.

The Chair will exercise this discretion in a manner which preserves the best interest of the Council and the effective conduct of executive business

3.2.17 RECORD OF ATTENDANCE

The names of the Cabinet Members present during the whole or part of a meeting shall be recorded.

3.2.18 SUSPENSION OF RULES

There are occasions when it is helpful to the effective conduct of a meeting, or for other reasons, not to apply a particular Procedural Rule. It is therefore open to any meeting to suspend one or more of its operational Rules. It is necessary for the suspension of a Rule to be proposed by a Councillor who should make it clear which Rule is being suspended and for how long. A majority of Members present at a meeting must support the proposal to suspend a rule.

3.2.19 QUESTIONS FROM COUNCILLORS AND THE PUBLIC

Councillors and the Public have the right to put forward questions for answer at a Cabinet meeting, but not at a special/extraordinary Cabinet meeting unless these relate to the business to be discussed. All questions must be submitted in writing (this to include transmission by e mail).

A maximum of 3 questions will be accepted from each member of the Public and from each Councillor (each question to have no more than 2 sub-sections). A question in multiple parts will be treated as a series of individual questions. Notice of the question must be given to the Monitoring Officer no later than close of business 4 clear working days before the day of the meeting (e.g. 5pm on a Thursday for a meeting on the following Thursday).

All questions will be circulated to members of the Cabinet and visiting Councillors and the public in advance of the meeting. There is no requirement of the questioner to read out the question, nor of the relevant Councillor to read out the answer if circulated. Where a written answer is circulated in advance, the relevant Cabinet Member may add to that answer orally at the meeting.

Questions must only be asked of:

- a Cabinet Member (where the matter falls within his or her portfolio) or
- the Leader of the Council or the Deputy Leader (about any aspect of Council policy and practice, service delivery or community interest) or

Councillors can ask up to two supplementary questions per Councillor at a meeting of the Cabinet.

A Councillor who is asked a question may

- nominate another Councillor to reply on his or her behalf;
- indicate that a written answer will be provided, in which case that written answer shall be provided no later than 5 clear working days after the day of the meeting, where practicable.

A question will not be accepted under this Rule if

- the answer would require exempt or confidential information to be divulged;
- the subject matter is about an application for a legal consent or permission where there is an alternative process to challenge the decision or to appeal against it or where the question/answer process might prejudice the proper consideration of such an application;
- it is about a matter which has already been lodged with the Council or with another statutory body as a formal complaint;
- is defamatory, frivolous or offensive;
- it contains an allegation against, or comments about, the conduct of individual Councillors or officers.

The text of written questions to Cabinet, and their written or published responses, should contain no reference to political groups/parties.

3.2.20 PETITIONS AND STATEMENTS FROM THE PUBLIC OR COUNCILLORS

Councillors and [members of the Public](#) have the right to put forward petitions and statements at a Cabinet meeting. The submission must be relevant to the Council and/or the Bath & North East Somerset area. Advance notice of all statements (including those supporting a petition) must be submitted in writing (this to include transmission by e mail) stating the subject matter and must be lodged with the Monitoring Officer no later than close of business 2 clear working days before the day of the meeting at which the submission is to be made (e.g. Monday 5pm for a meeting on a Thursday). Where possible, members of the public and Councillors are strongly encouraged to submit the text of their statement in advance to enable Members to read it before the meeting.

[Guidance](#) is available on drafting/submitting a statement.

There is no minimum number of signatures required for a petition.

A submission under this Rule will not be accepted if

- it seeks to address exempt or confidential matters;
- the subject matter is about an application for a legal consent or permission where there is an alternative process to challenge the decision or to appeal against it or where this Procedural Rule might prejudice the proper consideration of such an application or consent;
- it is about a matter which has already been lodged with the Council or with another statutory body as a formal complaint;
- is defamatory, frivolous or offensive;
- it contains an allegation against, or comments about, the conduct of individual Councillors or officers.

There is a limit of one submission per item per individual member of the Public.

There is a limit of one hour for items from the Public, extended at the Chair's discretion.

Individual submissions will be limited to a maximum of 3 minutes.

If the submission relates to a general matter not on the agenda for the meeting, it will be taken at the start of the meeting.

If it relates to an item on the agenda for the meeting, the person making the submission will be invited to address the meeting either at the start of the meeting or immediately before the item is debated.

Once the submission has been made, the Chair will invite Cabinet Members, if they require any clarification on the submission, to ask factual questions of the person making the submission. The meeting will then determine what action it wishes to take on the matters contained in the submission.

3.2.21 OTHER OPPORTUNITIES FOR VISITING PUBLIC AND COUNCILLORS TO SPEAK AT MEETINGS

During a meeting of the Cabinet, the Chair may extend an invitation to the public and Councillors in attendance to ask an oral question about, or to comment on, an agenda item. There is no requirement to have given advance notice. Where the Chair decides to exercise such discretion, the contribution from the public or from visiting Councillors will be sought before the meeting moves to a formal debate of the agenda item. The Chair has absolute discretion in such matters. In choosing whether or not to exercise this discretion the Chair shall have regard to the need for expediency and efficiency in the exercise of the meeting's business. See Rule 14 above regarding the right of a Chair of an Overview and Scrutiny body to speak at a meeting of the Cabinet when presenting a report from the relevant body.

3.2.22 EXCLUSION OF PRESS AND PUBLIC

If Council, the Cabinet, Committee or sub-Committee pass a resolution pursuant to Section 100A of the Local Government Act 1972 in accordance with Part 3.5 of this Constitution to exclude the press and public from the whole or part of their proceedings, then the effect of such resolution shall extend to Members of the Council present at the meeting who are not Members of the Committee or sub-Committee concerned: provided that, except when the Committee or sub-Committee are acting in a judicial or

quasi-judicial capacity, such Members of the Council shall be permitted to remain if invited to do so by resolution of the Committee or sub-Committee.

A Personal Assistant and/or nominated note taker for a disabled Councillor or other person entitled to remain at a meeting after it has passed a resolution under this Rule, shall also be entitled to remain, provided they have signed an undertaking in advance not to divulge the nature of any exempt or confidential business discussed or submitted.

3.2.23 DISORDERLY CONDUCT

If, at a meeting of the Cabinet, any Member of the Council, in the opinion of the Chair, misconducts her/himself by persistently disregarding the ruling of the Chair, or by behaving irregularly, improperly or offensively, or by wilfully obstructing the business of the meeting, the Chair or any other Member may move "that the Member named be not further heard", and the motion if seconded shall be put and determined immediately without discussion.

If the Member named continues the misconduct after a motion under the foregoing paragraph has been carried the Chair shall -

EITHER move "that the Member named leave the meeting" (in which case the motion shall be put and determined immediately without seconding or discussion):

OR adjourn the meeting for such period as s/he shall consider expedient.

In the event of general disturbance, which in the opinion of the Chair renders the due and orderly despatch of business impossible, the Chair in addition to any other power vested in her/him may, without question put, adjourn the meeting of the Council for such period as s/he in her/his discretion shall consider expedient.

Members shall at all times conduct themselves in a proper, efficient, effective and courteous manner affording due respect to the office of the Chair and to the formality of the Council meeting

3.2.24 DISTURBANCE BY MEMBERS OF THE PUBLIC

The provisions of Rule 3.2.22 (exclusion of the public and press) are without prejudice to any power of exclusion to suppress or prevent disorderly conduct or other misbehaviour at a meeting.

If a member of the public interrupts the proceedings at any meeting the Chair shall issue a warning. If the person continues the interruption, the Chair shall order the person's removal from the meeting room. In case of

general disturbance in any part of the chamber open to the public, the Chair may order that part of the meeting room to be cleared and / or may adjourn the meeting for such period as s/he in her/his discretion shall consider expedient.

3.2.25 CALL-IN OF EXECUTIVE DECISIONS

3.2.26 WHO MAY REQUEST A CALL-IN?

Elected Members who do not sit on the Cabinet have the right to request a “call-in” of an executive decision which has been made by the Cabinet, or a person or body to whom the power to make executive decisions has been delegated, but not yet implemented. These decisions could be made by

- the Cabinet
- a Cabinet Member,
- a committee of the Cabinet
- an Officer taking a key decision acting on delegated authority from the Cabinet
- an area committee
- a body under joint arrangements

Notice of the decision made shall be published to every Councillor and the publicity shall specify the period in which the “call-in” right may be exercised.

3.2.27 SUBMISSION OF A “CALL-IN” NOTICE

A notice requesting a “call-in” of an executive decision shall be in writing and signed by 9 or more elected Members (excluding Cabinet Members) making the request. The request shall be deposited with the Chief Executive. The request shall include individual signatures on the notice or electronic communications from individual Members signifying their support for the call-in. If a Member is unable to communicate in writing or electronically he/she may signify support by telephone but electronic or written confirmation must be received for the call-in to progress. The persons making the call-in request shall state the decision being called in, the decision maker, the date the decision was taken and shall give reasons for the call-in. No Member of the Council is entitled to sign up to more than 5 validated call-in requests in any Municipal Year.

The Chief Executive, and/or the Monitoring Officer, shall determine whether a call-in is valid (ie whether it has been received within 5 working days of the decision being published and requested by the appropriate number of Members and that the decision may properly be called in under the Constitution) and, if so, consult with Overview & Scrutiny Chairs to decide which Panel should consider it.

The Chief Executive, and/or the Monitoring Officer, shall make a report of

any validated call-in to a meeting of the relevant Overview and Scrutiny Panel which shall meet wholly in public within 14 working days of a valid call-in notice being verified.

A decision may only be called in once.

3.2.28 CONSIDERATION BY OVERVIEW AND SCRUTINY PANEL

The Overview and Scrutiny Panel shall consider the issues raised in the “call-in” request and the stated reasons for the request. They have the following courses of action open to them;

- To dismiss the call-in: the decision shall then take effect immediately;
- To refer the decision back to the decision-making person or body for reconsideration, setting out in writing the nature of the Panel’s concerns; or
- To refer the matter to Council to itself undertake the role of the Panel (which may necessitate an additional Council meeting to meet necessary timescales) [NB: the ultimate decision still remains with the original decision maker].

If the Panel consider any aspect of the decision requires further consideration, it must refer it back to the decision maker. If the call-in is dismissed, notification will be made to all interested parties and the original decision can be implemented. No amendments can be made to the decision [Six-month rule applies – Rule 3.2.8]. In total, the Panel shall ensure that the period of overview and scrutiny involvement in an individual call-in shall not exceed 21 working days.

3.2.29 CONSIDERATION BY DECISION MAKER

The person or body which made the decision shall consider the report of the Overview and Scrutiny Panel or Council and must;

- (a) confirm the original decision; or
- (b) make some changes to the original decision; or
- (c) make a different decision.

The decision maker may not ignore the report. The decision maker shall undertake this consideration within 10 working days from the date of the Overview and Scrutiny (or Council) meeting. The decision made by the decision maker after considering the report of the Overview and Scrutiny Panel shall be final and will be implemented immediately. There is no further opportunity for “call-in” of the decision.

3.2.30 EXCEPTIONS TO “CALL-IN”

The rights under this Procedural Rule shall not apply in the following circumstances:

- when the executive decision is urgent as defined in the Urgency Procedure Rules within this Constitution;
- the effect of the call-in alone would be to cause the Council to miss, or fail to comply with or fulfil, a deadline or duty;
- a decision taken under the General Exception and Special Urgency Access to Information Rules [Rules 3.5.15 and 3.5.16].

Decisions of quasi-judicial or Regulatory Committees, or proposals and decisions of the Leader acting in their capacity as Shareholder of a Local Authority Company owned or operated by the Council cannot be called-in.

[This flow chart illustrates the process: Call-in Procedure](#)

3.3 OVERVIEW & SCRUTINY & NON-EXECUTIVE PROCEDURE RULES

3.3.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS

At its Annual meeting, the Council will decide which Committees are needed to discharge its non-executive functions, act as consultative bodies, make appointments or hear appeals or complaints.

3.3.2 CHAIRING

The Chair(persons) will be allocated to political groups on a basis to be agreed by the Council.

3.3.3 SUBSTITUTES

At its Annual meeting, the Council will appoint all non-executive Members of a committee (subject to the rules on membership of such bodies) as eligible to be appointed as substitute for any committee in accordance with the wishes of that political group.

Substitute Members will have all the powers and duties of any ordinary Member of the committee but will not be able to exercise any special powers or duties exercisable by the Member for whom they are substituting.

Substitute Members may attend meetings in that capacity subject to Specific Scrutiny provision – [Rule 3.1.4 \(substitution\)](#)

to take the place of the ordinary Member for whom they are substituting;

- i. where the ordinary Member will be absent for the whole of the meeting (including any adjournment);
- ii. after notifying the Council Solicitor's representative of the intended substitution before the relevant meeting.

The effect of a substitute notice shall be that the Member giving notice of the substitution shall cease to be a Member of the relevant body for the duration of the meeting (including any adjournment of it to another date). The substitute Member shall be a full Member of the body for the same period. The Chief Executive will appoint a Member as a substitute in the event that s/he receives the required notice

3.3.4 CASUAL VACANCIES

The Chief Executive will use delegated powers to fill vacancies on these Panels, in consultation with the Chair of the relevant Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel, and in accordance with the wishes of the political group which has nomination rights to the vacancy.

3.3.5 DATES AND TIMES OF MEETINGS

The time and place of all Member meetings will be determined by the Monitoring Officer and notified in the summons.

3.3.6 SPECIAL OR EXTRAORDINARY MEETINGS

A special or extraordinary meeting may be called by the Chair. Alternatively, such a meeting may be called by at least one quarter of the Panel's membership signing a notice to the Chief Executive, setting out the business of the meeting and, if appropriate the time scale in which the meeting is to be held. The Chief Executive will convene the meeting as soon as practicable. The Chief Executive may also at theirtheir instigation convene a special or extraordinary meeting, having first consulted the relevant Chair and Vice chair.

3.3.7 JOINT MEETINGS

Committees may have joint meetings with other committees to discuss matters of mutual interest and to make decisions. The agenda for the joint meeting will make clear whether any decision making is involved at the meeting in the matters identified and will set out the decisions each committee is recommended to make. The joint meeting will appoint from amongst its number a Chair for the meeting. Any decision making must be by the committee responsible for the matter and will be recorded appropriately.

If necessary, the joint meeting may need to adjourn to enable the constituent bodies to elect their own Chair and make their decisions. A single set of minutes will be taken of the joint meeting and any decisions taken by its constituent committees.

3.3.8 APPOINTMENT OF SUB-COMMITTEES & SUB BODIES

Each Committee has the right to appoint sub committees and these may be given power to act on behalf of the Committee or may make recommendations to the Committee. Members of a sub committee may be drawn from outside the membership of the parent Committee (*with the exception of Licensing Sub-Committees for which the membership must be drawn from the main Licensing Committee and any other specific provisions*

set out in individual Terms of Reference). Committees will decide the size and membership of any sub committees and the proportionality of seats among political groups, subject to advice from the Chief Executive.

A Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel may appoint sub bodies. These must have a specified short - term task and a specified life span. Their establishment must be consistent with the overall work programme (See Rule 3.3.11 below).

3.3.9 SCRUTINY SPECIFIC PROVISIONS

3.3.10 MEMBERSHIP AND SUBSTITUTION

Members of all political groups (except Members of the Cabinet) may be Members of a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel. However, no Member may be involved in scrutinising a decision in which he/she has been directly involved.

Any Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel dealing wholly or in part with education matters, shall include in its membership voting representatives of Parent Governors and from the Church of England and Roman Catholic Dioceses. They may vote only on education matters but their views may be sought on other issues discussed at such a Panel. The number of such representatives to be determined by the relevant Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel, but will include at least two representatives of Parent Governors.

A Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel designated as the Crime and Disorder Panel under Police and Justice Act 2006 may include in its membership, voting representation from the Community Safety Responsible Authorities Group, subject to the Panel's discretion. They may vote only on crime and disorder matters, but their views may be sought on other issues discussed at such a body.

The membership of a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel shall, as far as practicable remain the same throughout the period of a specific review, whether within the programme of reviews or for unplanned work.

3.3.11 WORK PROGRAMME

A rolling programme of work for each Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel will be drawn up, with individual discretion as to the best means for achieving their individual work programme. Overview and Scrutiny Chairs and Vice Chairs will ensure work plan activities are maximised to the benefit of the whole Overview and Scrutiny function, within shared resources and available budgets.

The designated "Crime and Disorder Committee" will scrutinise the Community Safety Strategy as a minimum once each year, as required by the Police and Justice Act 2006.

3.3.12 MATTERS WITHIN THE REMIT OF MORE THAN ONE POLICY DEVELOPMENT AND SCRUTINY PANEL

Where a matter for consideration by a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel also falls within the remit of one or more other such Panels, the Monitoring Officer, on behalf of the Chief Executive, and in consultation with the Chairs and Vice Chairs of the relevant Policy Development and Scrutiny Panels will determine

- a) which such body will consider it, or
- b) which parts will be considered by which body or
- c) that the matter will be considered by a joint meeting of the relevant bodies.

3.3.13 POLICY REVIEW AND DEVELOPMENT

The role of Policy Development and Scrutiny Panels in relation to the development of the Council's Policy and Budget Framework is set out in the Policy and Budget Framework Procedural Rules. In relation to the development of the Council's approach to other matters, Policy Development and Scrutiny Panels may make proposals or comment to the Cabinet (or other bodies/persons exercising executive functions). Policy Development and Scrutiny Panels may hold enquiries and investigate the available options for future direction in policy development and may appoint advisers and assessors to assist them in this process.

3.3.14 REPORTS FROM POLICY DEVELOPMENT AND SCRUTINY PANELS

Once it has formed recommendations or proposals (either on its own volition or in response to a request), a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel will prepare a report of its findings and may submit it for initial consideration by either the Cabinet or the full Council – the choice is that of the Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel, unless specifically directed by the Council.

When a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel reports to the Council, the Chair shall give an opportunity to the relevant Cabinet Member(s) to comment on any recommendations contained in the report.

Where the report of the Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel contains recommendations or findings for consideration by a partner body/joint body

which performs functions on behalf of the Council or on behalf of the Cabinet, the Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel shall submit its report to that partner body/joint body instead of or as well as reporting to the Council or the Cabinet.

Any report which recommends a change to the Policy and Budget Framework will be made available to all Council Members.

Where a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel makes a recommendation that would involve the Council incurring additional expenditure (or reducing income) it has a responsibility to consider and / or advise on how the Council should fund that item from within its existing resources or the extent to which that should be seen as a priority for future years' budget considerations.

The Council or the Cabinet as appropriate shall always consider the report of the Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel at the next available meeting.

Minority reports: If a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel cannot agree on one single final outcome report then a minority report may be prepared and submitted by the dissenting Member(s). Officers supporting the particular Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel during the relevant review will offer factual information to the dissenting Member(s) in the production of their minority report.

3.3.15 RIGHTS OF ATTENDANCE AND COMMENT BY CHAIRS OF POLICY DEVELOPMENT AND SCRUTINY PANELS AND CABINET MEMBERS

The Chair (or nominee) and Vice Chair of a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel will have the right to attend any meeting of the Cabinet or other executive body at which a report from her/his Panel is being considered, whether it is in public or private session (for consideration of exempt items). The Chair (or nominee) shall also have the right to present the report to the meeting of the Cabinet.

Similarly, s/he shall have the right to present the findings of a report direct to a Cabinet Member prior to a decision being taken which falls within the portfolio of the Cabinet Member.

A Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel will itself have the power to comment on a planned decision as notified to it in the Cabinet Work Programme. A Chair or Vice Chair will have the right to comment directly to the proposed decision maker on any planned decision included in the emerging or published Cabinet Forward Plan.

A Cabinet Member shall have the right to attend any formal meeting of a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel at which an issue is being discussed which directly relates to a previous or proposed executive decision or policy issue falling within the Cabinet Member's portfolio. The Cabinet Member may speak at the discretion of the Chair of the Policy

Development and Scrutiny Panel.

3.1.16 RESPONSE OF COUNCIL AND THE CABINET TO REPORTS OF POLICY DEVELOPMENT AND SCRUTINY PANELS

When it receives a report and recommendations direct from a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel, the Council shall consider;

- what it has the power to do given the allocation of functions to the Council, the Cabinet and other Committees of the Council if relevant;
- what comments it wishes to offer to the Cabinet in referring any report to them for action – such comment may take the form of a clear view about the wishes of the Council on the matter which the Cabinet should take account of;
- requesting the Cabinet to report back to Council with an action plan for executive action on the findings of the report;
- making a decision on the findings of the report, where it has the power to do so;
- whether the report should be referred back to the Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel – with comments from the Council on matters to be further considered.

When it receives a report direct from a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel, the Cabinet shall publish its response within 2 months, having considered

- any recommendations contained in the report;
- referring the report to a Cabinet Member for consideration and report back direct to the Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel – where the report covers issues falling within the portfolio of a single Cabinet Member;
- any further Officer advice needed in order to determine its response to the issues raised;
- any impact on the Policy and Budget Framework (in which case the procedure as set out in Policy and Budget Framework Procedure Rule 3.7.2 shall apply for any agreed actions)
- an action plan to deliver on those recommendations that are accepted;

- reporting back to the relevant Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel on its decisions and the reasons and rationale for accepting or rejecting the Panel's recommendations.

and may invite the Council to comment on the matter before taking any action.

When a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel requests the Cabinet or a Cabinet Member to defer taking a decision pending further work by Overview and Scrutiny, the Cabinet or the Cabinet Member;

- shall seek advice from the relevant lead Officer and/or the Monitoring Officer/Chief Financial Officer as appropriate; and
- shall have regard to any statutory or other timetable relevant to the timing of the decision.

The final decision on the request is that of the Cabinet or Cabinet Member.

3.3.17 RIGHTS OF MEMBERS TO DOCUMENTS

In addition to their rights as Councillors, Members of Policy Development and Scrutiny Panels have the right to documents and to notice of meetings as set out in the Access to Information Procedure Rules.

3.3.18 MEMBERS AND OFFICERS ATTENDING

A Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel may require any Member of the Cabinet or a senior Officer (Chief Executive, Director or Divisional Director) to attend before it to explain any particular decision made or the extent to which the action taken implements Council policy.

3.3.19 ATTENDANCE BY OTHER INVITED PERSONS

Policy Development and Scrutiny Panels may invite any other persons to give evidence. These rights are in addition to Public speaking rights. Each Panel will make appropriate arrangements for the presentation of evidence, questioning of participants, time limits etc, subject to the Council approving supplementary rules or guidance if this is deemed to be necessary.

3.3.20 "CALL IN" OF EXECUTIVE DECISIONS

A Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel shall consider any validated "call-in" of an executive decision referred to it and shall report its findings thereon to the person or body who made the decision. The detailed ["call-in"](#) Rules are set out at the end of the Cabinet Procedure Rules within this

Constitution.

3.3.21 PREPARATION FOR MEETINGS OF POLICY DEVELOPMENT AND SCRUTINY PANELS

The Council Procedure Rules apply to meetings of the Policy Development & Scrutiny Panels in accordance with [Rule 3.1.43](#) together with the additional rules below.

3.3.22 OTHER OPPORTUNITIES FOR VISITING PUBLIC AND COUNCILLORS TO SPEAK AT MEETINGS

During a meeting of a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel, the Chair (person) may extend an invitation to the public and Councillors in attendance, to ask an oral question about, or to comment on, an agenda item. There is no requirement to have given advance notice. The Chair (person) has absolute discretion in such matters. In choosing whether or not to exercise this discretion the Chair (person) shall have regard to the need for expediency and efficiency in the exercise of the meeting's business. Where the Chair (person) decides to exercise such discretion the contribution from the public or from visiting Councillors will be sought before the meeting moves to a formal debate of the agenda item.

3.3.23 CONTACT WITH THE MEDIA

All media enquiries seeking an official response about the conduct of Panel business should be referred to the Communications and Marketing team, and the Democratic Services Manager and Panel Chair (and Vice Chair where practicable) kept informed.

3.3.24 DECLARATION OF A PARTY WHIP

When considering any matter referred to a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel by the Cabinet, or the review of any decision in respect of which a Member of a Policy Development and Scrutiny Panel is subject to a party whip, the Member must declare the existence of the whip, and the nature of it, before the commencement of the Panel's deliberations on the matter. The declaration, and the detail of the whipping arrangements, shall be recorded in the minutes of the meeting. The "party whip" means any instruction given by or on behalf of a political group to any Councillor who is a Member of that group as to how that Councillor shall speak or vote on any matter before the Council or any Committee or Sub-Committee, or the application or threat to apply any sanction by the group in respect of that Councillor should he/she speak or vote in any particular manner.

3.3.25 RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES OF VICE CHAIRS

The Vice Chair of any Policy development panel will have the right:

1. to attend meetings organised by the Lead director for any Panel or relevant Cabinet Member to discuss or plan agenda items, workloads, priorities and current/future issues or developments and receive information/briefing material relating to it;
2. to participate in meetings with all Chairs to discuss Policy Development & Scrutiny business.

3.4 URGENT BUSINESS AND ABSENCE PROCEDURE RULES

There are occasions when an urgent decision is needed, or the matter cannot wait for the next ordinary meeting of the Cabinet or appropriate Committee or Sub Committee (having delegated powers). When an urgent matter has arisen after the despatch of an appropriate agenda (ie of the Council, the Cabinet, a Committee or Sub Committee that has the power to consider the matter) the following procedure applies:

3.4.1 CHAIR'S RIGHT TO ADD ITEM TO AN AGENDA

The Chair of the Council, the Cabinet, an Overview and Scrutiny Panel or a Committee or Sub-Committee (as appropriate) has the authority to agree to take urgent items, not on the agenda, at meetings of the relevant Council, Cabinet, Committee or Sub-Committee.

The general authority referred to above is qualified in that items of business should not be raised at meetings without prior notice being given on the appropriate agenda unless:-

- a) the item has arisen between the compilation of the agenda and the date of the meeting.
- b) the item requires an urgent decision in the public interest which cannot be dealt with by other means; and
- c) by convention, the appropriate Committee or Sub-Committee Chair or (in the case of Council meetings) all Group Leaders are to be consulted on the matter and their views conveyed to the Chair before s/he makes a decision on the matter. The Chair will be guided by their views.

In all cases the reason for the urgency shall be clearly stated and recorded.

When there is a good reason why the decision cannot wait until the next ordinary meeting of the Council, the Cabinet or appropriate Committee or Sub Committee having the power to determine the matter, the following alternative procedures apply.

3.4.2 SPECIAL MEETING

A special meeting of the Council, the Cabinet, an Overview and Scrutiny Panel, a Committee or a Sub Committee can be called. The specific Rules governing this are as follows:

- [Council Procedure Rule 3.1.7](#)
- [Executive Procedure Rule 3.2.4](#)
- [Overview and Scrutiny & Non – Executive Procedure Rule 3.3.6](#)

The urgent matter to be considered may mean that the meeting has to be convened with less than five clear days' notice. Provision exists for this to happen under the Local Government Act 1972 (as amended).

3.4.3 CHIEF OFFICERS' ACTION – URGENT NON-EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE AND COUNCIL FUNCTIONS

Under this Rule, the Chief Executive or appropriate Director is given delegated power to take a decision which would normally be taken by a non-executive Committee or Sub Committee, or the Council, provided that:

- i. the matter is urgent;
- ii. the decision is within Council policy;
- iii. the action is taken after consultation with the Chair (person) of the Committee and Spokespersons (for non-executive matters) and with all the Political Group Leaders (for Council matters);
- iv. the action is reported for the information of the next available meeting of the appropriate Committee or Sub Committee or the Council.

3.4.4 URGENT EXECUTIVE DECISIONS

An executive decision may be taken by a Cabinet Member on an urgent matter within her/his portfolio, provided that the provisions of Access to Information Rules 3.5.15 or 3.5.16 are followed.

3.4.5 EMERGENCY ARRANGEMENTS

The Chief Executive is authorised to undertake any action s/he considers appropriate to address situations where it is neither practicable nor possible to effect the Council's normal procedures or arrangements for either executive or non-executive business. The action taken will be recorded and reported to the first available ordinary meeting of the Council or relevant other body.

3.4.6 ABSENCE PROCEDURE

In the absence of any of the Cabinet Members, Chairs or Officers referred to in any of the above Urgency Rules, the urgent or emergency action described may be taken by a nominated deputy of the Councillor or Officer. Any reference in this Constitution to the Leader of the Council, Chair of an Overview and Scrutiny Panel or Committee etc or any other office held by a Member of the Council, or to a named Officer, shall be taken also to refer to any nominated deputy (or deputy where specified in this Constitution) in that

role. Any such nominated deputy is hereby authorised to act fully in the role, subject to any specific statutory provision.

3.5 ACCESS TO INFORMATION PROCEDURE RULES

3.5.1 SCOPE

These Rules apply to all formally convened meetings of the Council, its Committees and their sub committees, Overview and Scrutiny Panels and sub bodies thereof, Area Committees and their sub committees (if any), the Standards Committee, the Cabinet and its committees (together called “meetings”). It does not apply to proposals and decisions of the Leader acting in their capacity as Shareholder of a Local Authority Company owned or operated by the Council.

3.5.2 ADDITIONAL RIGHTS TO INFORMATION

These Rules do not affect any more specific rights to information contained elsewhere in this Constitution or the law.

3.5.3 RIGHTS TO ATTEND MEETINGS

Members of the public may attend all of the formal meetings, subject only to the exceptions in these rules.

3.5.4 NOTICE OF MEETINGS

The Council will give at least five (5) working days’ public notice of any formal meeting by posting details of the meeting at all main Council Offices, “Council Connect” sites, in public libraries and on the Council’s web site/Internet.

3.5.5 ACCESS TO AGENDA AND REPORTS BEFORE THE MEETING

The Council will make copies of the agenda and reports open to the public available for inspection at least five (5) clear working days before the meeting. If an item is added to the agenda later, the revised agenda will be open to inspection from the time the item was added to the agenda. Where reports are prepared after the summons to a meeting has been sent out, the

Chief Executive will make each such report available to the public as soon as the report is completed and sent to Councillors. The agenda papers for a meeting of the Cabinet will be made available to Chairs of Overview and Scrutiny Panels and to all other Members of the Council.

The forward agenda plan for key and other executive decisions, covering a 4 month period, will be publicly accessible on the Council's website.

3.5.6 SUPPLY OF COPIES

The Council will supply copies of or make available access to:

- a) any agenda and reports which are open to public inspection;
- b) any further statements or particulars necessary to indicate the nature of the items in the agenda;
- c) a list of questions asked by the public and Councillors in accordance with this Constitution and answers given either at the meeting or in writing subsequently; and
- d) if the Chief Executive thinks fit, copies of any other documents supplied to Councillors in connection with an item to any person on payment of a charge for postage and any other costs.

All such documents will normally be published on the Council's web site as soon as possible after the meeting.

3.5.7 ACCESS TO MINUTES ETC. AFTER THE MEETING

The Council will make available copies of the following for six years after a meeting:

- a) the minutes of the meeting (or in the case of individual Cabinet Member decisions, the record of the decision taken) excluding any part of the minutes of proceedings which disclose exempt or confidential information (as defined in Rule 3.5.10);
- b) a summary of any proceedings not open to the public where the minutes open to inspection would not provide a reasonably fair and coherent record in so far as such a record can be written without disclosing the exempt or confidential information;
- c) the agenda for the meeting;
- d) reports relating to items when the meeting was open to the public.

After a meeting any person will be entitled to request access to any part of

the minutes or proceedings which were not open to the public by virtue of being confidential or exempt information as defined in Rule 3.5.10. (Elected Members have some additional rights as defined in Rule 3.5.23.) All requests are to be made in line with Freedom of Information Act requirements, and will be assessed according to the Act and the Council's Freedom of Information policy and procedure.

3.5.8 BACKGROUND PAPERS

The author of every report will identify in the report, those documents (called background papers) relating to the subject matter of the report which in their opinion:

- a) disclose any facts or matters on which the report or an important part of the report is based; and
- b) which have been relied on to a material extent in preparing the report but does not include published works or those which disclose exempt or confidential information (as defined in Rule 3.5.10).

The Council will make available for public inspection for four years after the date of the meeting one copy of each of the documents identified as a background paper.

3.5.9 SUMMARY OF PUBLIC RIGHTS

The Public's rights to attend meetings, make submissions to meetings or Cabinet Members and to inspect documents is set out in [Part 1 of the Constitution – Resident Rights & Responsibilities](#).

3.5.10 EXCLUSION OF ACCESS BY THE PUBLIC TO MEETINGS

(a) Confidential information: The meeting must resolve to exclude the public whenever it is likely in view of the nature of the business to be transacted or the nature of the proceedings that confidential information would be disclosed.

(b) Exempt information: The meeting may resolve to exclude the public whenever it is likely in view of the nature of the business to be transacted or the nature of the proceedings that exempt information would be disclosed.

Where the meeting will determine any person's civil rights or obligations, or adversely affect their possessions, Article 6 of the Human Rights Act 1998 establishes a presumption that the meeting will be held in public unless a private hearing is necessary for one of the reasons specified in that Article.

Meaning of confidential information:

- a) Information furnished to the Council by a Government department upon terms which forbid the disclosure of the information to the public;
- b) Information the disclosure of which to the public is prohibited by or under any enactment or by the order of a court.

Meaning of exempt information: Exempt information means information for the time being defined in the Local Authorities (Access to Information) (Variation) Order 2006 which amends previous provision made in Part 1 Schedule 12A of the Local Government Act 1972. The categories of exempt information and relevant qualifications are set out in the table below:

Category	Qualifications
1. Information relating to any individual	
2. Information which is likely to reveal the identity of an individual	
3. Information relating to the financial or business affairs of any particular person (including the authority holding that information)	Information falling within this paragraph is not exempt information by virtue of this paragraph if it is required to be registered under – (a) the Companies Act 2006 (b) the Friendly Societies Act 1974 (c) the Friendly Societies Act 1992 (d) the Industrial and Provident Societies Act 1965 to 1978 (e) the Building Societies Act 1986, or (f) the Charities Act 2011
4. Information relating to any consultations or negotiations, or contemplated consultations or negotiations, in connection with any labour relations matters arising between the authority or a Minister of the Crown and employees of, or office holders under, the authority	
5. Information in respect of which a claim for legal professional privilege could be maintained in legal proceedings	
6. Information which reveals that the authority proposes – (a) to give under any enactment a notice under or by virtue of which requirements are imposed on a person, or (b) to make an order or direction under any enactment	

7. Information relating to any action taken or to be taken in connection with the prevention, investigation or prosecution of crime	Where a meeting of a standards committee, or a sub-committee of a standards committee, is convened to consider a matter referred under the provisions of section 60(2) or (3), 64(2), 70(4) or (5) or 71(2) of the Local Government Act, the provisions of Parts 1 to 3 of Schedule 12A shall apply as if, after paragraph 7 of that Schedule, the following descriptions of exempt information were inserted: 7A – Information which is subject to any obligation of confidentiality; 7B – Information which relates in any way to matters concerning national security; 7C – The deliberations of a standards committee or of a sub-committee of a standards committee established under the provisions of Part 3 of the Local Government Act 2000 in reaching any finding on a matter referred under the provisions of section 60(2) or (3) , 64(2), 70(4) or (5) or 71(2) of that Act

Information is not exempt information if it relates to proposed development for which the local planning authority may grant itself planning permission pursuant to regulation 3 of the Town and Country Planning General Regulations 1992.

Information which falls within any sections 1 to 7 above; and is not prevented from being exempt by virtue of the qualification in section 8 or the qualification to section 3 is exempt information if, and so long as, in all the circumstances of the case, the public interest in maintaining the exemption outweighs the public interest in disclosing the information.

3.5.11 EXCLUSION OF ACCESS BY THE PUBLIC TO REPORTS

If the Chief Executive thinks fit, the Council may exclude access by the public to exempt reports or papers which in their opinion relate to items during which, in accordance with Rule 3.5.10, the meeting is likely not to be open to the public. Such reports will be marked "Not for publication" together with a description of the category of information likely to be disclosed. This shall also apply to reports being considered by Executive Members under their

delegated executive responsibilities. *(Note: If a meeting agrees to take in open session an item that was included on the agenda as a possible exempt item, the document relating to that item in whole or in part may be made available to the public at the meeting and will be published.)*

3.5.12 APPLICATION OF RULES TO THE CABINET

Rules 3.5.13 – 3.5.24 below apply to the Cabinet and to any of its sub-committees . If the Cabinet or its committees meet formally to take a key decision then it must also comply with Rules 3.5.1 – 3.5.11 above unless Rule 3.5.15 (general exception) or Rule 3.5.16 (special urgency) apply. A key decision is as defined in the [Glossary](#) of this Constitution.

3.5.13 PROCEDURE BEFORE TAKING “KEY” DECISION

Subject to Rule 3.5.15 (general exception) and Rule 3.5.16 (special urgency), a key decision may not be taken unless:

- a) a notice (called here a “forward plan”) has been published in connection with the matter in question;
- b) at least 28 calendar days have elapsed since the publication of the item in the forward plan; and
- c) where the decision is to be taken at a meeting of the Cabinet or at a meeting of one of its committees, notice of the meeting has been given in accordance with Rule 3.5.4 (Notice of meetings).

3.5.14 THE FORWARD PLAN

A forward plan will be prepared on behalf of the Leader of the Council by the Council Solicitor.

Contents of forward plan: The forward plan will contain matters which the Chief Executive has reason to believe will be subject of a key executive decision to be taken by the Cabinet, a committee of the Cabinet, a Cabinet Member, an Officer, an Area Committees or under joint arrangements in the course of the discharge of an executive function during the period covered by the plan.

The forward plan will also include non-key executive decisions.

For all entries, the forward plan will describe the following particulars in so far as the information is available or might reasonably be obtained:

- a) the matter in respect of which a decision is to be made;
- b) where the decision taker is an individual, their name and title, if any and where the decision taker is a body, its name and details of membership;
- c) the date on which, or the period within which, the decision will be taken;
- d) the steps any person might take who wishes to make representations to the Cabinet or decision taker about the matter in respect of which the decision is to be made, and the date by which those steps must be taken; and
- e) a list of the documents likely to be submitted to the decision taker for consideration in relation to the matter.

The forward plan must be made available for inspection by the public at the designated Council offices and on the website at least 28 clear days before the date that the first key decision shown on it is due to be made.

Exempt and confidential information: Exempt or confidential information will not be included in a forward plan, but the forward plan will contain a summary of the nature of any private business to be considered.

The Forward Plan will include information 28 days before an exempt item is taken at the Cabinet about why the item will be discussed in private. It will also give details about how to make representations about why that part of the meeting should be open to the public. At least 5 days before the meeting, the Council should issue a notice including details of any representations received and the Council's response to them.

3.5.15 GENERAL EXCEPTION

If a matter which is likely to be a key decision has not been included in the forward plan then, subject to the urgency provisions of Rule 3.5.16, the decision may still be taken if -

- a) the decision must be taken by such a date that it is impracticable to defer the decision until it has been published in the forward plan for 28 days before the decision is required;
- b) the Chief Executive has informed all Members of the Council of the matter about which the decision is to be made;
- c) the Chair of the relevant Overview and Scrutiny body has been informed;

- d) the Chief Executive has made copies of that notice available to the public at the offices of the Council;
- e) at least 5 working days have elapsed since the Chief Executive complied with (b) and (c); and
- f) the advice of the Monitoring Officer and, if relevant, Chief Financial Officer has been sought on the issue and taken into account.

Where such a decision is taken collectively, it must be taken in public unless there are exempt or confidential matters to be considered at the meeting.

A decision taken under this Rule cannot be called in.

3.5.16 SPECIAL URGENCY

If by virtue of the date by which a decision must be taken, Rule 3.5.15 (general exception) cannot be followed, then the decision can only be taken if the decision taker (if an individual) or the chair of the body making the decision

- a) obtains the comments of the Chief Executive, the Monitoring Officer or where appropriate the Chief Financial Officer;

and

- b) obtains the agreement of the Chair of the relevant Overview and Scrutiny body that the taking of the decision cannot reasonably be deferred.

The Chair of the Overview and Scrutiny body will consider the advice of the Chief Executive, the Monitoring Officer and/or, where relevant, the Chief Financial Officer before giving agreement.

The request for special urgency, and the agreement of the Chair of the relevant Overview and Scrutiny body, including the advice of the Chief Executive, the Monitoring Officer or the Chief Financial Officer, will be recorded and made public without disclosing exempt or confidential information.

A decision taken under this Rule cannot be called in.

Reports on special urgency decisions: In any event the Cabinet will submit to Political Group Leaders, within 7 working days, details of any executive decisions taken in the circumstances set out in Rule 3.5.16

(Special Urgency).

The Leader will submit to Council annually a report containing details of all decisions taken under Special Urgency provisions.

3.5.17 REPORT TO COUNCIL - KEY DECISIONS

When an Overview and Scrutiny Panel can require a report: If an Overview and Scrutiny Panel thinks that a key decision has been taken which was not:

- a) treated as a key decision; or
- b) the subject of the general exception procedure (Rule 3.5.15); or
- c) the subject of an agreement with the Chair of the relevant Overview and Scrutiny Panel under the Special Urgency Rule 3.5.16; or
- d) the subject of any emergency procedure

that body may require the Cabinet to submit a report to the Council within such reasonable time as it may specify.

The power to require a report rests with the Overview and Scrutiny Panel but it is also delegated to the Chief Executive, who shall require such a report on behalf of the Overview and Scrutiny Panel when so requested by any 10 Members of the Council, other than Members of the Cabinet.

The Cabinet will prepare a report for submission to the next ordinary meeting of the Council.

However, if the next ordinary meeting of the Council is within 10 working days of

- receipt of the written notice by 10 Members, or
- the resolution of the relevant Overview and Scrutiny Panel,

then the report may be submitted to the meeting after that. The report to Council will set out particulars of the decision, the body making the decision, and if the body is of the opinion that it was not a key decision the reasons for that opinion. The report will contain the advice of the Monitoring Officer on whether the decision was or was not a key decision or whether the criteria set down in Rule 3.5.15 or 16 applied.

3.5.18 RECORD OF DECISIONS

After any meeting of the Cabinet or any of its committees, whether held in

public or private, the Monitoring Officer will produce or require the production of a record of every decision taken at that meeting as soon as reasonably practicable (usually within 2 working days of the meeting). The record will include a statement of the reasons for each decision and any alternative options considered and rejected at that meeting. The decision notice will also include a record of conflicts of interests declared by Cabinet Members, and any dispensations granted by the Monitoring Officer.³

This record (ie the minutes of the meeting) will normally be published with the weekly schedule referred to in Access to Information Rule 3.5.21 below.

3.5.19 EXECUTIVE MEETINGS RELATING TO MATTERS WHICH ARE NOT KEY DECISIONS

There will be no distinction made between the categories of business to be considered by the Cabinet, in terms of its relevance or not to “key” decisions. All formal meetings of the Cabinet will be held in public.

3.5.20 DECISIONS BY INDIVIDUAL CABINET MEMBERS

Where an individual Cabinet Member receives a report which s/he intends to take into account in making any key or other decision, then s/he will not make the decision until at least 5 clear working days after the publication by the Chief Executive of that report and the proposed decision. Information about such reports and proposed decisions shall be published within such a time table as will allow a period of 5 clear working days to elapse before the individual Cabinet Member makes her or his decision (see Rule 3.5.21 below).

As soon as reasonably practicable after an executive decision has been taken by an individual Cabinet Member, s/he will provide, or arrange to provide, full details to the Chief Executive who will publish a record of the decision, a statement of the reasons and rationale for the decision and any alternative options considered and rejected. The decision notice will also include a record of conflicts of interests declared by Cabinet Members, and any dispensations granted by the Monitoring Officer.⁴ This record will be published in accordance with the provisions of Rule 3.5.21.

The provisions of Rules 3.5.7 (Access to minutes) and 3.5.8 (Background Papers) will also apply to the making of decisions by individual Cabinet

³ The power to grant dispensations was delegated from the Head of Paid Service to the Monitoring Officer by resolution of Council on 8th November 2012

⁴ As 1

Members. This does not require the disclosure of exempt or confidential information.

3.5.21 PUBLICATION RELATING TO EXECUTIVE DECISIONS

All proposed decisions, and actual decisions taken by individual Cabinet Members, by Officers (in respect of key decisions only) or decisions taken by the Cabinet itself, will be published by the Chief Executive. Publication will include details of the reasons and rationale for any decision, options considered and rejected, consultation undertaken and background papers open to inspection. This process is known as the “Weekly List” process.

Proposed decisions of individual Cabinet Members cannot be taken until a period of at least 5 working days has elapsed after the date of publication. This is to ensure an opportunity is given for views to be expressed by interested persons. This publication period will also serve as a requisition period within which any individual Cabinet Member may give written notice requiring the Chief Executive to place a proposed decision by a Cabinet Member instead on the next available agenda for the full Cabinet. *(Such a notice will have the effect of cancelling the delegated power of the individual Cabinet Member to make the decision on that matter – See Executive Procedure Rules.)*

Decisions taken by the Cabinet or an individual Cabinet Member or an Officer (in the case of a “key” decision) cannot be implemented until a period of 5 clear working days has elapsed after the date of publication of the decision taken. This is to allow for the possibility of “call-in”. The call-in rules (and exemptions) are set out in Section 3.2.24 of the Constitution.

3.5.22 OVERVIEW AND SCRUTINY COMMITTEES ACCESS TO DOCUMENTS

Subject to the limits set out below, an Overview and Scrutiny Panel will be entitled to copies of any document which is in the possession or control of the Cabinet or its committees or officers and which contains material relating to

- any business transacted at a public meeting of the Cabinet or its committees; or
- any decision taken by an individual Cabinet Member

An Overview and Scrutiny Panel will not be entitled to

- any document that is in draft form; or
- any part of a document that contains exempt or confidential information within the meaning described at Rule 10 above, unless that

information is relevant to an action or decision they are reviewing or scrutinising or intend to review or scrutinise.

3.5.23 ADDITIONAL RIGHTS OF ACCESS FOR MEMBERS

Common Law Rights of Elected Members:

Members of the Council have a common law right of access to all written information in the possession of the Council if a need to know can be demonstrated in order to perform their duties as a Member.

Where there is doubt as to whether or not it is reasonably necessary for a Member to have access to particular information, a statutory right of access must be identified for disclosure to occur.

Statutory Rights of Elected Members (Local Government Act 1972 and Related Regulations):

Access to information prior to Council/Committee meetings – under the Local Government Act 1972 and related regulations, any document which is either:

- a) in the possession or under the control of the Council and contains material relating to any business to be transacted at a meeting of the Council or a committee or sub committee of the Council, or
- b) in the possession or under the control of the Cabinet and contains material relating to any business to be transacted at any public meeting,

shall be open to inspection by any Member of the Council, unless it contains exempt information falling within paragraphs 1, 2, 4, 5 or 7 of the categories of exempt information listed in Rule 3.5.10. Such information can also be withheld from inspection by a Member to the extent that any it contains information about the financial or business affairs of any person which relates to any terms proposed or not be proposed by the authority in the course of negotiations for a contract.

Access to information following private Cabinet meetings or individual key decisions – also under the regulations any document which is in the possession or under the control of the Executive of a local authority; and contains material relating to:

- (i) any business transacted at a private meeting
- (ii) any decision made by an individual Member in accordance with Executive arrangements or
- (iii) any key decision made by an officer in accordance with Executive arrangements

shall be available for inspection by any Member of the Council when the meeting concludes, or where an Executive decision is made by an individual Member or a key decision made by an officer, immediately after the decision has been made, unless the material contains exempt information falling within paragraphs 1, 2, 4, 5 or 7 of the categories of exempt information listed in Rule 3.5.10. Such information can also be withheld from inspection by a Member to the extent that any it contains information about to the financial or business affairs of any person which relates to any terms proposed or to be proposed by the authority in the course of negotiations by a contract.

The Local Government Act 1972 and related regulations do not offer any additional statutory right of access for Members to documents which are in the possession or under the control of the Council and contain material relating to any business which has already been transacted at a meeting of the Council or a committee or sub-committee of the Council. Members will need to rely on the general public's right of access to such information or any right to request such information as they may have in terms of the Freedom of Information Act set out below.

Freedom of Information Act – Where the Local Government Act 1972 and related regulations do not identify a statutory route of access, an Elected Member may request access to Council information under the provisions of the Freedom of Information Act 2000. These requests will be accessed according to the Act and the Council's Freedom of Information policy and procedure.

3.5.24 KEY DECISIONS BY INDIVIDUAL OFFICERS – RECORD OF DECISION

As soon as reasonably practicable after a key decision has been taken by an officer, usually within 2 working days of the decision, he/she will prepare a record of the decision, a statement of the reasons / rationale for it and any alternative options considered and rejected. The "Weekly List" shall include information about key decisions made by Officers. The provisions of Rules 3.5.7 and 3.5.8 (inspection of documents after meetings) will also apply to the making of key decisions by Officers. This does not require the disclosure of exempt or confidential information.

3.5.25 DECISIONS BY INDIVIDUAL OFFICER DELEGATED FROM CABINET – RECORD OF DECISION

When Cabinet delegates a specific responsibility to an officer to undertake a course of action, the officer **must** record the date and details of the decision on the Officer delegated decision register.

3.5.26 DECISIONS BY OFFICERS

Certain decisions by officers on matters that are non-executive functions need to be recorded. These are decisions;

- a) that have been delegated to the officer under a specific express authorisation, and
- b) that have been delegated under a general authorisation and the effect of the decision is to grant a permission or licence, affect the rights of an individual or to award a contract or incur expenditure which materially affects the Council's financial position.

[Administrative matters are not included.]

Record of decision - The record must include the following information;

- a) The date of the decision;
- b) The decision itself;
- c) The reasons for taking that decision;
- d) Details of any alternative options considered and rejected;
- e) Details of any declarations of interest made by any Councillor consulted by the officer or declared when granting the specific authorisation to take the decision.

It is the duty of the officer taking the decision to make the record as soon as reasonably practicable after the decision has been taken. The record and any background papers must be made available to the public and must be put on the Council's website. The record must be kept for 6 years.

3.5.27 ACCESSIBLE FORMATS

Any document required to be produced under the provisions of this Constitution, or any document produced in connection with this Constitution, will be produced in accessible formats where such a format is specifically requested or is considered reasonable by the Head of Legal and Democratic Services. In making such documents available, the Head of Legal and Democratic Services will have regard to corporate standards for the production of accessible material.

3.6 EMPLOYMENT PROCEDURE RULES

3.6.1 RECRUITMENT AND APPOINTMENT

(a) Declarations

The Council will require any candidate for employment to state in writing on their application form whether they have any relationship; e.g. via family, kinship etc to an existing Councillor or officer of the Council, or of the partner of such persons.

(b) Seeking support for appointment.

i) the Council will disqualify any applicant who directly or indirectly seeks the support of any Councillor for any appointment with the Council. This will be stated in recruitment information.

ii) no Councillor will seek support for any person for any appointment with the Council. This does not preclude a Member from giving a written testimonial of a candidate's ability, experience or character for submission to the Council with an application for appointment. However, the Member will not give such a testimonial if s/he takes part in any stage of the appointment process.

3.6.2 RECRUITMENT OF HEAD OF PAID SERVICE AND CHIEF OFFICERS

Where the Council proposes to appoint a Head of Paid Service or a Chief Officer [i.e. Chief Operating Officer & Directors] and it is not proposed that the appointment be made exclusively from among their existing officers, the Council will draw up a statement specifying

- a) the duties of the post concerned; and
- b) any qualifications or qualities to be sought in the person to be appointed;
- c) make arrangements for the post to be advertised in such a way as is likely to bring it to the attention of persons who are qualified to apply for it; and
- d) make arrangements for a copy of the statement mentioned in (a) to be sent to any person on request.

3.6.3 APPOINTMENT OF HEAD OF PAID SERVICE; MONITORING OFFICER AND CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER

The full Council will approve the appointment of the Head of Paid Service,

the Monitoring Officer and the Chief Financial Officer following the recommendation of such an appointment by the Restructuring Implementation Committee of the Council. That Committee must include at least one Member of the Cabinet for this purpose.

The full Council may only make or approve the appointment of the Head of Paid Service where no well-founded objection has been made by any Member of the Cabinet.

(The provisions of this Procedural Rule reflect a mandatory Regulation. It is not permitted therefore to suspend this Rule)

3.6.4 APPOINTMENT OF CHIEF OPERATING OFFICER AND OTHER DIRECTORS

The Restructuring Implementation Committee of the Council will appoint the Chief Operating Officer and other Directors reporting directly to the Chief Executive (and any deputy for such a post). That Committee must include at least one Member of the Cabinet when dealing with any such an appointment.

An offer of employment as Chief Operating Officer or Director post (or the deputy of such a post) shall only be made where no well-founded objection from any Member of the Cabinet has been received.

(The provisions of this Procedural Rule reflect a mandatory Regulation. It is not permitted therefore to suspend this Rule)

3.6.5 APPOINTMENT OF HEADS OF SERVICE AND SENIOR MANAGERS

The appointment of Heads of Service and Senior Managers reporting to a Director is the responsibility of the relevant Director or their nominee, and may not be made by Councillors.

An offer of employment as a Head of Service or a Senior Manager reporting to a Director (or the deputy of such a post) shall only be made where no well-founded objection from any Member of the Cabinet has been received.

3.6.6 APPOINTMENT OF OFFICERS BELOW HEAD OF SERVICE LEVEL

The appointment of Officers below the level of a Director, Head of Service or a Senior Manager reporting to a Director, is the responsibility of the relevant Director, Head of Service or Senior Manager or their nominee. Such an appointment shall not be made by Councillors.

3.6.7 APPOINTMENT OF ASSISTANTS TO POLITICAL GROUPS

Section 9 of the Local Government and Housing Act, 1989 requires a

Council's Standing Orders [now these procedural Rules] to include certain provisions relating to the appointment of assistants to political groups.

Under these legal provisions, these Rules provide that each Political Group making up the membership of the Council shall be allocated one post of Political Assistant. The purpose of this post is to provide assistance to the Members of the Group in discharging any of their functions as Members of the Council. The following conditions apply:

- a) The Council must first agree to allocate such a post to each political group that qualifies for one (Note: It is open to a political group to decline to have such a post, even though it is entitled to have one)
- b) The Council is not legally allowed to allocate such a post to a political group which does not satisfy the legal criteria for a post; and
- c) No political group is allowed more than one such post.

Any allocation or appointment to these posts shall be subject to the provisions contained in Section 9 of the Local Government and Housing Act, 1989.

Such posts shall be filled from time to time by the Head of Legal and Democratic Services in accordance with the wishes of the relevant political group.

(Non-statutory provisions from here on)

Assistants to political groups have the same rights of access to information as the Councillors for whom they work, subject to legal provisions.

Assistants will be expected to maintain confidentiality when private business is discussed with them or in their presence. They will be permitted to attend private sessions of meetings on the same basis as Councillors, subject to legal provisions.

Assistants are employees of the Council, but are accountable to the relevant Political Group Leader or other nominated Group Members in terms of day to day operational management and workload.

The above non-statutory provisions shall apply also to the appointment by the Head of Legal and Democratic Services of Political Group Support Officers, where such posts are approved by the Council to support political groups that would otherwise not qualify for one of the statutory Political Assistant posts.

3.6.8 DISCIPLINARY ACTION AND DISMISSAL

All Chief Officers including the Head of Paid Service, Monitoring Officer and Chief Financial Officer may be suspended whilst an investigation takes place into alleged misconduct. That suspension will be on full pay.

3.6.9 INDEPENDENT PERSONS.

The Head of Paid Service, Monitoring Officer and Chief Financial Officer (“relevant officers”) may not be dismissed by the Council unless the following procedure is complied with:

- a) The Council must appoint an [Independent Persons Panel](#) , with a view to appointing at least two such persons.
- b) The Council must appoint a Panel at least 20 working days before a meeting (“the relevant meeting”) of the Council to consider whether or not to approve a proposal to dismiss a relevant officer of the Council
- c) Before taking a vote at the relevant meeting on whether or not to approve such a dismissal the Council must take into account, in particular:
 - Any advice, views or recommendations of the Panel;
 - The conclusions of any investigation into the proposed dismissal; and
 - Any representations from the relevant officer

(The provisions of this Procedural Rule reflect a mandatory Regulation. It is not permitted therefore to suspend this Rule).

Dismissal of, and taking disciplinary action, against any employee of the Council other than the Head of Paid Service, Monitoring Officer or Chief Finance Officer will be the responsibility of a Chief Officer, Deputy Chief Officer or appropriate senior officer nominated by a Chief Officer.

3.6.10 CONSULTATION WITH CABINET

For each appointment to or dismissal to a post referred to in Rules 3.6.3 to 3.6.5 above, neither an offer of employment of such an Officer, nor the giving of notice of dismissal may be made until every Member of the Cabinet has been notified by the Chief Executive or his nominee of the proposed appointment or dismissal and given a period within which to make objections to the proposal through the Leader of the Council.

If the Leader of the Council informs the Chief Executive or his nominee that

s/he or another Executive Councillor has an objection then its basis must be specified and the Committee or Officer making the appointment or proposing the dismissal must consider the objection and may only proceed if s/he considers it not to be material or not well founded.

If the Leader indicates to the Chief Executive or his nominee that neither s/he nor any other Executive Councillor has any objection to the making of the offer of appointment, or if the Leader fails to give an indication by the close of the period given for objections, the offer or notice may be implemented.

3.7 POLICY AND BUDGET FRAMEWORK PROCEDURE RULES

3.7.1 THE FRAMEWORK FOR EXECUTIVE DECISIONS

The Council will be responsible for the adoption of its Policy and Budget Framework. Once the Policy and Budget Framework is in place, it will be the responsibility of the Cabinet and/or officers to implement it and, subject to the provisions below, to act in accordance with it.

3.7.2 PROCESS FOR DEVELOPING THE POLICY AND BUDGET FRAMEWORK AND THE DEFINITION OF THE FRAMEWORK

The Cabinet will publicise, by including in the forward plan and by other methods, a timetable for making proposals to the Council for the adoption of any plan, strategy or budget that forms part of the Policy and Budget Framework and its arrangements for consultation after publication of those initial proposals. The plans and strategies which form the Policy and Budget Framework are:

- Development Plan Documents (including the Local Plan/and any neighbourhood plans); and all plans and alterations which together comprise the Development plan
- Children and Young Peoples' Plan
- Youth Justice Plan
- Local Transport Plan
- Licensing Authority Policy Statement
- Crime & Disorder Reduction Strategy

For each of the plans and strategies that form the Policy and Budget framework, the Council shall be given an opportunity informally to discuss the emerging plan/strategy and related issues in advance of the Cabinet considering its formal recommendations to the Council.

The consultation process on any of the above plans and strategies will include an invitation to the relevant Overview and Scrutiny Panel to comment. It shall be open to the relevant Overview and Scrutiny Panel to comment as part of the Council's informal consideration of the emerging plan or during the formal consultation period. At the end of the consultation period, the Cabinet will draw up firm proposals having regard to the responses to that consultation. Failure of an Overview and Scrutiny Panel to respond or offer views shall not of itself cause any delay in the programming of a particular decision on such matters through the Cabinet and the Council.

The report of the Cabinet to the Council will identify any views given through consultation and the response of the Cabinet to the points raised in such views. Once the Cabinet has devised firm proposals, the Chief Executive will refer them at the earliest opportunity to the Council for decision. The Council must then consider whether it has any objection to the Cabinet's proposals. Objections will take the form of suggestions to amend the proposals by the substitution of different proposals, the deletion of proposals or the insertion of new proposals.

The majority of those present and voting may pass a resolution objecting to the Cabinet's proposals. Such resolution will indicate the nature of the objections and will constitute an instruction to the Leader of the Council requiring the Cabinet to re-consider their proposals in the light of those objections.

On receipt of details of the objections, the Council Leader may, on behalf of the Cabinet:

- a) revise the proposals and notify the Council of the reasons for the revision; or
- b) inform the Council that the Cabinet disagrees with the Council's objections and explain the reasons for the disagreement.

Once a period of at least 5 clear working days has elapsed following the notification to the Leader of the Council of the objections (in effect starting with the working day after the first Council meeting) the Council will reconvene to consider the Cabinet's response to the objections. When making its final decision on the proposal (which will be by a simple majority) Council will take into account any amendments the Cabinet has made to the proposals and the reasons for such amendments, together with the reasons for any disagreement the Cabinet has with the other objections notified to it.

The Council will then proceed to decide on the proposal in the normal way. The Council will be free to amend the proposals put forward only insofar as the substance of its objections to them has been notified to the Cabinet in accordance with the preceding paragraphs.

It will be a matter for the Council to decide whether or not any changes that are to be proposed to the recommendations put forward by the Cabinet are of such significance as to amount to “objections” to the Cabinet’s proposals. The Chief Executive, following consultation with the Monitoring Officer, will offer advice to the meeting in this respect.

3.7.3 DECISIONS OUTSIDE THE POLICY AND BUDGET FRAMEWORK

The Cabinet, a Committee of the Cabinet, Cabinet Members and any Officers, Area Committees or joint arrangements discharging executive functions (defined under Part 2 of the Constitution) may only take decisions which are in line with the Policy and Budget Framework. If any of these bodies or persons wishes to make a decision which is contrary to the Policy and Budget Framework, or contrary to or not wholly in accordance with the budget approved by the Council, then that decision may only be taken by the Council, subject to Rule 3.7.4 below.

The Monitoring Officer or the Chief Financial Officer shall give advice to the meeting or person making the decision about any proposal that is likely to be contrary to the Policy and Budget Framework. If the advice of either of those officers is that the decision would not be in line with the existing Policy and Budget Framework then the matter must be referred by that body or person to the Council for decision. This shall not apply if the decision is required as a matter of urgency, in which case the provisions within Rule 3.7.4 (Urgent decisions outside the Policy and Budget Framework) shall apply.

3.7.4 URGENT DECISIONS OUTSIDE THE POLICY AND BUDGET FRAMEWORK

The Cabinet, a Committee of the Cabinet, Cabinet Members, Officers, Area Committees or joint arrangements discharging executive functions may take a decision which is contrary to the Policy and Budget Framework if the decision is a matter of urgency. However, the decision may only be taken:

- i. if it is not practical to convene a meeting of the full Council; and
- ii. if the Chair of the relevant Overview and Scrutiny Panel (or their nominee) agrees that the decision is a matter of urgency.

The reasons why it is not practical to convene a meeting of full Council must be recorded, along with the decision of the Chair of the Overview and Scrutiny Panel. Before such a decision is taken the advice of the Chief Executive, the Monitoring Officer and, where relevant, the Chief Financial Officer shall be sought and taken into account. Following the decision, a full

report will be made to the next available Council meeting explaining the decision, the reasons for it and why the decision was treated as a matter of urgency.

3.7.5 REVIEW OF DECISIONS AND PLANNED DECISIONS OUTSIDE THE POLICY AND BUDGET FRAMEWORK

Where an Overview and Scrutiny Panel believes that an executive decision is, (or if not yet made would be), contrary to the Policy and Budget Framework then it shall seek the advice of the Monitoring Officer and/or the Chief Financial Officer. In respect of functions which are the responsibility of the Cabinet, the Monitoring Officer and/or Chief Financial Officer shall submit a report to the Cabinet with a copy to every Member of the Council. Regardless of whether the decision is delegated or not, the Cabinet must meet to decide what action to take in respect of the Monitoring Officer's/Chief Financial Officer's report.

The Cabinet must submit a report on its proposed action:

to Council in the event that the Monitoring Officer or the Chief Financial Officer concludes that the decision was contrary to the Policy and Budget Framework, and

to the appropriate Overview and Scrutiny Panel if the Monitoring Officer or the Chief Financial Officer concludes that the decision was not contrary to the Policy and Budget Framework.

If the decision has yet to be made, or has been made but not yet implemented, and the advice from the Monitoring Officer and/or the Chief Financial Officer is that the decision is or would be contrary to the Policy and Budget Framework, the Overview and Scrutiny Panel will refer the matter to the next ordinary meeting of Council. In such cases, no further action will be taken in respect of the decision or its implementation until the Council has met and considered the matter.

The Council meeting will receive a report of the decision or proposals and the advice of the Monitoring Officer and/or the Chief Financial Officer. The report shall also contain the Cabinet's proposals for resolving the relevant Policy and Budget Framework issues. Any such proposals of the Cabinet shall be dealt with in accordance with the procedures described in Policy and Budget Framework Rule 3.7.2 above.

3.7.6 IN –YEAR CHANGES TO THE POLICY AND BUDGET FRAMEWORK

There are 3 ways in which a Policy and Budget Framework item can be

changed in year, namely:

- on a recommendation of the Cabinet;
- arising from a report of an Overview and Scrutiny Panel
- by a Member tabling an agenda motion for a Council meeting which is then carried on a vote.

Decisions by the Cabinet, and individual Cabinet Member, an Officer, a Committee of the Cabinet, an Area Committee or a Joint Arrangement in discharging an executive function must be in line with the Policy and Budget Framework.

Those bodies and individuals may not make any changes to any plan or strategy that makes up the Policy and Budget Framework except those changes:

- a. which will result in the closure or discontinuance of a service or part of service to meet a budgetary constraint;
- b. necessary to ensure compliance with the law, ministerial direction or Government guidance;
- c. in respect of a policy which would normally be agreed annually by the Council following consultation, but where the existing policy document is silent on the matter under consideration;
- d. which relate to policy in relation to schools, where the majority of school governing bodies agree with the proposed change;
- e. which are allowed by Financial Regulations or by the Budget Management Scheme;
- f. in targets set in the Best Value Performance Plan against new performance indicators which have not been measured before where in the light of actual experience the target is clearly unrealistic.

In respect of changes to the Policy and Budget Framework made under these provisions, such changes will be reported to the next meeting of the Council.

For those changes to the Policy and Budget Framework which are submitted for approval by the Council, the procedure at Policy and Budget Framework Procedure Rule 3.7.2 shall apply.

3.7.7 SPECIAL PROCEDURE RULES RELATING TO THE BUDGET AND FINANCIAL PLAN ELEMENT OF THE POLICY AND BUDGET FRAMEWORK

The Council's Budget and Financial Plan forms part of the Council's Policy and Budget Framework. However, good financial management requires that some flexibility for in-year changes is permitted. The Budget Management Scheme within this Constitution provides the parameters for such changes and should be read in conjunction with the Procedural Rules for adopting and amending the Policy and Budget Framework

In-year changes to the Budget and Financial Plan may be made by the Council in response to:

- a) a report and recommendation of the Cabinet
- b) Overview and Scrutiny business
- c) a successful agenda motion from a Councillor (where necessary, following consideration of Officer advice)

In addition, the Budget Management Scheme in this Constitution applies to the Budget and Financial Plan. This is to ensure that Council determines any changes in budgets that are contrary to the Policy and Budget Framework, and that specific items allocated by Council in the Financial Plan and Budget are not used for purposes other than those originally intended whilst allowing fortuitous or unplanned savings to be retained under certain conditions.

In these Budget Management Rules, all references to "Heads of Service" refer also to all senior managers reporting directly to Directors. In addition they also refer to Directors where they have specific responsibility for a budget, e.g. a corporate project.

3.8 CONTRACT STANDING ORDERS



Bath & North East Somerset Council

Contract Standing Orders

Amended 18 November 2021

Table of Contents

Section A	Statement of Principles	3
Section B	Developing the Commissioning Plan	7
Section C	Developing the Procurement Plan	9
Section D	Undertake the Procurement Process	10
Section E	Contract Award and Implementation	16
Section F	Post Contract Award	18

Appendices

1.	Glossary	20
2.	CSO Exemptions	25
3.	Business Ethics	27
4.	Confidentiality, Intellectual Property, Data Protection, Transparency & Redaction	29
5.	Specification	32
6.	Social Value	33
7.	The Council's Contract Register	34
8.	Framework Agreements & Dynamic Purchasing Systems	35
9.	Procurement Options	36
10.	Asset Leasing	38
11.	Contract Forms & Terms & Conditions	39
12.	Scheme of Delegations	40
13.	Evaluation Criteria & Debriefing	42
14.	Capability & Financial Checks	43
15.	Minimum Requirements	44
16.	Thresholds and Timescales	48
17.	Document Retention	49
18.	Tender & Contract Variations, Extensions & Termination	50
19.	Procurements above Thresholds – options and procedures	52
20.	Below Threshold Contracts	53

A Statement of Principles

1. Mandatory Compliance

Council Officers *MUST* comply with these Contract Standing Orders in all instances when buying goods, services and works on behalf of the Council and failure to comply may result in disciplinary procedures.

General Principles

These Contract Standing Orders (“CSOs”) provide the framework that governs the Council’s commissioning and procurement of Contracts for works, services and goods / supplies.

Following these CSOs helps the Council to demonstrate:

- good internal governance;
- stewardship and the proper spending of public monies;
- Value for Money in the Council’s Contracts;
- compliance with relevant law.

The purpose of all contracting activity is to:

- seek continuous improvement of the Council’s functions having regard to the optimum combination of economy, efficiency and effectiveness in keeping with the Council’s duty to seek Best Value (and Value for Money);
- achieve Value for Money for the Council and the Residents, with reference to the economic, social and environmental value of each Contract;
- promote the well-being of the Council’s Residents and Area through the effective functioning of the Council, the efficient use of the Council’s resources, and a universal concentration on the Social Value that can be achieved.
- Every Contract and official order made by the Council (or any part of it) shall be for the purpose of achieving fulfilment of the Council’s statutory functions or the furtherance of the Council’s strategic or policy goals.

The Appendices to these CSOs provide further detail and form part of these CSOs as if they were drafted as one document.

The Director of Legal and Democratic Services has the delegated authority to alter these CSOs accordingly. Any questions about the application of these CSOs should be directed to the Director of Legal and Democratic Services and/or the Head of Strategic Procurement & Commissioning.

All figures in these CSOs are *exclusive* of VAT unless stated otherwise.

Directors will:

- ensure that the appropriate Member, Cabinet or full Council (as appropriate given the Scheme of Delegations) is consulted on any procurement activity prior to its publication in the Council’s Forward Plan;

- ensure that audit trails are in place for all procurement activity in accordance with these CSOs.
- What these CSOs Cover

These CSOs apply:

- whenever the Council intends to spend money (or provide other payments in kind) under Contracts for goods (supplies), works or services;
- to expenditure from either capital or revenue sources;
- to concessions (for further info, speak to Procurement);
- to grants (for further info, speak to Procurement);
- to goods for re-sale;
- to both Officers and Members;
- to all bodies where the Council acts as the Lead Authority including the Avon Pension Fund.

These CSOs do not apply:

- to contracts of employment;
- to acquisitions and disposals of land or buildings (these are covered by the Financial Regulations) – unless related to a Contract for works, services or goods;
- to the seeking of offers in relation to financial services in connection with the issue, purchase, sale or transfer of securities or other financial instruments, in particular transactions by the Council to raise money or capital;
- to internal “contracts” between departments within the Council.
- In the case of civil contingencies
- In the case of individual investments which are not deemed as the purchase of goods or services for the purposes of the Council’s CSO’s

The following entities have their own rules and are not bound by these CSOs, except where they participate in joint purchasing with the Council:

- maintained schools within the Area;
- companies in which the Council has an interest *except for* Local Housing Development Vehicles and situations where there is a Local Authority Controlled Company;

In exceptional circumstances only, certain exemptions can be approved by following the process set out at Appendix 2 (CSO Exemptions). The persons who are authorised to approve the exemptions are set out in Appendix 12 (Scheme of Delegations). Seeking an exemption of these CSOs *does not* exempt the Council from complying with the General Principles or with general law.

These CSOs can only be amended by the Director of Legal and Democratic Services in consultation with the Head of Strategic Procurement.

Other Key Documents

These CSOs should be read alongside the following:

- the Council's Procurement Strategy (available from Procurement);
- the Council's Financial Regulations;
- the Council's Social Value Policy;
- the Transparency Code;

Any other guidance provided by the Strategic Procurement & Commissioning Team, see Business Ethics (Appendix 3), Confidentiality, Intellectual Property, Data Protection, Transparency & Redaction (Appendix 4).

Anyone undertaking purchasing activity on behalf of the Council (but especially in the context of purchasing value above the Thresholds) *MUST* refer to the following documents, where appropriate:

- the Public Procurement (EU Exit) Regulations 2020;
- the Public Contract Regulations 2015 (as amended by the above Regulations);
- Concession Contracts Regulations 2016;
- the Public Services (Social Value) Act 2012;
- the Bribery Act 2010;
- the Small Business, Employment and Enterprise Act 2015;
- the Equalities Act 2012;
- the Modern Slavery Act 2015;
- the Finance Act 2020 (in respect of employment status IR35)
- National Procurement Policy Statement 2021 (PPN 05/21)
- any other relevant legislation.
- Commissioning Intentions

5.1 All revenue procurements over £50k in value *MUST* be entered on the Commissioning Intentions list which can be found on the public website. This enables the Council to keep track of budgets and plan for future expenditure and it allows suppliers and the local community awareness of upcoming projects.

5.2 Applications to make an entry on the Commissioning Intentions list *MUST* be made via the Contracts Panel.

B Developing the Commissioning Plan

General

6.1 What is the Commissioning Plan?

Prior to entering into any procurement, you *MUST* develop your business case by researching the procurement and speaking to all relevant parties, obtaining all relevant information. The Commissioning Plan falls out of this research and forms the business case that is approved prior to commencing the procurement.

6.2 The requirement for goods and/or services *MUST* start with an identifiable need which reflects the Council's overall objectives identified within Directorate, Service and Team Plans. You *MUST* understand the business requirements and how it impacts all levels of the organisation and local community. Consider the relevance of Council policies and procedures and how they have a bearing on the requirement.

Budget

7.1 Before starting the procurement, you *MUST* have budgetary approval. You *MUST* establish the aggregated monetary value of your requirement early, as this identifies the process that you follow, influences the amount of work you do and indicates the level of interest that will be generated.

Key stakeholders

8.1 You *MUST* identify the key stakeholders for the project including anyone impacted by the requirement. You should consider doing a Communications Plan for larger projects. You *MUST* be mindful of any Conflict of Interest and take necessary precautions to ensure that if there is a conflict, it is mitigated and/or managed. You *MUST* get Legal, Procurement and Financial advice prior to commencing any procurement.

Proportionality

9.1 You *MUST* provide the suppliers the information they need to understand the requirement but not overload them with unnecessary information.

Market Analysis

10.1 Consider talking to suppliers before starting the procurement, trialling products, visiting supplier premises or the premises of a supplier's customer. The Regulations explicitly permit preliminary market consultation. This type of pre-procurement engagement or consultation could focus on:

- What is being purchased?
- Is the specification realistic? Is it too ambitious? Not ambitious enough?
- What will the process look like?
- Do potential bidders have any concerns about timescales, for example?

You *MUST* keep adequate records of market research carried out.

11. Bidders' conflicts of interest

11.1 If a potential candidate has advised the Council or been involved in the preparation of the procurement procedure, the Council is expected to take "appropriate measures" to ensure the resulting competition is not distorted by that candidate's pre-procurement involvement. This might include, for example, communicating relevant

information to other candidates / tenderers. The Council cannot exclude a candidate from a procurement unless there is genuinely no other way to ensure that there is equal treatment of tenderers in the procurement process.

C Developing the Procurement Plan

12. Procurement Plan

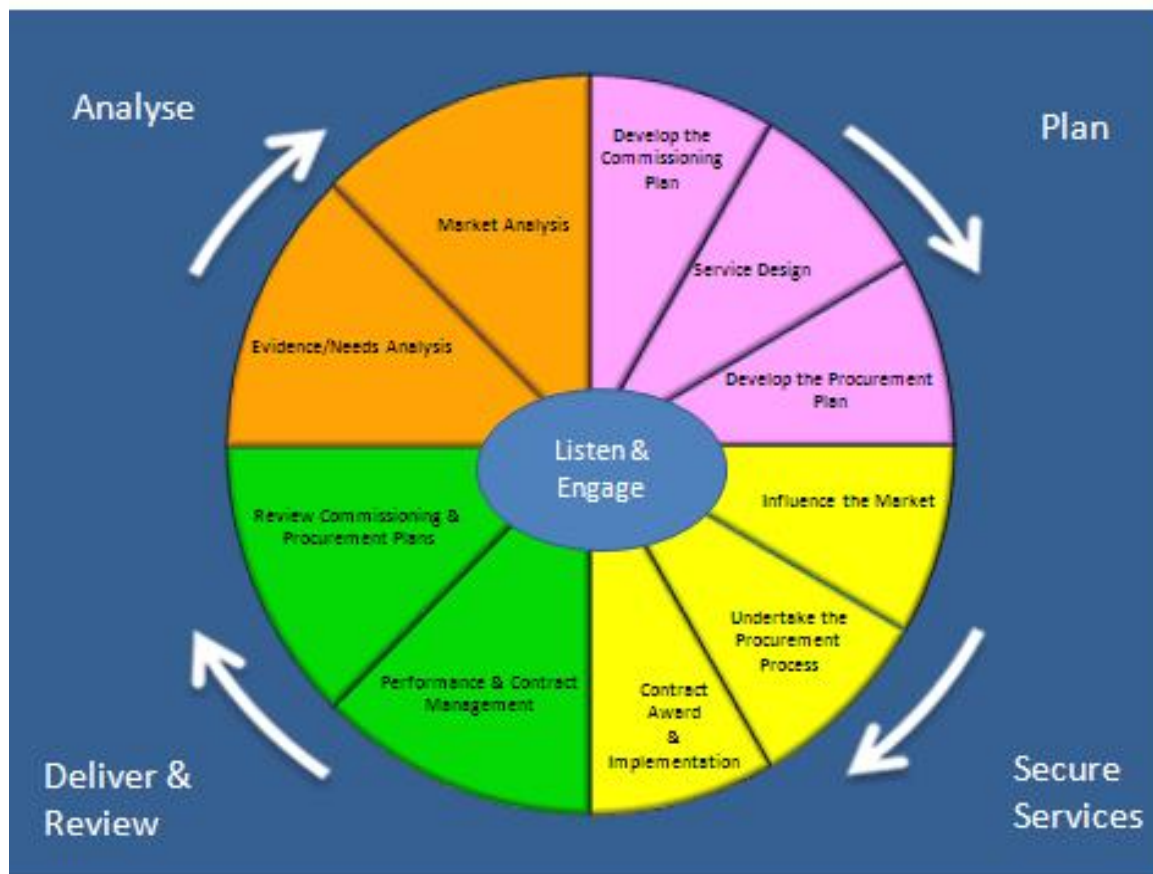
DO YOU REALLY NEED IT? IF YOU WANT TO SAVE, DON'T SPEND!
Allow plenty of time to draft the specification and the detail it will need
How can Think Local apply to what you are buying?
Does the scope include Social Value for Residents or the Area? see Appendix 6 (Social Value)
Does the Council already have in place any Contract or Framework in scope which you should be using? Check the Contract Register see Appendix 7 (Contract Register)
Is there an external Framework or Contract that you should be using? see Appendix 8 (Framework Agreements)
How will you decide on the procurement route? – see Appendix 9 (Procurement Options)
Should we be leasing rather than buying? See Appendix 10 (Asset Leasing)
If buying, what form of Contract are you going to use? see Appendix 11 (Contract Forms and Terms & Conditions)
Who has the delegated authority to agree the purchase/approve the procurement method and process/approve the Contract award? – see Appendix 12 (Scheme of Delegations)
How will you decide who will win the Contract? – see Appendix 13 (Evaluation Criteria & Debriefing)

12.1 Consultancy requirements of any value MUST be approved in advance.

D Undertake the Procurement Process

13. Procurement Process

13.1 The flowchart below illustrates the procurement and commissioning process from planning, through contracting with the supplier, performance monitoring and reviews and finally analysis of the outcomes and the market for future needs.



13.2 Summary Financial Thresholds

See the table below to understand the procurement process dependent on the Contract value (See Appendix 15 (Minimum Requirements) for further details). You should carefully estimate the value of the contract. If you issue tenders for a below threshold contract and the tender responses indicate that the value of the successful tender will go above the threshold, you *MUST* stop the process and re-tender. To avoid this, it is better to consider tendering for an above threshold contract in the first instance.

1. UP TO £5,000
<i>Have you followed "Developing the Procurement Plan"?</i>
Consider use of a purchasing card below £500.
Apply Think Local (Preference will be given to local suppliers, where they exist, provided they offer Value for Money)
Demonstrate Value for Money by testing the market by getting at least three written quotes
£5,001 – £50,000
<i>Have you followed "Developing the Procurement Plan"?</i>
Apply Think Local (Preference will be given to local suppliers, where they exist, provided they offer Value for Money)
Consider the Social Value Policy
Obtain at least 3 written Quotes via ProActis if below £25k or advertise in Contracts Finder if contract is above £25K (see Appendix 20 Below Threshold Contracts)
DO NOT use a Selection Questionnaire. Consider what suitability questions to ask instead (see Appendix 14 (Capability and Financial Checks))
Award the Contract based on your chosen criteria (price or price and quality).
You <i>MUST</i> record the new Contract on Contract Register
Advertise the Contract award via Contracts Finder
£50,001 – £100,000
<i>Have you followed "Developing the Procurement Plan"?</i>
You <i>MUST</i> add to Commissioning Intentions List
Apply Think Local (Preference will be given to local suppliers, where they exist, provided they offer Value for Money)
<i>MUST</i> apply the Social Value Policy
Complete the Business Case and get approval from Contract Panel
Consider whether to call off from an existing Framework Agreement
Advertise in Contracts Finder (see Appendix 20 Below Threshold Contracts)
DO NOT use a Selection Questionnaire. Consider what suitability questions to ask instead (see Appendix 14 (Capability and Financial Checks))
You <i>MUST</i> take up references for the preferred bidder before award (a Reference Questionnaire is available from Procurement)
Award the Contract based on your chosen criteria (price and quality) and complete the Procurement Evaluation Report.
You <i>MUST</i> record the new Contract on Contract Register
Advertise the Contract award via Contracts Finder
£100,001 – Threshold (see Appendix 16 for thresholds)
<i>Have you followed "Developing the Procurement Plan"?</i>

You <i>MUST</i> add to Commissioning Intentions List
You <i>MUST</i> apply the Social Value Policy
Advertise in Contracts Finder (see Appendix 20 Below Threshold Contracts)
Complete the Business Case and get approval from Contract Panel
Consider whether to call off from an existing Framework Agreement
DO NOT use a Selection Questionnaire. Consider what suitability questions to ask instead (see Appendix 14 (Capability and Financial Checks))
You <i>MUST</i> take up references for the preferred bidder before award (a Reference Questionnaire is available from Procurement)
Award the Contract based on your chosen criteria (price and quality) and complete the Procurement Evaluation Report.
You <i>MUST</i> record the new Contract on Contract Register
You may get the Contract sealed if appropriate. The contract <i>MUST</i> be signed using Docusign.
Advertise the Contract award via Contracts Finder
Works contracts between goods and services threshold value and works Threshold (see Appendix 16 for thresholds)
<i>Have you followed “Developing the Procurement Plan”?</i>
You <i>MUST</i> add to Commissioning Intentions List
You <i>MUST</i> apply the Social Value Policy
Complete the Business Case and get approval from Contract Panel
Consider whether to call off from an existing Framework Agreement
If not using an existing framework, advertise the Contract and invite tenders through ProActis.
You <u><i>MUST</i></u> evaluate the financial standing of the tenderers (See Appendix 14(Capability and Financial Checks)). You <u><i>CAN</i></u> use a Works Selection Questionnaire
You <i>MUST</i> take up references for the preferred bidder before award (a Reference Questionnaire is available from Procurement)
You <i>MUST</i> complete the Procurement Evaluation Report
Award the Contract based on your chosen criteria (price and quality)
If above £500k you <i>MUST</i> get the Contract sealed, if below then only if appropriate. The contract <i>MUST</i> be signed on Docusign.
You <i>MUST</i> record the new Contract on Contract Register
Above Threshold (see Appendix 16 for thresholds)
<i>Have you followed “Developing the Procurement Plan”?</i>
You <i>MUST</i> add to Commissioning Intentions List
You <i>MUST</i> apply the Social Value Policy
Complete the Business Case and get approval from Contract Panel
Consider whether to call off from an existing Framework Agreement
If not using an existing framework, follow a compliant procedure – see Appendix 19 (Procurement Options) – through ProActis.
You <u><i>MUST</i></u> evaluate the financial standing of the tenderers (Appendix 14 (Capability and Financial Checks)). If using a Selection Questionnaire, you <u><i>MUST</i></u> use the Cabinet Office Standard SQ
You <i>MUST</i> take up references for the preferred bidder before award (a Reference Questionnaire is available from Procurement)

You <i>MUST</i> complete the Procurement Evaluation Report
Award the Contract based on your chosen criteria (price and quality)
If above £500k you <i>MUST</i> get the Contract sealed, if below then only if appropriate. The Contract <i>MUST</i> be signed on Docusign.
You <i>MUST</i> record the new Contract on Contract Register

E Contract Award & Implementation

14. General

14.1 It is critical that the Contract award and implementation are carried out effectively. Prior to contract award you *MUST* ensure that your objectives are fully addressed and that all approvals to award issues are covered.

15. Approval to Award

15.1 The Procurement Evaluation and Approval Report *MUST* be completed in line with the Public Procurement Regulations. The report *MUST* explain how you have come to the decision to award for all procurements above £50k.

15.2 The report *MUST* be signed-off by the appropriate delegated officer prior to notifying the supplier(s). See Appendix 12 Scheme of Delegations for details.

16. Notifying Suppliers

16.1 There are strict rules for above threshold procurements on how to debrief suppliers including a *Mandatory* 10-day Standstill Period prior to confirming Contract award. Appendix 14 Contract Award & Debriefing gives more information.

16.2 If the supplier requests a face to face debrief, it is normal and courteous to do this where the Contract is complex, of high value and/or has taken a long time to complete, so long as you do so in a transparent and non-discriminatory way.

17. Publications

17.1 For Contracts above the Thresholds, you *MUST* submit a Contract Award Notice in 'Find A Tender'.

17.2 All Contracts above £25K in value *MUST* be published on Contracts Finder. See Appendix 20 (Below Threshold Contracts caught by Part 4 of the Regulations).

17.3 You *MUST* update the Contract Register (see Appendix 7 (The Council's Contract Register))

17.4 You *MUST* file documents in the Contract Register in line with document retention policies (see Appendix 17 Document Retention).

F Post Contract Award

18. General

18.1 Following Contract award you *MUST* put into place the agreed contract management controls and measures. You *MUST* review it regularly to ensure the Contract achieves its objectives and future benefits.

19. Contract Management

19.1 You *MUST* establish processes for recording the receipt of goods and progress of work, reviewing performance reports etc.

19.2 You *MUST* put in place both formal and informal communications to manage the relationship, as appropriate.

19.3 You should capture the views of the service users/interested stakeholders including feedback to them on the service performance.

20. Reviews

20.1 You *MUST* review the commissioning plan (against any changes in priorities/objectives)

20.2 You *MUST* review the risk assessments and make any amendments to resource assumptions

20.3 You *MUST* review procurement plans to identify any changes or improvements to methodology for next time

20.4 All answers to above *MUST* be used to inform future commissions

21. Continuous Improvement

21.1 You should review your success against your original plans, i.e. did you achieve the outcomes you set out to achieve and do you understand what contributed to or prevented success?

21.2 You should share your learning with colleagues, service users and stakeholders to ensure you are continuously improving your processes and skills.

21.3 Reflect on the views of service users/stakeholders when reviewing whether the Commissioning and Procurement Plans were successful.

22. Contract Extensions

22.1 Extending a Contract can only happen in particular circumstances (see Appendix 18 Contract Variations & Extensions for details).

APPENDIX 1 – Glossary

Appendices	The appendices to these CSOs
Area	The administrative area of B&NES
Best Value	The Council's duty to secure continuous improvement in the way in which its functions are exercised, having regard to a combination of economy, efficiency and effectiveness in accordance with section 3(1) of the Local Government Act 1999 and associated statutory guidance
Business Case	A document that must be presented to the Contract Panel for approval, prior to procuring revenue spend above £20,000.
Commissioning Intentions	The Council's published list of future procurement and commissioning activities above £50,000 found on the B&NES website. The intention is to highlight to potential suppliers the forthcoming opportunities for tendering. This is a statutory requirement under Localism Act.
Compliant Process	A procurement exercise that has been carried out in accordance with the Public Procurement (EU Exit) Regulations 20. See Appendix 20 Procurement Processes for a list of the main types of procurement procedures
Conflict of Interests	A set of circumstances that creates a risk that an individual's ability to apply judgement or act in one role is or could be, impaired or influenced by a secondary interest.
Contract	An agreement to supply Goods/Services/Works formed when there is an offer by one party and an acceptance of that offer by a second party. A Contract can be written or verbal.
Contract Award Notice	An advertisement entered by a buyer in 'Find a Tender' to advise interested parties that a Contract has been awarded by the buyer to a named supplier.
Contract Notice	An advertisement entered by a buyer in 'Find A Tender' to advise interested parties of the intention of the buyer to go to market to buy goods/services/works. It gives details of the requirements of the buyer.
Contract Panel	A group of senior managers and directors who meet fortnightly to approve revenue spend above £20,000.
Contract Register	The Council's repository for all its current Contracts and Framework Agreements, located on ProActis.
Contracts Finder	The UK Government's website on which all opportunities that are advertised for Contracts and Framework Agreements (and call-offs from Framework Agreements) for goods services and works above £25,000 <i>MUST</i> be published. You advertise on Contracts Finder via ProActis.
Council Executive	The body of local Councillors elected by the community to decide on how the Council will carry out its various activities.
Council Members	The elected Councillors who sit on the Council Executive
CSOs	These Contract Standing Orders (including the Appendices)
Docusign	The electronic signature system used to sign contracts.
Financial Regulations	The Council's Financial Regulations, found on the intranet.

Find A Tender	From 2021, the site where Contracts are advertised in the UK. Replaces the need to publish in Europe.
FOIA	The Freedom of Information Act 2000 and the Environmental Information Regulations 2004
Forward Plan	A list of council decisions for forthcoming months which can be found on the public website.
Framework Agreement	An 'umbrella' agreement that sets out the prices, service levels, and terms and conditions for subsequent call-off orders.
General Principles	The General Principles set out at A – Statement of Principles
Grant	An arrangement will be a grant when the Council gives a donation to an organisation without receiving a benefit in return. The organisation is not obliged to provide the service. It can decide not to provide the service but would then have to repay the donation.
Invitation to Tender or ITT	The invitation to tender is sent at the stage of the procurement process when you invite selected bidders to present their tenders in response to the stated requirements and evaluation criteria.
Light Touch Regime	The Light-Touch Regime is a specific set of rules for Contracts for certain services that tend to be of lower interest to cross-border providers. It includes certain social, health and education services. The list of services to which LTR applies is covered in Appendix 10.
Local	Within the Area
Local Authority Controlled Company	Where a contracting authority sets up a separate legal entity and then awards contracts to that legal entity. A two-part test must be satisfied, relating to control and activity: • Control: the controlling authority exercises sufficient control over the controlled body; and • Activity: the controlled body carries out the essential part of its activities for its owner authority. In addition, there must be no private sector participation in the body which satisfies the two-part test.
Most Economically Advantageous Tender or MEAT	Awarding a Contract for works, goods or services based on a combination of overall cost AND service elements, not just cost alone.
Officer	Employee of the Council
Selection Questionnaire	A questionnaire used in certain procurement procedures which allow procurers to shortlist the number of companies to be invited to Tender. Above Threshold this <i>MUST</i> reflect the Cabinet Office standard SQ and associated guidance: A SQ is NOT permitted for procurements valued between £25k and the Goods and Services threshold (Appendix 20 Procurement Processes refers).
ProActis	The Council's e-tendering system for carrying out tender exercises (formerly named ProContract), available through the www.supplyingthesouthwest.org.uk portal.

Quote/Quotation	A request for pricing and/or quality bid from a potential supplier for goods/services/works below £50,000. Similar to a Tender but with less detail required from bidders.
Regulations	The Public Procurement (EU Exit) Regulations 2020 and Public Contracts Regulations 2015
Residents	Means Residents of the Area
Scheme of Delegations	The Scheme of Delegations set out at Appendix 12 (Scheme of Delegations)
Social Value	Described in the Social Value Act as improvements to the economic, social and/or environmental well-being of the Area. The benefits sought could be in the form of social benefits (for example reducing anti-social behaviour), economic benefits (for example increasing local employment), or environmental benefits (for example reducing local congestion).
Social Value Act	The Public Services (Social Value) Act 2012, which requires the Council to consider, pre-procurement, how what it procures might improve the economic, social and environmental well-being of the Area, and how best to use the procurement process to secure that improvement. There is also a duty to consider whether to undertake any consultation in making its decisions.
Standstill Period	A <i>Mandatory</i> 10-day period (which <i>MUST</i> be applied above Threshold between the notification to suppliers of the decision to award the Contract and the date of signing/entering into the Contract. The period is intended to give unsuccessful tenderers the opportunity to challenge the award if they wish. The period is longer if notifications are not sent electronically.
Tender	Request for pricing and/or quality bid from a potential supplier for goods/services/works above £50,000. Similar to a Quote but Tenders require more detailed proposals.
Think Local	The Council's policy on local purchasing
Thresholds	The financial thresholds above which a Contract published via Find A Tender will normally be required, as set out at Appendix 15 (Minimum Requirements and Thresholds)
Threshold Level	<u>The financial contract value at which you MUST advertise your contract in Find A Tender. See Appendix 16 for details.</u>
TUPE	<u>The Transfer of Undertakings (Protection of Employment) Regulations 2006. Legislation which protects employment rights of those whose job will be transferred to a new employer upon change of contractor by award of a Contract.</u>
Value for Money (VfM)	The optimum combination of whole-of-life costs and quality (or fitness for purpose) of the goods, works or Services to meet the Council's requirement
VAT	Value Added Tax

Appendix 2 CSO Exemptions

1. Contracts below the Thresholds

Specific Officers may approve exemptions to these CSOs (to the extent that it is lawfully able to do so) in genuinely urgent situations and/or where there is a sound

legal, financial or Value for Money reason (See Appendix 12 Scheme of Delegations). They *MUST*:

- give reasons for doing so on the Exemption Form (and record these in the minutes of the relevant meeting);
- The completed and signed exemption form (available from Procurement) *MUST* be entered in the Contract Register (see Appendix 7 Contract Register)

The following are considered acceptable reasons for seeking an exemption:

- quantifiable and significant cost and efficiency savings can be achieved through seeking an alternative route;
- reasons of extreme urgency mean that normal time limits cannot be met, including as a result of unforeseen emergency or disruption to Council services;
- the Council would otherwise be exposed to immediate and significant financial, legal or reputational risk that has been identified in the relevant risk register;
- only one Contractor is objectively able to provide the works, services or supplies in question, for example where the supplier has exclusive Intellectual Property, artistic or other rights, is a monopoly or where the goods bought are for re-sale (in which case the exemption *MUST* be to the number of Quotes / Tenders that are sought);
- additional or new services, supplies or works are required which, through unforeseen circumstances, were not included in an existing Council Contract and are necessary for the completion of the Contract and/or cannot be carried out separately.
- new works or services/supplies are required which are a repetition of works, services/supplies carried out under the original Contract, provided they are required within 1 year of the original Contract.
- goods are required as a partial replacement for or addition to existing goods or installations and obtaining them from another source would result in incompatibility or disproportional technical difficulties in operation or maintenance.
- the Council has the benefit of a Local Authority Controlled Company under Regulation 12, and exercises over the company concerned a control which is similar to that which it exercises over its own departments and, at the same time, that company carries out the essential part of its activities with the Council's control.

You are reminded that an exemption will *not* be granted where this means the Council would not be complying with the General Principles or general law.

2. Contracts above the Thresholds

It is illegal to sign-off an exemption when the value of the Contract is above the threshold. You may need to consider other procurement routes, for example, using a Framework Agreement. See Appendix 19 (Procurement above the Thresholds) for details. If you are having difficulty you *MUST* consult with Strategic Procurement for more information.

Appendix 3 Business Ethics

1. General

Business ethics focuses on what constitutes right or wrong behaviour in the world of business. The following will help you to address ethical dilemmas during your procurement process.

2. Code of Conduct

All procurement exercises *MUST* be carried out with openness and transparency and with integrity and fairness to all suppliers.

Officers of the Council *MUST* conduct themselves in line with the Council's HR Code of Conduct including with regards to the receiving of hospitality and gifts and the giving and receiving of sponsorship.

3. Separation of Roles during Tendering

Council Members and employees involved in the tendering process and dealing with contractors *MUST* be clear on the separation of client and contractor roles within the Council. Senior employees who have both a client and contractor responsibility *MUST* be aware of the need for accountability and openness.

Council Member and employees who are privy to confidential information on Tenders or costs for either internal or external contractors *MUST* not disclose that information to any unauthorised party or organisation. For further information, see the Members' Code of Practice guidance document ([LINK](#)).

4. Conflicts of Interest

There *MUST* be no conflict of interest with any suppliers or contractors. Where a conflict is identified, the member of staff concerned *MUST* not take any further part in the tendering process, to preserve the integrity of the process. For further advice, contact the Legal Department or the Procurement team.

5. Corruption

Council Members and employees *MUST* be aware that it is a serious criminal offence for them corruptly to receive or give any gift, loan, fee, reward or advantage for doing, or not doing, anything or showing favour, or disfavour, to any person in their official capacity. If an allegation is made, it is for the individual to demonstrate that any such rewards have not been corruptly obtained. For further guidance, see the B&NES Gifts and Hospitality policy on the intranet.

6. Use of Financial Resources

Council Members and Officers *MUST* ensure that they use public funds entrusted to them in a responsible and lawful manner and in accordance with the Council's Financial Regulations. They should strive to ensure Value for Money to the Area and to avoid legal challenge to the Council.

7. Lobbying

It is recognised that lobbying is a normal and perfectly legitimate element of the process of local governance however it is important that Members protect their impartiality and integrity when dealing with external contractors and suppliers.

Members *MUST NOT* breach the Bath & North East Somerset Code of Conduct by listening to or receiving viewpoints from contractors and suppliers or other interested parties unless they make it clear that they are keeping an open mind. Indicating a bias toward a particular product, supplier or contractor would prejudice impartiality and could lead to a legal challenge against the Council.

8. Former Council Employees

Council Members and employees should endeavour to ensure that where they contract with a supplier to provide services or works to the Council, that the supplier does not employ a former Council employee when producing and submitting the response to the tender. This will ensure that all suppliers in the tendering process are treated fairly and that no one supplier is given a tendering advantage and respects Council confidentiality.

Appendix 4 Confidentiality, Intellectual Property, Data Protection, Transparency and Redaction

1. Confidentiality

1.1 The Council has a responsibility to ensure that information provided to suppliers and provided by suppliers is treated confidentially. This is not only good practice but also gives the suppliers confidence that they are being treated fairly and without discrimination. Information provided by the Council is given to suppliers in confidence and only to those whom they need to consult for the purpose of preparing the Tender, such as professional advisors or joint bidders.

1.2 If a Conflict of Interest arises or if at any time during the procurement it is discovered that the tenderer has not acted confidentially, the Council has the right to eliminate them from the procurement exercise.

1.3 Tenderers have the right to state what elements of their Tender response they want to remain confidential however under the Freedom of Information Act the Council *MUST* provide information requested with some exceptions such as commercially confidential items (pricing, intellectual property etc.) which can be redacted from the version published in the public domain. Contractors' cooperation may be needed to ensure the Council complies with requests for information.

2. Intellectual Property

2.1 “Intellectual Property Rights” includes patents, inventions, trademarks, service marks, logos, design rights, copyright, database rights, domain names, trade or business names, moral rights and other similar rights or obligations.

2.2 Generally speaking, all intellectual property rights in all works or supplies provided under a Contract which are written or produced on a bespoke or customized basis would be owned by the Council and the contractor should be required to ensure that it allows such ownership.

2.3 However, where the supplier provides existing intellectual property right protected material to the Council under a Contract, it has to warrant it has the right to do so and it fully indemnifies the Council against all loss or liability arising from any third party intellectual property rights claims arising both from such existing material and in relation to any such bespoke work.

3. Data Protection Act & GDPR

3.1 The Data Protection Act 2018 defines UK law on the processing of data on identifiable living people and are the legislation that govern the protection of personal data in the UK. All Council Officers are legally obliged to comply.

3.2 The Council’s Terms and Conditions of Contract contain clauses which state how contractors process and store personal data provided to them under a Contract.

3.3 In certain Contracts, where a supplier is required to process personal data or hold personal information for the purpose of executing the Contract, then Officers *MUST* include an Information Governance questionnaire in the corresponding Invitation to Tender. Further guidance can be obtained from the Information Governance Manager.

4. Transparency

4.1 Under the Local Government Transparency Code the following items *MUST* be published.

- all individual items of expenditure above £500;
- every transaction made using a Government Procurement Card;
- a list of all Invitations to Tender for goods and services exceeding £5000;
- a list of all contracts, Framework Agreements, purchase orders and commissioned activity in excess of £5000.

5. Redaction of Data

5.1 It is the responsibility of the service department to ensure that the information provided for publication under the transparency code has been cleansed and any personal or sensitive information has been redacted prior to publication.

Appendix 5 Specifications

For a compliant procurement process, the Council *MUST* draft the technical specifications for a Contract upfront, before starting the procurement process. This is good practice even if the contract is below the threshold.

What the technical specifications look like will vary widely depending on the nature of the Contract. If you are having difficulty drafting a specification for the Contract, guidance is available on the Procurement intranet page.

In addition, information can be found on the following:-

- Health & Safety
- Transfer of Undertakings in Employment (TUPE)
- Insurance

However, you may need to obtain specific advice from the Health, Safety & Wellbeing Manager, Human Resources or the Team Leader, Insurance, Banking & Control.

Appendix 6 Social Value

The Social Value Act requires the procurer to consider securing economic, social, or environmental benefits when buying services above the Thresholds through what is being bought, and how it is procured.

This duty relates to:

- *all* service Contracts to which the Regulations apply (including those under the Light Touch Regime;
- services Contracts with a works / supplies element that is so incidental that the Contract would ordinarily be considered a services Contract under the Regulations; and
- Frameworks Agreements for such Contracts.

The Council *MUST* also think about whether consultation on Social Value matters is needed.

The Council's Social Value Policy applies to:

- *all* works Contracts (including Contracts for a mixture of works and services or supplies) where the value of the Contract is expected to exceed £500,000;
- *all* services Contracts and supplies Contracts (including Contracts for a mixture of works and supplies or services, and regardless of whether a full procurement regime applies) where the value of the Contract is expected to exceed £100,000;
- *all* Framework Agreements where the anticipated spend in any financial year is expected to exceed £500,000 for works and £100,000 for goods and services;
- *all* joint Contracts with other purchasers where the value of the Council expenditure is expected to exceed £500,000 for works and £100,000 for goods and services.

The Social Value Policy focuses on achieving targeted recruitment and training through Contracts as the Council's priority, but where other aspects of Social Value are relevant to a Contract they should of course be considered.

Appendix 7 The Council's Contract Register

The Council's Contract Register is available through the ProActis e-tendering system and records and stores information on the Council's Contracts. It provides:

- key information to Council Members and Officers on existing current and expired Contracts;
- limited information to the general public (including start and end dates, Contract value, and key contact details);
- information on Contracts to allow Officers to retender in good time.

When should I put something on the Contract Register?

Recording of Contracts on Contract Register is *Mandatory* for all Contracts valued above £5,000. However, it is recommended for Contracts of any value.

Any agreed exemptions *MUST* be placed on Contract Register.

You *MUST* also keep the information on Contract Register up to date, for example if:

- a Contract is extended;
- the key contact for a Contract changes (e.g. if an Officer leaves).

Before you Purchase Anything

You *MUST* check the Contract Register before you start any procurement activity, in case there is an existing Council Contract which covers your need. Saving time and expense by using an existing Contract will almost always represent Value for Money.

Appendix 8 Framework Agreements and Dynamic Purchasing Systems

Framework Agreements

A Framework Agreement is an ‘umbrella’ agreement negotiated with suppliers whereby at the start of the agreement the exact quantity of goods or services required over the period of the agreement cannot be determined.

1. For example, when you put together an agreement with a supplier to buy stationery, you won’t know exactly how many pens, pencils, rulers etc. you will need over the period of the agreement, or when you will place the orders.
2. The intention behind a framework is to streamline the competitive process by enabling one tender process to set up the protocol by which multiple Contracts can be called off. They can be created so that one, or many, purchasers are able to benefit from the arrangements. Equally they can be created with one provider, or a number (in which case often a “mini-competition” is used to decide which provider is used each time there is a call-off.
3. Frameworks are therefore useful when you anticipate that you are likely to need the same – or similar- provision on several occasions over time. They are normally limited to four years in length.
4. There is no obligation to buy anything from a Framework Agreement and you are not committing the Council to any spend. However, every time you place an order from a Framework Agreement, you are entering into a legally binding Contract.

For more information on Framework Agreements, the Procurement team has a guidance document available on the intranet.

Dynamic Purchasing Systems

A DPS is similar to a framework agreement however whereas a framework is set once the award has been made and no new suppliers can be added to it, a DPS will allow new suppliers to be added, PROVIDED that they meet the objective selection criteria laid out in the original contract notice or advertisement.

Appendix 9 Procurement Options

1. Below the Thresholds

Below the Thresholds, the procurement process is more flexible. See the main body of the CSOs, and Appendix 15 (Minimum Requirements) for details of the requirements for different values of spend.

You *MUST* consider if there is an existing Contract or Framework you could use, either one established by the Council, or one procured by a central purchasing body.

Use of the ProActis e-tendering system is *Mandatory* for Contracts above £5000, allowing you to:

- Advertise the Contract
- Complete A Tender
- Award the Contract.

In the absence of an existing Framework Agreement, all opportunities for Contracts and Framework Agreements above £25,000 that are advertised *MUST* be advertised on Contracts Finder and an Award Notice published within 30 days of the Contract award date. See Appendix 20 for further details.

2. Above the Thresholds

Please see Appendix 19 (Procurement above the Thresholds).

Health and “Social” Services - (Light Touch Regime)

This section applies to Contracts for the following Services:

- Health, social and related Services
- Administrative, social, education, healthcare and cultural Services
- Compulsory Social Security Services
- Benefit Services
- School Meals and Catering Services
- Other community, social and personal Services including Services furnished by trade unions, political organisations, youth associations and other membership organisation Services
- Religious Services
- Hotel and Restaurant Services
- Legal Services
- Other administrative and government Services
- Provision of Services to the community
- Prison related Services, public security and rescue Services to the extent not excluded pursuant to point (h) of Article 10
- Investigation and security Services
- International Services
- Postal Services
- Miscellaneous Services

When you are buying these services, the “Light Touch Regime” will apply if the Contract is valued above the Threshold. The Threshold is higher than for other Goods and Services. See Appendix 16 Thresholds.

Under the Light Touch Regime, you **MUST**:

- issue a Contract Notice or Prior Information Notice in Find A Tender
- follow a transparent and fair procedure which treats potential service providers equally; and
- issue a Contract Award Notice.

The Regulations require the Council to:

- give information in the Contract Notice about:
 - any conditions for participating in the competition (e.g. “selection” criteria);
 - any time limits for contacting the Council;
 - the award procedure that the Council will apply.
- ensure that any time limits imposed on interested providers are reasonable and proportionate.

The Council can choose to apply a procedure that looks similar to one of the procurement procedures (see Appendix 19 (Procurement above the EU Thresholds)) but does not have to.

The Council **MUST** apply the Guidance of the new Light Touch Regime for Health, Social Education and certain other Service Contracts published by Crown Commercial Service.

Appendix 10 Asset Leasing

1. General

- 1.1 The implementation of the Prudential Code introduced new freedoms for local authorities to pursue various capital and revenue options for the funding of asset acquisitions. It is therefore important to ensure the most cost-effective form of funding is sourced for each acquisition.
- 1.2 Objectives of controlling
Asset leases are to ensure-:
- (a) compliance with the Prudential Code
 - (b) terms and conditions of leases are appropriate.
 - (c) the lease is correctly recorded in the Council's accounts.
 - (d) compliance with the Regulations.
- 1.3 Implications if the above objectives are not achieved:
- (a) non-compliance with the Prudential Code Value for Money requirements.
 - (b) the cost of leasing the asset is greater than alternative finance options.
 - (c) the Council's accounts are incorrectly stated.
 - (d) legal challenge as a result of a breach of the Regulations.
- 1.4 Key Responsibilities for Members and Officers:
- (a) every Director *MUST* refer all proposed leasing arrangements, within their Services, to the Director of Finance and S151 Officer and;
 - (b) approval *MUST* be obtained from the Director of Finance and S151 Officer for all asset leases.
- 1.5 More information on the Prudential Code can be obtained from www.cipfa.org
- 1.6 Asset leases are treated as supplies Contracts for the purpose of the Regulations and so the Regulations will apply in the normal way.

Appendix 11 Contract Forms and Terms & Conditions

1. General

The Regulations require the Council to make its procurement documents available electronically from the published date of the Contract Notice (Regulation 53). Procurement documents include the proposed Terms and Conditions of Contract (T&Cs) as well as SQs and ITTs. This means that the SQ, ITT and T&Cs, for any procurement process *MUST* be drafted before the Contract Notice is issued.

The Council considers it good practice to apply this rule to all Contracts, whether or not the Regulations are followed. It is therefore the expectation that the Contract form will have been decided on before the procurement / tendering process starts.

2. Contracts below the Thresholds

For the majority of Contracts under the Thresholds it will normally be appropriate to use the Council's standard small value Terms and Conditions which are available on the Procurement intranet page.

3. Contracts above the Thresholds

For Contracts above the Thresholds you should use the Council's standard Terms and Conditions which are available on the Procurement intranet page.

It may be more appropriate to use an industry standard form of Contract, or a bespoke Contract drafted for the particular Contract in question.

When considering which type of Contract to use, you should consider the points in the guidance document attached, and if appropriate discuss with the Procurement team.

Appendix 12 Scheme of Delegations

The following people / positions / committees have delegated authority to agree or approve expenditure:

CONTRACT VALUE	AUTHORITY TO PROCEED	AUTHORITY TO AGREE PROCUREMENT PROCESS	PLACE ON COMMISSIONING INTENTIONS (Y/N)	APPROVAL DOCS REQUIRED	AUTHORITY TO AWARD CONTRACT	AUTHORITY TO SIGN AN EXEMPTION	AUTHORITY FOR SIGNING & SEALING ⁵
Up to £5000	n/a	Cost Centre Manager	N	Bid Evaluation	Cost Centre Manager	Cost Centre Manager	Cost Centre Manager (signing)
£5,001 to £50,000	Over £20,000 requires Contracts Panel Approval ⁶	Cost Centre Manager	N	Bid Evaluation	Cost Centre Manager	Director	Cost Centre Manager (Signing)
£50,001 to £100,000	Contract Panel (see footnote)	Service Area Manager	Y	Tender Evaluation Document	Service Area Manager	Director	Director (Signing) unless sealing is agreed to be appropriate.
£100,001 to Threshold	Contract Panel (see footnote)	Director	Y	Tender Evaluation Document	Director (Recorded Officer Decision)	Chief Operating Officer	Director (Signing) unless sealing is agreed to be

⁵ Contracts must be signed by the relevant individual and issued to the successful supplier using the Docusign electronic document signature system. Contracts which need sealing must be signed in Docusign and sealed manually.

⁶ Not required for Capital Expenditure if on Council's Capital Programme

							appropriate Above £500,000 Head of Legal (Sealing)
Above Threshold & Emergency Purchases	Contract Panel (see footnote)	Director	Y (but not emergency purchases)	Tender Evaluation Document & Regulation 84 report	Chief Operating Officer (Recorded Officer Decision) with Cabinet Member approval (within budget)	NOT ALLOWED above threshold	Director (Signing) unless sealing is agreed to be appropriate Above £500,000 Head of Legal (Sealing)

Appendix 13 Evaluation Criteria & Debriefing

1. General

The Council *MUST* make its “procurement documents” available electronically from the date of the Contract Notice. The evaluation criteria and the weightings *MUST* be included in either the Contract Notice itself, or in the procurement documents. This means that you *MUST* have agreed the evaluation criteria for the Tender before the Contract Notice is issued.

2. Most Economically Advantageous Tender

Evaluation criteria *MUST* be based on the “Most Economically Advantageous Tender”. This can be identified by:

- price or cost (using life-cycle costing)
- the best price-quality ratio (considering qualitative, environmental and/or social aspects linked to the subject matter of the Contract), including:
 - quality: technical merit, aesthetic and functional characteristics, accessibility, design for all users, social, environmental and innovative characteristics and trading and its conditions;
 - organisation, qualification and experience of staff assigned to performing the Contract (where this can have a significant impact on the level of the performance of the Contract);
 - after-sales service and technical assistance, delivery conditions such as delivery date, process and period, or period of completion.

If a Contract is for a fixed price, you can use just quality criteria.

The Procurement Team can advise on what to use for scoring matrices and evaluation criteria.

3. Debriefing

For further information on how to debrief suppliers, please contact the Procurement Team. There is a strict legal process for above threshold debriefs which must be done correctly.

Appendix 14 Capability & Financial Checks

1. General

You *MUST* ensure that any supplier interested in doing business with the Council has both the technical capability and the financial capacity to be able to perform the Contract.

2. Below Thresholds

Below the threshold you *MUST NOT* use a Selection Questionnaire to shortlist tenderers. You can ask “suitability assessment questions” that are relevant to the

subject matter of the contract and are proportionate. These can relate to minimum standards of suitability and capability.

3. Above Thresholds

Procurements above the Thresholds using one of the procedures described in Appendix 19 Procurements above the Threshold – Options and Procedures. This includes procedures which use a Selection Questionnaire to shortlist candidates before inviting Tenders.

When using a SQ, you *MUST* use the Cabinet Office standard SQ. This includes the government standard questions on financial standing.

4. Framework Agreements and Lots

There are specific rules that *MUST* be applied for Framework Agreements and lots. Please see the Guide to Framework Agreements on the Procurement intranet page.

Appendix 15 Minimum Requirements

1. Contracts Minimum Requirements

VALUE OF CONTRACT	MINIMUM PURCHASING REQUIREMENTS	MINIMUM CONTRACT REQUIREMENTS	ENTER ON COMMISSIONING INTENTIONS	USE OF PROACTIS	ENTER ON CONTRACT REGISTER
Up to £5000	- Use purchasing card if accepted by supplier - Demonstrate VfM by testing the market - Think Local	Ensure written record of purchase and Purchase Card Spend Management System updated if relevant.	No	Recommended	n/a
£5,001 - £50,000	- Think Local - 3 written Quotes via ProActis if <£25k - Advertise on Contracts Finder >£25K (or 3 quotes if using local market) - Do NOT use a SQ but can ask suitability questions - State award criteria - Award Contract on Contracts Finder if >£25K	Council's Standard Contract Terms (unless agreed with the Legal or Procurement departments)	No	Mandatory – (to comply with Local Government transparency requirements – See Appendix 4)	Yes
£50,001 - £100,000	- Think Local - Advertise on Contracts Finder - Consider Social Value Policy - Do NOT use SQ but can ask suitability questions - State award criteria - Award on Contracts Finder	Council's Standard Contract Terms (unless agreed with the Legal or Procurement departments)	Yes	Mandatory – (to comply with Local Government transparency requirements – See Appendix 4)	Yes
£100,001 – PPR	- Advertise on Contracts Finder	Follow guidance at Appendix 11 (Contract	Yes	Mandatory – (to comply with Local	Yes

Threshold see table below for thresholds	- Apply Social Value Policy - Can use SQ for Works but NOT for Goods and Services below threshold - State award criteria - Award Contract on Contracts Finder - Contracts over £550k must be sealed	Forms and Terms & Conditions)		Government transparency requirements – See Appendix 4)	
Above PPR Threshold see table below for thresholds	- Follow a compliant procedure (see Appendix 9 (Procurement Options), Appendix 5 (Drafting Specifications) and Appendix 13 (Evaluation Criteria) and Appendix 20 (Procurement above the PPR Thresholds - Options) - Apply Social Value Policy - Advertise on Contracts Finder and in Find A Tender - Contract <i>MUST</i> be sealed - Award Contract in Find A Tender	Follow guidance at Appendix 11 (Contract Forms and Terms & Conditions)	Yes	Mandatory – (to comply with Local Government transparency requirements – See Appendix 4)	Yes
<i>Light Touch Regime – Below threshold</i>	- Think Local - Advertise on Contracts Finder if >£25k or 3 written tenders if using local market - Apply the Social Value Policy	Council's Standard Contract Terms (unless agreed by the Legal or Procurement Departments)	Yes (above £50K)	Mandatory – (to comply with Local Government transparency requirements – See Appendix 4)	Yes

	- State award criteria				
Light Touch Regime – above threshold	- Follow LTR compliant procedure (see Appendix 7 Procurement Options) - Apply Social Value Policy - Advertise on Contracts Finder - Award Contract in Find A Tender - Contract <i>MUST</i> be sealed	Follow guidance at Appendix 11 (Contract Forms and Terms & Conditions)	Yes	Mandatory – (to comply with Local Government transparency requirements – See Appendix 4)	Yes

Appendix 16 Procurement Thresholds & Timescales

TYPE OF CONTRACT	THRESHOLD (£) (TO 31/12/21) NET OF VAT	NEW THRESHOLD (£) (FROM 1/1/2022 – 31/12/2023) INCLUSIVE OF VAT	NEW THRESHOLD (£) (FROM 1/1/2022 – 31/12/2023) BEFORE VAT
Works Contracts and Concession Contracts	£4,733,252	5,336,937	4,269,550
Supplies and/or (most) Services (for Local Government)	£189,330	213,477	170,782
Social and other specific Services (Light Touch Regime applies)	£663,540	663,540 (if inclusive of VAT)	530,832 (if without VAT)

Please note that the new thresholds are inclusive of VAT (due to the UK's obligations under the WTO).

	SELECTION STAGE	TENDER STAGE	IF ELECTRONIC TENDER ACCEPTED	TENDER FOLLOWING PIN	TENDER BY AGREEMENT	URGENCY
Open Procedure	n/a	35 days	30 days	15 days	n/a	15 days
Restricted Procedure	30 days	30 days	25 days	10 days	At least 10 days	15/10 days
Competitive Procedure with Negotiation	30 days	30 days	25 days	10 days	At least 10 days	15/10 days
Competitive Dialogue	30 days	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a	n/a

The timeframes above are MINIMUM number of days from date the notice is sent. It is recommended you allow 3 extra days to allow for notice publication.

Appendix 17 Document Retention

Retention Classification	Retention Period
Contracts under seal (above Threshold)	12 years from Contract end This includes all Contract documents (specifications, drawings, certificates, Contract instructions and all relevant correspondence)
Contracts not under seal	6 years from Contract end This includes all Contract documents (specifications, drawings, certificates, Contract instructions and all relevant correspondence)
Unsuccessful Tenders and Quotes	4 years from the award of Contract
Abandoned Tenders and Quotes	4 years from the date of abandonment
Purchase files	<i>MUST</i> be kept up to date at all times within the Council's e-tendering system and Contract Register
Hard copies of Contracts	Store locally for 6 years after date of purchase then archive 12 years after purchase, review for possible destruction/recycling

The sealing of tenders is carried out by the Legal Department. For more information about the sealing process see the Guide on the Procurement Intranet page.

Appendix 18 Tender & Contract Variations, Extensions & Termination

1. Tender Variations/Variant Bids

Tenderers can submit variant bids linked to the subject matter of the bid, however the Contract Notice or ITT must state the minimum requirements to be met by the variants and specific requirements for their presentation, in particular whether variants may be submitted only where a Tender which is not a variant has also been submitted.

You *MUST* ensure that the award criteria can be applied to variants meeting those minimum requirements as well as to conforming “core” Tenders which are not variants. Only variants meeting the minimum requirements laid down by the Council shall be taken into consideration.

2. Contract Extensions

When you award a Contract/Framework, you *MUST* state the start and end dates and whether there is an option to extend beyond the ‘initial term’. If an extension clause has been included in the Contract, then it is permissible to extend but this should only be done if it represents value for money to extend and if the performance of the supplier warrants it.

Procurement have an extension letter template which can be used. Approval *MUST* be obtained prior to extending any contract. For contracts above £20k, this must be obtained from the Contracts Panel.

3. Contract Variation

Contract variations are risky and can trigger the need for a new procurement exercise. The Regulations set out the changes that can be made to a Contract or Framework Agreement. You *MUST* read the guidance and seek advice from the Procurement Department before making any Contract variation that could fall foul of the Regulations.

4. Contract Termination

Early termination *MUST* be approved by the Head of Strategic Procurement. Contracts may be terminated early by agreement prior to the expiry date of the Contract and in accordance with the termination provisions set out in the Contract.

Appendix 19 Procurement above the Thresholds

Options & Procedures

This Appendix lists the main choices of procurement procedure and the other routes available. You *MUST* seek the support of Procurement and Legal when you undertake any procurement that is above threshold.

Main Choices of Procedure

- Open Procedure
- Restricted Procedure

Other Routes

- Competitive Procedure with Negotiation
- Competitive Dialogue
- Concession Contracts
- Dynamic purchasing systems
- Electronic auction

Lots - if you do not divide the Contract up into lots, you *MUST* explain why in the Contract Notice or procurement documents.

Appendix 20 Below Threshold Contracts.⁷

(caught by Part 4 of the Regulations)

1. Using Contracts Finder to Advertise Contracts

If you advertise an opportunity, then you **MUST** place an advert on Contracts Finder via the ProActis e-tendering system).

This does not include where you call off from a Framework Agreement or another select/approved list.

This does include when you issue a Prior Information Notice (PIN) or similar – you **MUST** advertise “*regardless of how specific the opportunity is*”.

Adverts on Contract Finder **MUST** include the following information:

the date and time by which an interested supplier **MUST** respond if it wishes to be considered (the time period allowed for responses but be sufficient but proportionate);

how a supplier **MUST** respond to the advert, and to whom; and

any other requirements for participating in the procurement.

In reality, Contracts Finder requires more information than this, including an (estimated) Contract value.

When you advertise on Contracts Finder, you **MUST** offer unrestricted and full direct internet access free of charge to any relevant Contract and procurement documents and specify in the notice the internet address where those documents can be accessed.

Selection Questionnaire

You **MUST not** use a SQ for Contracts below the threshold unless it is for a Works contract.

Instead, you *can* ask “suitability assessment” questions that are relevant to the subject matter of the procurement and are proportionate. These questions should relate to information / evidence you need that the candidate meet requirements / minimum standards for:

- suitability;
- legal status;
- financial standing.

Contract Award Notices on Contracts Finder

The following requirements apply when you award a public Contract – *whether or not* it was advertised on Contracts Finder. This includes when you call off from a Framework Agreement.

You **MUST**, within a reasonable time, publish the following information on Contracts Finder:

the name of the contractor awarded the Contract;

⁷ In this case, this threshold applies to works contracts as well as services and supplies.

the date on which the Contract was entered into;

the value of the Contract;

whether the contractor is an "SME" or "VCSE".

"VCSE" means a non-governmental organisation that is value-driven, and which principally reinvests its surpluses to further social, environmental or cultural objectives".

You can withhold any of this information where its release:

would impede law enforcement or would otherwise be contrary to the public interest;

would prejudice the legitimate commercial interests of a particular economic operator (whether public or private); or

might prejudice fair competition between suppliers.

This is most likely to apply to the value of the Contract awarded.

3.9 FINANCIAL REGULATIONS AND BUDGET MANAGEMENT SCHEME

**Bath & North East
Somerset Council**

Improving People's Lives

Financial Regulations

(Excluding all Schools)

And Budget Management Scheme

September 2018

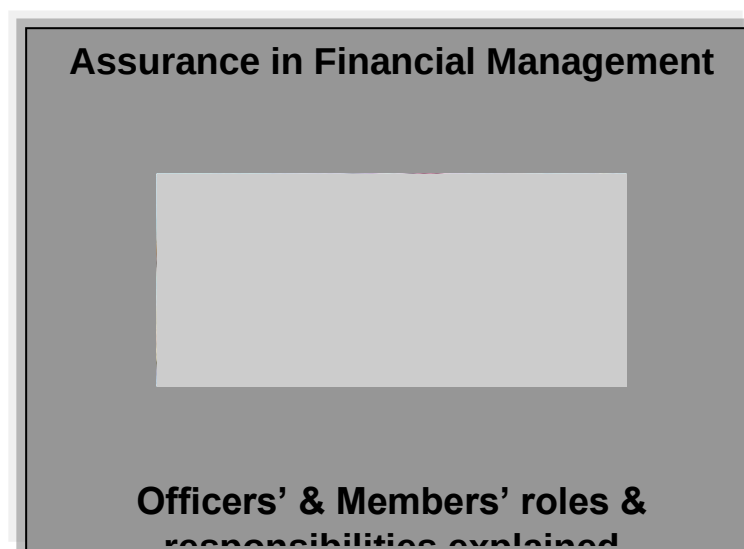


Table of Contents

Section	Details	Page No.
1	Introduction	3
2	Financial Management – Roles and Responsibilities explained	5
3	Internal Audit	10
4	Risk Management	12
5	Fraud Prevention	14
6	Budget Management and Control	16
7	Revenue Budget Preparation	19
8	Capital Expenditure	21

9	<u>Treasury Management (Investments and Borrowing)</u>	23
10	<u>Accounting Systems and Processes</u>	24
11	<u>Payroll</u>	26
12	<u>Ordering & Paying for Works, Goods & Services</u>	28
13	<u>Income Collection</u>	32
14	<u>Bank Accounts, Banking & Cash Handling</u>	34
15	<u>Asset Management</u>	36
16	<u>Asset Leasing</u>	38
17	<u>Insurance</u>	39
18	<u>VAT</u>	41
19	<u>Information Systems Management</u>	43
20	<u>'Employee' Interests, Gifts and Hospitality</u>	47
21	<u>Corporate Purchasing Cards</u>	50
22	<u>International Travel</u>	52
23	<u>Commissioning & Procurement</u>	54
24	<u>Member's Allowances & Expenses</u>	56
25	<u>External Arrangements Partnerships</u>	57
26	<u>External Funding</u>	60
27	<u>Work for Third Parties</u>	61
28	<u>Avon Pension Fund</u>	62
APP 1	Budget Management Scheme	64

Section 1 - Introduction

Why do we need Financial Regulations?

The challenges faced by the Council to provide and maintain high quality services will continually change. In order to respond effectively to these challenges there is a need to effectively manage the resources used by the Council on behalf of the local taxpayer. Stewardship of Council finances requires high standards of financial integrity and accountability.

The Financial Regulations define the boundaries within which we operate to effectively manage risk. They clarify roles and responsibilities and provide a framework for decision making.

All large organisations have a set of rules to regulate their finances and to protect the interests of their stakeholders and staff. However, the rules themselves are not of any use unless they are known and understood.

Financial Regulations are supported by a detailed set of Codes of Practice as well as supporting strategies, policies and procedures, all of which interlink and must be understood in order for the Council to obtain VFM and act transparently.

Who should read and understand Financial Regulations?

The Council's Section 151 Officer, as the Council's statutory Chief Financial Officer is ultimately responsible for ensuring the proper administration of the Council's financial affairs. These regulations form part of the arrangements that the Council's Section 151 Officer has put in place to discharge his statutory responsibilities and compliance is required by Members, Officers and other individuals carrying out work on behalf of the Council. This includes Council employees working for the Avon Pension Fund. LEA Schools are required to comply with specific School Financial Regulations which have been incorporated into the Schools Financial Manual.

Directors are responsible for bringing the regulations to the attention of every member of staff, providing the necessary training and monitoring compliance.

Any known breaches of Financial Regulations must be reported via the relevant Director / Corporate Director to the Chief Finance Officer (Section 151 Officer- Local Government Act 1972) or Chief Audit Executive. Failure to comply with Financial Regulations and Codes of Practice will be subject to investigation and may result in disciplinary action.

Codes of Practice

The Financial Regulations must be read in conjunction with the various Council Policies and Codes of Practice, which provide details of the processes, procedures and controls, and which must be adhered to.

The Financial Regulations will be found on the Council's Internal Web site along with copies of all related Council Codes of Practice, Policies, and Procedures.

Compliance

Directors are responsible for ensuring that all staff (including non-permanent staff) in their services are aware of the existence and content of the Council's Financial Regulations, Codes of Practice and other internal regulatory documents and that they comply with them. Directors are responsible for reporting any breaches of the Financial Regulations to the Chief Finance Officer, who is also responsible for reporting, where appropriate, breaches of the financial regulations to Council and Cabinet. The Council's Disciplinary Policies / Procedures will be used if non-compliance is identified.

Maintenance

The Chief Finance Officer supported by the Chief Audit Executive is responsible for maintaining a continuous review of the financial regulations and supporting Codes of Practice and submitting any additions or changes necessary to the full Council for approval. He / she may issue advice, guidance and procedures to underpin the financial regulations that Members, officers and others acting on behalf of the Council are required to follow. Directors must advise the Chief Finance Officer on circumstances that may require the development of supplementary advice and guidance on financial procedures or systems of internal control.

Section 2 - Financial Management Roles & Responsibilities

The Council's Financial Regulations, Budget Management Scheme and the Codes of Practice on Matters of Financial Administration (including Officers' Code of Conduct) are bound separately but form part of the formal Constitution of the Council which is accessible through the Council Website.

Sound financial management is critical to the Council in successfully achieving its plans, objectives and quality standards and is essential in order to:

- plan and maintain effective use of resources to achieve agreed service delivery standards;
- comply with legislation, related professional Codes of Practice and accounting standards;
- provide accurate, complete and valid accounts and information which demonstrate accountability to the public;
- ensure the appropriate use and security of financial and physical assets;
- help the Council conduct its affairs in an efficient, effective and economic manner.

Financial management is, therefore, concerned with the policies, processes, procedures and standards of the Council. Within this context the key areas of responsibility, and associated specific financial regulations, are as follows:

Council Members	Approve Financial Regulations. Set the overall budget framework and monitor performance against agreed targets.

	Provide the reporting framework to monitor the achievement of Service objectives within the resources allocated. Determine the level of responsibility for financial management given to Services, Chief Officers and Local Managers.

Corporate Audit Committee	The Council has delegated to the Corporate Audit Committee its powers and duties relating to the following matters: A) To approve on behalf of Council its Annual Accounts (and those of the Avon Pension Fund), as prepared in accordance with the statutory requirements and guidance and oversee all Accounting Policies and Statements including the Council's Treasury Management arrangements. B) To approve the External Auditors' Plan and to monitor its delivery and effectiveness during the year. C) To approve the Internal Audit Plan within the budget agreed by Council and to monitor its delivery and effectiveness. D) To consider and approve the Annual Governance Statement as prepared in accordance with statutory requirements and to monitor progress on the significant issues and actions identified. E) To review periodically the Council's Risk Management arrangements, make recommendations and monitor progress. F) To review key financial governance procedures, i.e. Financial Regulations, Contract Standing Orders, Anti-Fraud & Corruption Policy and recommend to Council any necessary amendments. G) To consider the annual Audit & Inspection Letter from the External Auditor and to monitor progress on accepted recommendations. H) To monitor and promote good corporate governance within the Council and in its dealings with partner bodies and contractors, including review of the Council's Code of Corporate Governance. I) To consider and make recommendations of any other matters relating to Corporate Governance which are properly referred to the Committee or which come to its attention. J) To make an annual report to Council on its work.

Chief Executive	Provides strategic management and establishes a framework for management direction, style and standards. Secures a process for resource allocation that ensures due consideration of policy. Monitors the performance of the Council.
Chief Finance Officer	The Director - Finance carries out the statutory role of Chief Finance Officer: (a) The proper administration of the Council's financial affairs and advising on effective internal control. (b) Setting and monitoring compliance with financial management standards. (c) Issuing advice, guidance and procedures to underpin the financial regulations. (d) Determining the accounting procedures and financial records for the Council. (e) Selecting accounting policies and ensuring that they are applied consistently. (f) Advising on the corporate financial position and on the key financial controls necessary to secure sound financial management. (g) Preparing the revenue budget, supplementary revenue estimates and capital programme. (h) Establishing Treasury management arrangements. (j) Preparation & consolidation of the Accounts (k) Reporting to the Council on the robustness of the annual budget and the adequacy of reserves. (l) Report to the Council, Cabinet and external auditor if the Council or one of its officers : 1. has made, or is about to make, a decision which involves incurring unlawful expenditure.

	2. has taken, or is about to take, an unlawful action which has resulted or would result in a loss or deficiency to the Council. 3. is about to make an unlawful entry in the Council's accounts. (m) Advising the Pension Committee on all matters of policy concerned with the administration of the Avon Pension Fund, including the investment management arrangements.
Corporate Directors	Provide strategic management, guidance and overview of budget setting and budget monitoring ensuring that there is due consideration of the Council's agreed policies and strategies. Provide strategic challenge and overview of major projects (capital and revenue).
Monitoring Officer	The Director (Legal & Democratic) carries out the statutory role of Monitoring Officer. The Monitoring Officer reports to the Council if a contravention of law, Code of Practice or any maladministration has arisen through any decision or omission by the Council, by any Member, Committee or Officer of the Council.
Directors	Ultimately accountable for all budgets with their area of control and can determine the appropriate level of delegation of responsibilities within those areas of control in accordance with advice and guidance provided by the Chief Finance Officer, Corporate Directors and the Council's auditors. Establish clear accountabilities for all managers that include objectives of and responsibility for systems and information. Ensure all their staff understand and comply with Financial Regulations, Contract Standing Orders, Council policies and procedures and Service specific instructions.

	Ensure that Service Managers have effective procedures for:- Accomplishment of their objectives; Compliance with rules and regulations; The reliability and integrity of information; Efficient and effective use of resources; and Safeguarding resources. Operate systems/processes to monitor/verify that internal controls are in place and operating effectively. Monitor compliance with these regulations.
Chief Internal Auditor (Chief Audit Executive)	Provide an independent Internal Audit Service which has unfettered access to the Chief Executive and Senior Management and is able to access all relevant records and information within the Authority to carry out its role. Provide independent, objective assurance / advice to management on the operation of internal controls (including financial) to improve an organisation's operations. Provide an annual opinion on the framework of internal control and risk management. Investigate on behalf of the organisation any suspected financial irregularities or misuse of resources and ensure that there is a system in place to allow staff, contractors or the public at large to report serious concerns confidentially.

External Audit	Report on whether the Council's accounts and statements present fairly the Council's financial position. Report on whether the Council has put in place proper arrangements for securing economy, efficiency and effectiveness in its use of resources. This is known as the Value for Money (VfM) conclusion. Grant Claim certification, where appropriate.
Data Protection Officer	Responsibility for overseeing all arrangements in connection with the management and protection of information, specifically personal data of employees, Members, third party providers, customers and users of council services.
All Employees	Have a responsibility for following Financial Regulations and other Council policies & adopted regulations (including Contract Standing Orders, Code of Conduct) and Service specific instructions. Help the Council achieve open and honest administration by supporting approved fraud prevention strategies and avoiding potential conflicts of interest. Assist Directors and Service Managers in operating effective procedures to:- 2. accomplish objectives; 3. comply with rules and regulations; 4. maintain the reliability and integrity of information; 5. efficiently and effectively use resources: and 6. safeguard Council resources. Keep accurate and comprehensive records to support the transactions undertaken on the Council's behalf.

	To provide the necessary assistance to Internal and External Auditors to meet their requirements.

In addition, please refer to:

The Council's Constitution

Section 3 – Internal Audit

Why is this important?

The purpose of this section of is to highlight the authority delegated to the Council's Chief Audit Executive (term used by the Public Sector Internal Audit Standards), when reviewing the accounting and financial arrangements within the Council.

Statutory Requirements:

The Accounts and Audit Regulations 2015, Part 2 (6), require that a “relevant body shall maintain an adequate and effective system of internal audit of its accounting records and of its system of internal control in accordance with the proper practices in relation to internal control”. These Regulations cover the requirements of Section 151 of the Local Government Act 1972, which states that authorities must “make arrangements for the proper administration of their financial affairs and shall secure that one of their officers has responsibility for administration of those affairs.”

The Internal Audit Charter:

The Council's Chief Audit Executive (CAE) must periodically review the Internal Audit Charter and present it to senior management and the Corporate Audit Committee for approval.

The Internal Audit Charter sets out the purpose, authority and principal responsibilities of the Internal Audit Service for Bath and North East Somerset Council and includes the following sections:

1. Internal Audit's Purpose and Mission
2. Internal Audit's Statutory Role
3. Standards of Professional Practice of Internal Auditing
4. Managements Responsibilities for Internal Audit
5. Internal Audits Responsibility and Objectives
6. The Scope of Internal Audit
7. Internal Audit Reporting Lines
8. Internal Audit Independence

9. Internal Audit Fraud Related Work
10. Internal Audit's Right of Access
11. Relationship with External Audit and Other Assurance Providers
12. Quality Assurance and Improvement Plan

It is of particular importance that Council Members and staff understand Internal Audit's "Right of Access."

The Accounts and Audit Regulations 2015 provides that any Officer of the Council must make available such documents of the Council that relate to its' accounts and other records as appear to be necessary for the purpose of the Audit.

The Chief Audit Executive or their authorised representative shall have authority to:-

7. Enter at any reasonable time, any operational or administrative Council premises or land and have access to all Council property;
8. Have access to (and where necessary to copy or retain) all records whether manually or electronically held, documentation, correspondence and computer systems relating to any transaction of the Council, or non-official funds operated by Council staff;
9. Require and receive such explanations as are necessary concerning any matter under examination
10. Require any employee of the Council to produce or account for cash, stores, or any other property under their custody or control;
11. Examine any work or services carried out for the Council by an employee or contractor, and any goods purchased on behalf of the Council;
12. Review, appraise and report on the soundness, adequacy and application of internal controls. This includes those controls to protect Council resources, property, and assets from loss/waste.

In addition, please refer to:

Internal Audit Service Charter

Section 4 – Risk Management

Why is this important?

Risk management is an integral part of the corporate governance framework for Local Government. This is detailed in the Council's Local Code of Corporate Governance which is reviewed annually and reported in the Council's Annual Governance Statement.

The Council's Risk Management Strategy will help support and underpin the delivery of its Vision & Values.

Objectives of risk management processes:

- Protecting and adding value by supporting the achievement of the Sustainable Community Strategy.
- Improved strategic, operational and financial management.
- Contributing to more efficient use/allocation of resources.
- Mitigation of key threats and taking advantage of key opportunities.
- Protecting and enhancing assets and image.
- Improving decision-making (making the right decisions).
- Safeguarding of tangible and intangible assets.
- Promotion of innovation and change.
- Optimising operational efficiency and therefore delivering efficiency gains and value for money.
- Allocating time and management effort based on formal assessment of threats and opportunities.
- Avoid nasty surprises, shocks, crises and the time taken to 'fire fight' these.
- Improved customer service delivery.

Key Responsibilities for Staff & Members:

1. Council Members gain an understanding and promote risk management and its benefits throughout the Council & its partners, ensuring Members take risk management into consideration when making decisions.
2. Both the Cabinet and Elected Members oversee the effective management of risk throughout the Council and its partnerships, and gain an understanding of its benefits, ensuring officers develop and implement a comprehensive approach to risk management.

3. The Corporate Audit Committee provides independent assurance of the risk management framework and associated control environment, independent scrutiny of the Council and partners financial and non-financial performance, and oversee the financial reporting process.
4. The Council's Senior Management Team are responsible for overseeing and endorsing to Cabinet the Council's risk management strategy, and promoting a culture of risk management and awareness throughout the Council.
5. Each Director's Management Teams gain an understanding and promote the risk management process and its benefits, oversee the implementation of the risk management strategy and agree any inputs and resources required supporting the work corporately.
6. Each Director ensures that the risk management process is promoted, managed and implemented effectively in their service areas within the organisation. Liaising with external agencies to identify and manage risk. Disseminating relevant information to service managers and employees.
7. Service Managers raise awareness, manage and implement the risk management process effectively in their service areas, recommending any necessary training for employees on risk management. Incorporating risk ownership through the appraisal scheme with employees and share relevant information with colleagues in other service areas.
8. All employees of the Council manage risk effectively in their jobs, liaising with their line manager to assess areas of risk in their job. Identify new or changing risks in their job and feed these back to their line manager.
9. The Internal Audit function will challenge the risk management process, including the identification and evaluation of risk and provide assurance to Officers and Members on the effectiveness of controls.
10. The Chief Finance Officer supports the Council and its services in the effective development, implementation and review of the Council's risk management processes. Identify and communicate risk management issues to services, and assist in undertaking risk management activity through training or direct support.

In addition, please refer to:

The Council's Risk Management Strategy

Section 5 – Counter Fraud

Why is this important?

The Council's Counter Fraud Strategy was approved to direct the Council's counter fraud resources on the key areas of fraud risk and bring together the Anti-Fraud and Corruption Policy, the Anti-Money Laundering Policy and Anti-Bribery Policy.

We all have a responsibility for dealing with public funds and assets. The Council controls millions of pounds of public money and we must take very seriously the high expectations of the public and the degree of scrutiny to which the affairs of the Council are subject.

Bath and North East Somerset acknowledges the responsibility it has for the administration of public funds and wishes to emphasise to the public and its staff the importance it places upon probity, financial control and transparency in its administration.

The Council is committed to prevention, detection and investigation of all forms of fraud and corruption.

The Council recognises that fraud and corruption undermine the high standards of public service, which it promotes, and reduces the resources available for the good of the whole community.

Counter Fraud – Key Principles:

Leading by example, our Council will ensure that:

- Everyone within the organisation takes responsibility for the prevention and detection of fraud and corruption.
- There is compliance with key policies and procedures.
- Fraud is not tolerated and that all such cases are thoroughly investigated.
- All officers and Members have access to counter fraud and corruption guidance.
- High standards of internal control are promoted.
- There is a safe environment to report suspected cases of fraud and corruption.

- Rigorous action is taken against anyone found guilty of fraud or corruption. This will be through the Council's disciplinary process and by taking legal action as appropriate.

Key Responsibilities for Members and Staff:

1. Directors and Service Managers are responsible for the prevention and detection of fraud, error and wasteful practices within their Service environment.
2. They must inform the Chief Finance Officer and / or the 'Chief Audit Executive', immediately of any suspected financial irregularity.
3. All Members and Officers must report to the Council's Statutory Officers and the 'Chief Audit Executive' of any circumstances which could involve the Council in a breach of rules and regulations e.g. inappropriate expenditure.
4. All employees have an important part to play in reporting concerns about wrong doing at work by other Officers, Members, suppliers, contractors or others acting on behalf of the Council.
5. In this respect, employees are under a duty to assist with the discharge of these responsibilities in compliance with the Whistleblowing Policy.
6. Abuse of the Whistleblowing Policy by raising malicious, unfounded allegations will be treated as a serious disciplinary matter.
7. In addition, the Council has a legal duty to implement a procedure to enable the reporting of suspicions of money laundering. Accordingly, any Member or employee, who in the course of Council business becomes aware that criminal property or funds could be involved, should report their suspicion promptly, in accordance with the Anti-Money Laundering Policy. Failure to do this may result in a criminal offence being committed.
8. The UK Bribery Act, 2010 introduces a corporate offence of failure to prevent bribery.

The three key offences which may have an impact on the authority are:

- Bribery of another person
- Accepting a bribe
- Failing to prevent bribery

The Act states that organisations will be responsible for their employees' corrupt acts unless they can show they had adequate policies and procedures in place to combat bribery.

If any member of Staff or Member has concerns in this area they must report the matter in compliance with the Council's Whistleblowing Policy.

In addition, please refer to:

The Council's Counter Fraud Strategy
The Council's Anti-fraud and Corruption Policy
Whistleblowing Policy
Anti-Money Laundering Policy
Council's Employee's Code of Conduct
Council's General Employment Standards and Rules
Supplier Code of Conduct

Section 6 - Budget Management and Control

Why is this important?

Budgets are needed so that the Council can plan, monitor and control the way resources are allocated and spent. Budgets reflect Council, Service and local priorities and give authority to Local Managers to incur expenditure to meet targets.

Budget management ensures that once the budget has been approved by the full Council, resources allocated are used for their intended purpose and are properly accounted for. Budgetary control is a continuous process, which manages spending against budget during the financial year. In addition, it provides the mechanism that calls to account managers responsible for defined elements of the budget.

The purpose of the Budget Management Scheme rules

- a) To ensure that income and expenditure are in line with the agreed Council budgets and service plans (consistency of purpose),
- b) Overall Financial control of Council income and expenditure.

The implications of poor budget management

- 1. The Council may not be operating within the law;
- 2. Policies and objectives may not be achieved;
- 3. Resources may not be used in accordance with agreed authority;
- 4. Failure to secure value for money (efficient & effective use of resources);
- 5. Decisions made without the benefit of full or appropriate information;
- 6. Inability to take appropriate action at the right time.

Key requirements for budget management and control

Section A: Revenue Budgets:

- Budget approval is required for all expenditure.
- The Chief Executive and Corporate Directors have overall responsibility for the delivery of the strategic objectives for the Council and thus have a responsibility for effective performance monitoring of Directors on matters of budget management.
- Directors are fully responsible for Budget Management.
- Each Director will develop and maintain effective arrangements for financial management within their Service area.
- Each Director will nominate a Budget Manager for each cost centre heading, as appropriate.
- Budget Managers accept accountability for their budgets and the level of service to be delivered and understand their financial responsibilities.
- Budget Managers follow an approved certification process for all expenditure.
- Income and expenditure must be properly recorded and accounted for by all Budget Managers. This is achieved by ensuring the accurate use of accounting codes and timely monitoring of financial information.
- Budget Managers are responsible for maintaining a current forecast of their budget and communicating this to their Finance Team. Where a Variance, the difference between forecast and budget, is recurrent this should be identified for future correction.
- Services are to be managed within their budgets using financial forecasting, virement and carry forward, as appropriate.
- Expenditure is committed only against an approved budget head.
- Any virement which has the effect of changing a policy contained in the Policy Framework must be approved by the Council.
- All virements must be reported to the Cabinet on a quarterly basis.
- Any proposed use of general balances, in excess of limits set by the Budget Management Scheme, must be recommended by the Cabinet and/or approved by the Council.
- ❑ Any Council earmarked reserve set aside by Council for a specific purpose may not be spent on any other purpose without the permission of Council.
- ❑ Informal Cabinet and Senior Management Team will receive monthly finance dashboard reports which monitor key financial risks.
- ❑ The Cabinet will receive budget monitoring reports (including capital monitoring) at its public meetings, normally four times a year
- ❑ The Cabinet is required to approve the outturn position following the financial year end.

Section B: Capital Budgets:

- ❑ Directors are responsible for budget management of all capital schemes (including major and other projects) within their service area, all capital

schemes must have a designated responsible Budget Manager who may or may not be a Director.

- ❑ Before any scheme is included in any programme, budget management responsibility must be assigned.
- ❑ The Capital Programme is agreed by Council (including Full and Provisional Schemes).
- ❑ Directors are delegated to approve the movement of Provisional Schemes to Full Approval provided a business case can demonstrate that the scheme is fully funded (both Capital and Revenue) in accordance with the Budget Management Scheme.
- ❑ The Project Management Handbook sets out the process for managing a project of any type or value, along with roles and responsibilities of all parties involved and provides the necessary templates and guidance to manage a project through to completion.
 - ❑ With effective budget planning and management, overspending should not occur. If, however, one occurs it must be recovered. The Director is responsible for making proposals for the avoidance or recovery of any overspending to the Chief Finance Officer in the first instance.
- ❑ Capital schemes must have a review and reporting process. For example, Directors Reviews will receive reports of progress in order to focus on the key issues and project spend, and associated funding and revenue implications.
- ❑ Council will approve a sum that is to be set aside to reflect the overall risk from capital projects it has approved
- ❑ Directors will be responsible for ensuring the principles of this scheme are understood and enforced within their Service areas.

In addition, please refer to:

The Budget Management Scheme

Section 7 – Revenue Budget Preparation

Why is this important?

The Council is a complex organisation responsible for delivering a wide variety of services. It needs to plan effectively and to develop systems to enable scarce resources to be allocated in accordance with carefully weighted priorities. The annual Revenue and Capital budgets are the financial expression of the Council's plans and policies.

The revenue budget must be constructed so as to ensure that resource allocation properly reflects the service plans and priorities of the Council. Budgets (spending plans) are needed so that the Council can plan, authorise, monitor and control the way money is allocated and spent. It is illegal for the Council to budget for a deficit. All key decisions on revenue expenditure must be made by Cabinet Members.

The format of the budget determines the level of detail to which financial control and management will be exercised. The format shapes how the rules around how virements / journals operate, the operation of cash limits, and sets the level at which funds may be reallocated within budgets.

A report on new proposals should explain the full financial implications, following consultation with the Chief Finance Officer or designated Finance Manager. Directors must present a balanced budget and plan to contain the financial implications of such proposals within their cash limit.

Key Responsibilities for Members and Staff:

- Specific budget approval is required for all expenditure.
- Budget managers are consulted in the preparation of the budgets for which they will be held responsible and accept accountability within delegations set by their Director for their budgets and the level of service to be delivered. Key savings and developments are included in service delivery plans (for subsequent monitoring) and individual employee's Performance Development Review.
- Preparation of the budget complies with all legal requirements.

- The format complies with the requirements of the Chief Finance Officer and, where necessary, has regard to relevant accounting standards.
 - The format reflects the accountabilities of service delivery
6. The Chief Finance Officer will:
- (a) Advise the Cabinet and Council on the format and timing of the budget to be approved by the full Council.
 - (b) Prepare and submit reports on budget prospects for the Cabinet, including resource constraints set by the Government. Reports should take account of medium-term prospects, where appropriate.
 - (c) Determine the detailed form of revenue budgets and the guidelines for their preparation, after consultation with the Cabinet, Chief Executive, and Corporate Directors.
 - (d) Prepare and submit reports to the Cabinet on the aggregate spending plans of directorates and on the resources available to fund them, identifying, the implications for the level of Council Tax to be levied.
 - (e) Advise on the medium-term implications of spending decisions.
 - (f) Encourage the best use of resources and value for money by working with Directors to identify opportunities to improve economy, efficiency and effectiveness, and by encouraging good practice in conducting financial appraisals of development or savings options, and in developing financial aspects of service planning.

7. Directors will:

- (a) Prepare draft budgets of income and expenditure, in consultation with the Chief Finance Officer, to be submitted to the Cabinet.
- (b) Prepare draft budgets that are timely, balanced and consistent with any relevant cash limits, and with guidelines issued by the Cabinet. The format should be prescribed by the Chief Finance Officer, in consultation with the Cabinet.
- (c) Integrate financial and budget plans into service planning, so that budget plans are reflected, where appropriate, by financial and non-financial performance measures.
- (d) In consultation with the Chief Finance Officer and in accordance with the laid-down guidance and timetable, prepare detailed draft revenue and capital budgets for consideration by the appropriate Cabinet Member.

- (e) When drawing up draft budget requirements, Directors will have regard to:
- a. spending patterns and pressures revealed through the budget monitoring process
 - b. targets for growth/reduction set out in the medium term financial plan
 - c. fall out of external funding
 - d. legal requirements
 - e. other policy requirements as defined by the full Council in the approved policy framework
 - f. initiatives already under way
 - g. the Council's commissioning intentions and contractual commitments on the Council's Contract Register.

In addition, please refer to:

The Budget Management Scheme

Medium Term Financial Strategy

B&NES Council Operational Plan

The Councils' Commissioning Intentions and Contract Register

Section 8 – Capital Expenditure

Why is this important?

1. Capital expenditure involves acquisition or enhancement of fixed assets which have a long-term value to the Council, such as land, buildings, and major items of plant, equipment or vehicles. Capital assets shape the way services are delivered in the long term and create financial commitments for the future in the form of financing costs and revenue running costs. Capital expenditure must comply with the Council's Contract Standing Orders.
2. The Local Government Act 2000, requires local authorities to determine expenditure limits above which such expenditure would be a key decision. All key decisions on capital expenditure must be taken by Cabinet Members.
3. The Government places strict controls on the financing capacity of the Council. This means that capital expenditure should form part of an investment strategy and should be carefully prioritised in order to maximise the benefit of scarce resources.

Key Responsibilities for Members and Staff:

- The Chief Finance Officer will bring together Portfolio estimates for capital schemes and to report them to the Cabinet for approval or prioritisation within existing resources. Council approval is required where a Director proposes to bid for or exercise additional borrowing approval not anticipated in the capital programme. This is because the extra borrowing may create future commitments to financing costs.
- The Chief Finance Officer will submit reports to the Cabinet on the projected income, expenditure and resources compared with the approved estimates.
- The Chief Finance Officer will issue guidance concerning capital schemes and controls. The definition of 'capital' will be determined by the Chief Finance Officer having regard to government regulations and accounting requirements.
- The Chief Finance Officer will obtain authorisation from the Cabinet for individual schemes where the estimated expenditure exceeds the capital programme provision by more than the specified amount.
- Directors must comply with guidance concerning capital schemes and controls issued by the Chief Finance Officer, including ensuring that all capital proposals have undergone a full project appraisal,

through the submission and approval of a Project Initiation Document.

- Directors must prepare regular reports reviewing the capital programme provisions for their Services. They must prepare at least quarterly returns of estimated final costs of those schemes in the approved capital programme for submission to the Cabinet and to the Chief Finance Officer.
- Directors must ensure that full records are maintained for all capital schemes
- Directors must proceed with projects only when there is adequate provision in the capital programme and with the agreement of the Chief Finance Officer.
- Directors must consult with the Chief Finance Officer, and to obtain authorisation from the relevant Cabinet Member, prior to the implementation of key decisions as part of the capital programme.
- Directors must prepare and submit reports to the Cabinet Member, of any variation in contract costs greater than the approved limits. The Cabinet Member must meet cost increases by virement from savings elsewhere within their overall capital programme.
- Directors must prepare and submit reports to the Cabinet Member, on completion of all projects where the final expenditure exceeds the approved budget by more than an agreed amount.
- Directors must ensure that credit arrangements, such as leasing agreements, are not entered into without the prior approval of the Chief Finance Officer and, if applicable, approval of the scheme through the capital programme.
- Directors must consult with the Chief Finance Officer and to seek appropriate approval (Council / Cabinet) where the Director proposes to bid for capital financing to support expenditure that has not been included in the current year's capital programme.
- Directors in service areas which generate VAT exempt income must liaise with the Council's Chief Finance Officer at the earliest opportunity, to ensure impact on partial exemption is properly managed.

In addition, please refer to:

The Budget Management Scheme

Medium Term Financial Plan

B&NES Council Operational Plans

Section 9 - Treasury Management - Investments & Borrowing

Why is this important?

Significant sums pass through the Council's accounts each year which need to be securely managed and controlled to maximise the Council's income. This is done in accordance with codes of practice that have been established with the aim of providing assurance that the Council's money is properly managed in a way that balances risk with return, but with the overriding consideration being given to the security of the Council's funds.

Key Responsibilities of Staff & Members:

- **The Chief Finance Officer will:**
 1. Prepare the Council's Treasury Management Policy Statement and Strategy in accordance with the CIPFA Code of Practice on Treasury Management in Local Authorities and to arrange for all Council borrowing and investment in such a manner as to comply with this Statement/Strategy.
 2. Ensure that all investments of money are made in the name of the Council or in the name of nominees approved by the full Council.
 3. Ensure that all securities that are the property of the Council or its nominees and the title deeds of all property in the Council's ownership are held in the custody of the appropriate Director.
 4. Authorise all borrowings in the name of the Council.
 5. Act as the Council's registrar of stocks, bonds and mortgages and to maintain records of all borrowing of money by the Council.
 6. Report to the Council, as requested, on Treasury Management activities.
- **Directors will:**
 -   Ensure that loans are not made to, and that interests are not acquired in, companies, joint ventures or other enterprises without the approval of the full Council, following consultation with the Chief Finance Officer.

In addition, please refer to:

Code of Practice No.1 – Investments & Borrowing
Treasury Management Strategy

Treasury Management Policy Statement

Section 10 – Accounting Systems and Processes

Why is this important?

It is important to ensure that the Council maintains effective & efficient systems of accounting and financial control are in place in order that its assets and interests are effectively safeguarded against loss. It is important that all stakeholders have confidence in the integrity of the Council's financial administration.

Objectives of Accounting Systems and processes:

1. To ensure that a true and complete record of all Council transactions is maintained.
2. To ensure that the Council complies with legislation / regulations.

Implications if above objectives are not achieved:

1. The Council may not operate within the law;
2. Incorrect management information, leading to poor decision making;
3. Financial loss;
4. Reputational loss, e.g. through publication of a critical Auditors report;

Key Responsibilities for Staff & Members:

1. The Chief Finance Officer will be responsible for maintaining the Council's accounts and for the approval of all accounting records and financial systems.
2. All Directors must ensure that responsibility for the preparation and processing of accounting information e.g. coding of income and expenditure is assigned to specified officers, transactions are authorised / approved by responsible officers and an audit trail is maintained.

3. Capital expenditure must be accounted for separately from revenue expenditure and must, therefore, be coded to the appropriate capital expenditure code.
4. The Chief Finance Officer will be responsible for producing the timetable and standards for the production of final accounts each year.
5. The Chief Finance Officer shall agree all borrowing and lending arrangements and these shall operate in accordance with the Council's Treasury Management Policy Statement and the appropriate accounting bodies' Codes of Practice. All investments, borrowing, leasing and other capital financing arrangements shall be effected in the name of the Council.
6. The Council's Property Services team, shall hold all securities that are the property of or are in the name of the Council or its nominees and the title deeds of all properties in its ownership, in safe custody.
7. The Chief Finance Officer will:
 - Ensure that the Council does not enter into leasing contracts which compromise the Council's spending limits set with regard to its Prudential Indicators.
 - Provide financial expertise and advice on leasing arrangements and contracts.
 - Ensure that best value is achieved in leasing contracts, including aggregation of the Council's leasing requirement where appropriate.

All Directors must refer all proposed leasing arrangements, within their Services, to the Chief Finance Officer.

8. All Trust Funds shall, wherever possible, be in the name of the Council and all officers acting as trustees by virtue of their official position shall deposit all securities and other documentation relating to the Trust Fund with the Chief Finance Officer.

9. The Chief Finance Officer will ensure that clear instructions are issued to all relevant members of staff on key processes, including:
 3. Control Accounts
 4. Coding Protocols
 5. Cash Flow Management
 6. Capital Grants
 7. Capital Expenditure
 8. Capital Charges
 9. Balance Sheet Balances
 10. BACS Payments
 11. Accounting statements
 12. Monthly Accruals
 13. Year End Accruals
 14. Interfaces with the Financial Management System
 15. Suspense Accounts

In addition, please refer to:

Budget Management Scheme

All Codes of Practice

Section 11 - Payroll

Why is this important?

Staff costs are the largest item of expenditure for most Council services. It is therefore important that payments are accurate, timely, made only to the right people and that payments accord with individuals' conditions of employment.

It is important that all payments are accurately and completely recorded and accounted for, as this ensures accurate information for budget holders.

Income Tax and National Insurance contributions to HM Revenue & Customs must be complete and accurate. Individuals defined as employees must be paid through the Council's Payroll System.

Objectives of payroll processing:

- Payments are only made to those entitled to payments, (i.e. employees or pensioners) at the correct rate and time.
- All payments and associated deductions are properly accounted for.
- Processes are in place to meet Corporate and Service needs for accurate and timely management information regarding payroll costs.

Implications if above objectives are not achieved:

1. Payments are made:
 - for work not undertaken,
 - to a person not entitled,
 - at the wrong rate,
 - that contravene employment legislation,
 - leading to potential financial loss;
2. Adverse publicity because of failure to pay efficiently and effectively;
3. Untimely and inaccurate information to budget holders;
4. The Council being penalised by the HM Revenue & Customs for failure to account for statutory deductions, e.g. Income Tax and National Insurance contributions.

Key Responsibilities for Staff & Members:

- 1) The payment of salaries, wages, allowances, pensions and other emoluments must be made under arrangements approved and controlled by the Chief Finance Officer.
- 2) Directors are responsible for providing the Payroll Service with the details of those Officers (4th tier Officers and above), in that Service area, that can authorise payroll documents / transactions.
- 3) All salary and wages notifications must be properly authorised and in accordance with the employment contract.
- 4) All travelling, subsistence and other allowances (including staff Professional Subscriptions), for both staff and Members, must be paid through the Council's Payroll system.
- 5) The use of Petty Cash Account or other non-PAYE payment systems are not permitted under any circumstances, for the payment of salaries, wages, travelling and subsistence expenses.
- 6) No payments should be made to Self Employed Individuals without an assessment of that individual's employment status first being made in line with the HM Revenue & Customs criteria (see section 12).
- 7) Each Director is responsible for ensuring that the person engaging someone to perform a task determines their employment status and whether they should be paid via payroll (see section 12).
- 8) All Payroll documents / forms submitted must be the latest approved version.
- 9) Appropriate budget provision must be available.
- 10) Salary payments are made in accordance with employment law.
- 11) Statutory deductions are made in accordance with regulations and properly paid over to appropriate bodies.
- 12) Other non-statutory deductions, e.g. Union subscriptions, are made in accordance with authorised requests.
- 13) Pension enhancements are awarded in accordance with approved policies.
- 14) All payments made are properly recorded and correctly charged to the appropriate expenditure codes and management information issued in a timely manner.
- 15) Members of staff who owe debts to the Council will have these debts deducted promptly from salary.
- 16) It is the responsibility of all Council Members and members of staff to immediately contact both their Manager and the Payroll administrators when they discover that any overpayment of salary, wage or allowance has occurred.

Failure to do this knowingly will be regarded as theft, under the law, and will be the subject of disciplinary action by the Council against the Member or officer concerned

In addition, please refer to:

Code of Practice No.3 – Payroll

Code of Practice No.4 – Employment Status

HR Policies & Procedures

Section 12 – Ordering and Paying for Works, Goods & Services

Why is this important?

The Council must be able to demonstrate probity and value for money in spending public money, in accordance with its Procurement Strategy and Contract Standing Orders.

All Council Members and employees of the Council have a responsibility for spending public funds wisely and ensuring that all payments are valid, legal and represent the best use of resources.

Objectives of order and payment processes:

- To secure value for money by obtaining the best price for the quality of works, goods and services required.
- The Council only pays bona-fide organisations or individuals the correct amount at the appropriate time in line with appropriate contractual terms and conditions
- The Council properly accounts for works goods & services ordered and payments due or made.
- The Council complies with legislation covering VAT, payments to Sub-Contractors and other taxable payments
- The Council undertakes appropriate IR35 employment status checks in line with HM Revenue & Customs requirements

Implications if above objectives are not achieved:

1. Council pays more than necessary for goods or services.
2. Payments are made for goods / services not required or not received.
3. Duplicate payments are made.
4. Council fails to pay for goods or services in a timely basis resulting in adverse publicity, loss of goodwill.
5. Incorrect recovery of VAT leading to assessments and penalties from HM Revenue & Customs or loss of recoverable VAT.

6. Incurring HM Revenue & Customs penalties for failing to assess employment status appropriately.
7. Inaccurate and untimely information provided to budget holders.

Placing Official Orders:

- Officers **must** only use Council monies for the purchase of works, goods & services which are for the express use of the Council. Elected Members, employees or others engaged with the Council **must not** use the Council's ordering or payments systems for personal use or benefit.
- Members, Officers and individuals engaged to work for the Council **must** declare any links or personal interests that they may have with purchasers, suppliers and/or contractors if they are engaged in contractual or purchasing decisions on behalf of the authority, in accordance with these Financial Regulations (Section 20) and the relevant Council's Code of Conduct.
- Officers **must** issue Official Orders for all goods and services unless there is a specific exemption agreed with the Chief Finance Officer.
- Directors **must** designate specific employees who are authorised to place orders on their behalf and operate procedures which secure value for money. The procedures **must** be properly recorded, communicated to staff and continuously monitored.
- All Official Orders **must** (unless specifically exempted) be raised through the Council's Financial Management System.
- There may be occasions, in cases of emergency only, when a verbal order is placed. These must be the exception rather than the rule and **must** always be confirmed by the issue of an Official Order.
- Before placing orders for goods and services the budget holder responsible **must** ensure that there is sufficient budget available.
- All orders placed **must** comply with the Council's Contract Standing Orders, which provides guidance on obtaining alternative prices,

seeking value for money and complying with National and European requirements.

Receiving Goods & Services:

- When receiving works, goods or services, the budget holder is responsible for ensuring that timely checks are made to ensure that:
 - The works goods or services are in accordance with the order placed,
 - Any faults or deficiencies are reported to the contractor/supplier and remedial action taken,
 - Where necessary, inventories or stock records have been updated,
 - Goods delivered are placed in the safe custody of their authorised recipient.

Making Payments:

- All payments on behalf of the Council will be made with the authority of the Chief Finance Officer.
- Payments **must not** be made unless the works, goods and/or services have been received by the Council to the correct price, quantity and quality standards, and that an invoice for the same works, goods and/or services has not been previously passed for payment.
- Directors **must** designate specific employees who are authorised to approve invoices for payment on their behalf.
- There must be a separation of duties between the Officer raising the Purchase Requisition and the Officer authorising the Requisition to enable a Purchase Order to be generated. This is important because invoices linked to an Official Purchase Order will be processed and paid without any further authorisation. If for reasons of efficiency a Director enables an Officer to both generate and approve a Purchase Requisition then that Director must ensure that the expenditure is scrutinised by another Officer within a reasonable period of time, this could be linked to the 'goods / services received' recording system.
- All Directors **must** ensure adherence to all instructions issued by the Chief Finance Officer in respect of year-end accounting arrangements.

- Payments to employees of salaries, wages, and travel & subsistence expenses **must** be made through the Payroll system and not via any other payment system.
- Where appropriate Corporate Purchasing Cards or Pre-Paid Cards may be used to make payments (see Section 21) in line with the Councils' policy and terms and conditions for their use.
- Officers must ensure that appropriate VAT documentation is obtained from the contractor / supplier to ensure that VAT is correctly accounted for and that the Council can maximise recovery of recoverable VAT.
- The Council must comply with the requirements of the Construction Industry Scheme when paying construction industry subcontractors, as described in Code of Practice No.7.

Making Payments through Petty Cash Accounts / Client Cash Floats:

- All payments through Petty Cash Accounts / Client Cash Floats must be made in accordance with guidelines set down in the Code of Practice No.2.
- The Chief Finance Officer will authorise the use of a Petty Cash / Client Cash Floats or change float.
- The Service operating the Petty Cash Account / Client Cash Float must arrange for a nominated Responsible Officer to keep and maintain the account. The name of the Responsible Officer and the purpose of the account must be notified to the Chief Finance Officer.
- Responsible officers must maintain records and operate the account in accordance with the Petty Cash Accounts / Client Cash Floats Code of Practice.
- Receipts, vouchers and invoices must be retained to substantiate every transaction.
- Personal loans must never be given or personal cheques cashed from the Petty Cash Account / Client Cash Float.
- Wherever possible VAT should be identified on payments made, so that the Council can recover the VAT. VAT may only be claimed where

the Council has a valid VAT invoice bearing the VAT registration number of the supplier. For further details on whether VAT should be claimed please refer to the VAT guidelines.

In addition, please refer to:

Code of Practice No.2 – Petty Cash Accounts / Client Cash Floats

Code of Practice No.5 – Ordering of Goods & Services

Code of Practice No.6 – Payment of Accounts

Code of Practice No.7 – Construction Industry Scheme

Council Contract Standing Orders

VAT Guidance

Section 13 – Income Collection and Writing Off of Bad Debts

Why is this important?

Income can be vulnerable to loss. Effective income collection systems are necessary to ensure that all income due is properly identified, collected, receipted, banked, and brought to account.

Objectives of income processes:

- To ensure that all sources of income that may be due to the Council are identified, claimed and collected at the right time.
- All payments received are accepted, recorded, reconciled and banked promptly and correctly.
- Local Managers and employees have a clear understanding of their responsibilities regarding the identification, collection, banking and reconciliation of income due to the Council.

Implications if above objectives are not achieved:

1. Income being lost to the Council;
2. Resources may be wasted by the failure to collect income quickly and economically;
3. Adverse publicity caused by the failure to collect income efficiently and effectively;
4. Theft, misappropriation or loss of income;
5. High levels of bad debt leading to a large number of write-offs.
6. Failure to deal with VAT correctly results in assessments and penalties from HM Revenue & Customs or a loss of income to the Council

Key Responsibilities for Staff & Members:

1. All arrangements for the collection, accounting and banking of income due to the Council must be subject to the approval of the Chief Finance Officer.

2. The appropriate Director will be directly responsible for the safe custody, recording, control, issue and use of official receipting systems, receipt books, tickets, account books and other income documentation in their specific Service area.
3. Responsibility for income collection must be separated from the person raising the debtor account on the accounting system.
4. Only payment or write-off shall discharge all sums due to the Council.
5. All refunds of overpayments must be made through the Council's Creditors system and NOT out of income. To help prevent money laundering activity refunds must always be paid back to the same bank account as the original payment. Any large cash payments to be refunded must be considered in terms of potential money laundering prior to authorisation of the refund amount.
6. Individuals must not borrow Council monies. Borrowing monies includes holding or banking personal cheques in exchange for Council cash.
 - All amounts written-off will be subject to robust scrutiny and review before being authorised by the Chief Finance Officer and the Monitoring Officer (or their nominated representatives). All debts over £20,000 will require consultation with the Cabinet Member - Finance and Efficiency in accordance with the Council's Code of Practice.
8. Sums due to the Council as debts from members of staff shall be deducted promptly from salary. Directors will ensure that all debts due are recovered promptly and any outstanding balances due, at the time of cessation of employment, are deducted from employee's final salary or any other monies due to that employee.
9. VAT is charged where appropriate, in accordance with the HM Revenue & Customs regulations. Where an individual Service makes a

new type of charge for any reason they must consult the Council's VAT Analyst before setting prices.

10. Directors must ensure that all members of staff, within their Service, responsible for the collection and reconciliation of income, comply with the requirements of the Council's Anti-Money Laundering Policy.

In addition, please refer to:

Code of Practice No.8 – Income Collection

Council's Anti-Money Laundering Policy

VAT Guidance

Section 14 – Bank Accounts, Banking and Cash Handling

Why is this important?

Local Managers and employees need to have a clear understanding of their responsibilities regarding the setting up and use of Council Bank Accounts, banking processes and cash handling. Most bank accounts are held and managed centrally. However, there will be Local Managers who are responsible for voluntary funds, petty cash accounts and other bank accounts.

Objectives of Banking & Cash Handling processes:

- To ensure that all income and expenditure is transacted through authorised bank accounts.
- To ensure that all money is held securely.
- To ensure monies are banked in an authorised bank account in a timely manner and accurately recorded.
- To ensure all transactions are bone fide, accurate and within predetermined limits.

Implications if above objectives are not achieved:

1. Theft or loss;
2. Staff and premises vulnerable to attack;
3. Resources wasted due to poor cash flow management;
4. Inability to prove that deposits have been made into the bank account or that payments have been made by debtors;
5. Damage to the Council's reputation through adverse publicity;
6. Failure to deal with VAT correctly results in assessments and penalties from HM Revenues & Customs or a loss of income to the Council.

Key Responsibilities for Staff & Members:

1. The Chief Finance Officer will be responsible for making such arrangements as are appropriate and necessary with the Council's Bankers relating to all financial transactions.
2. The Chief Finance Officer will ensure that proper arrangements are made for the secure printing, secure retention and issue of cheques.
3. All bank accounts must be opened and closed by the Chief Finance Officer. Any subsidiary Bank Accounts can only be opened with the express authority of the Chief Finance Officer, who will provide specific instructions on the control and use of such accounts.
4. Any overdraft on the aggregated Council's main bank accounts is permitted only to the extent authorised by the Chief Finance Officer. Overdrafts are not permitted on any other bank accounts.
5. The Chief Finance Officer will make available written guidance on the processes to be followed to transfer monies electronically (CHAPS / BACS).
6. The Chief Finance Officer will specify arrangements for the collection and banking of all income due to the Council, and to approve the procedures, systems and documentation for its collection, security and banking.
7. All money received by an employee, on behalf of the Council, must be properly recorded and paid without delay into the Council's bank account.
8. Where third parties are contracted to bank income on behalf of the Council, the Chief Finance Officer will specify and agree the contract arrangements, prior to entering into any such contract.
9. The Chief Finance Officer shall ensure that the reconciliation of all bank accounts held by the Council is undertaken at regular intervals to ensure the prompt investigation of discrepancies.
10. All keys to safes and similar receptacles must be carried by the person responsible at all times; loss of such keys must be reported, without delay, to the Chief Finance Officer (Internal Audit Function).
11. The Chief Finance Officer will authorise the use of a petty cash account or change float.

In addition, please refer to:

Code of Practice No.2 – Petty Cash Accounts / Client Cash Floats

Code of Practice No.9 – Bank Accounts, Banking & Cash Handling

Section 15 – Asset Management

Why is this important?

The Council holds fixed and moveable assets in the form of land, buildings, plant and machinery, vehicles, equipment, software, and other items with significant value. It is important that all assets are safeguarded and used efficiently in service delivery, and that there are arrangements for the security of both assets and information required for service operations.

An up-to-date asset register is a prerequisite for proper fixed asset accounting and sound asset management. Inventories of moveable items are particularly important in connection with potential insurance claims.

Objective of asset management:

- a) To ensure that assets are used to achieve the approved policies and objectives of the Council with the minimum level of waste, inefficiency or loss for other reasons.

Implications if above objective is not achieved:

- 1. Money may be wasted by acquiring inappropriate assets;
- 2. Assets may be used inefficiently;
- 3. Loss or damage;
- 4. Money may be wasted by maintaining obsolete or unnecessary assets;
- 5. Income may be lost by not achieving best terms for disposal of assets.

Key Responsibilities for Staff & Members:

- 1. Every Director shall be responsible for the custody of all buildings, equipment, stocks, stores, vehicles, furniture and cash used within their Service environment and for their general security.

- a) Official inventories and stores records shall be kept under arrangements approved by the Chief Finance Officer, and all desirable and portable property shall be securely marked "Property of Bath & North East Somerset Council".
- 3. It is the responsibility of Directors and Service Managers to maintain a register of assets (official inventories)
- 4. Items recorded in official inventories must subject to a regular independent physical check (at least annually). All discrepancies should be investigated and pursued to a satisfactory conclusion. Any discrepancies not resolved must be reported to the appropriate Director and Internal Audit.
- 5. The Chief Finance Officer and Chief Audit Executive (or their authorised representative) has the right of access to all Council establishments, to verify stores, records or accounts.
- 6. Directors should ensure that stocks and stores are not carried in excess of economic requirements.
- 7. All 'moveable' property will only be disposed of in accordance with the Council's Stocks and Stores and Inventories Codes of Practice.
- 8. Directors shall inform the Chief Finance Officer of all relevant details, including financial implications, relating to the purchase, lease, holding or sale of assets held on the Council's behalf. In particular, the Head of Property will use Valuation Schedules for property assets to enable annual verification of the value of these Council assets.
- 9. All Directors responsible for the private property of a person under their guardianship or supervision shall arrange for an inventory / record of items / amounts held and ensure the safe custody of this property.
- 10. All Council assets must be used solely for official Council business. Council assets must not be used for personal use.

11. Where any irregularity is suspected in the custody or use of a Council asset, the matter must be treated as a financial irregularity and reported immediately to the appropriate Director and Internal Audit function.

In addition, please refer to:

Code of Practice No.10 – Stocks and Stores

Code of Practice No.11 – Inventories

Corporate Asset Management Plan

Section 16 – Asset Leasing

Why is this important?

The Council has freedoms to pursue various capital and revenue options for the funding of asset acquisitions. It is therefore important to ensure the most cost effective form of funding is sourced for each acquisition. This may or may not be leasing, but where leasing is pursued the reporting requirement must be carefully considered.

Objectives of controlling Asset Leases:

- b) To ensure terms and conditions of leases are appropriate.
- c) To ensure the lease is correctly recorded in the Council's accounts.

Implications if above objectives are not achieved:

- The cost of leasing the asset is greater than alternative finance options.
- The Council's accounts are incorrectly stated.

Key Responsibilities for Staff & Members:

1. Every Director must refer all proposed leasing arrangements, within their Services, to the Chief Finance Officer.
2. Approval must be obtained from the Chief Finance Officer for all asset leases.

In addition, please refer to:

All Codes of Practice

Section 17 – Insurance

Why is this important?

All organisations, whether private or public sector, face risks to people, property and continued operations. Insurance, either through external providers or through the Council's own fund, form a vital part of the management of these risks.

Objectives of Insurance:

- d) To ensure that risks exceeding acceptable levels are determined and adequately insured against where appropriate.
- e) Material risks are monitored on an ongoing basis, and the level of insurance cover (external or internal) adjusted accordingly.

Implications if above objectives are not achieved:

- 1. The Council maintains insufficient risk reserves or insurance policies to cover the potential financial costs of replacement.
- 2. Claims are not processed efficiently or effectively.
- 3. Adverse publicity for the Council.

Key Responsibilities for Staff & Members:

- 1. The Chief Finance Officer shall be responsible for:
 - Effecting appropriate insurance cover and maintaining the relevant administrative systems.
 - To manage the Council's internal funding, including prescribing how claims on the Council's Insurance Fund should be made.
 - To negotiate all claims in consultation with the Insurers, Legal Services and other officers, as necessary.
 - To include all appropriate employees of the authority in a suitable fidelity guarantee insurance, and provide adequate public liability, and employer's liability cover.

- To offer insurance cover to schools in accordance with the Scheme of Delegation.
 - To periodically undertake a general revaluation of Council buildings and effect appropriate changes to the corresponding insurance cover following revaluation.
 - To identify claims trends and implement appropriate risk management measures.
2. Directors shall notify the Chief Finance Officer (or their Insurance representative) promptly on any matters affecting insurance cover, including all new risks and amendments to existing risks.
 3. Directors shall notify the Chief Finance Officer (or their Insurance representative) immediately, in writing, of any accident, loss, liability or damage or any event likely to lead to a claim on or by the Council whether covered by insurance or not. An admission of liability or blame should not be made either verbally or in writing.
 4. Directors shall take all reasonable measures to reduce risk and liability within their Service areas. In addition, they shall ensure that work for external organisations is appropriately covered by professional indemnity insurance.
 5. Members and Officers of the Council who intend to travel abroad on official business must ensure that the necessary insurance cover has been arranged.

In addition, please refer to:

Code of Practice No.12 – Insurance

Code of Practice No.13 – International Travel

Section 18 – Value Added Tax (VAT)

Why is this important?

The purpose of this section of the regulations is to ensure that service managers and employees have a clear understanding of their responsibilities regarding VAT.

Like all organisations, the Council is responsible for ensuring that its VAT affairs are managed efficiently and in accordance with legislation. Tax issues are often very complex and the penalties for incorrect accounting for VAT can be severe. It is therefore very important that all officers are aware of their role so that the Council adheres to current VAT law and best practice.

In particular the Council can only recover VAT incurred on 'VAT-exempt' business activities if the total falls below its 'partial exemption' limit. Detailed planning is required to ensure that the Council can continue to recover this VAT, on both new schemes and existing expenditure.

Objectives of taxation control processes:

To ensure that the Council only pays the correct amount of VAT and accounts for it in accordance with statutory requirements:

- budget managers are provided with relevant information and kept up to date on VAT issues
- budget managers are instructed on required record keeping
- all taxable charges and payments are identified, properly carried out and accounted for within stipulated timescales
- records are maintained in accordance with Council instructions and subject to internal checks
- accurate returns are made to the appropriate authorities within the stipulated timescale.

Implications if above objectives are not achieved:

1. Unnecessary payment of taxes or under-recovery of tax due, leading to wasted resources;
2. Failure to identify taxable income and pay over the tax due, leading to possible assessments, interest and penalties, as well as considerable extra work;
3. Incorrect or duplicate recovery of VAT paid to suppliers, again leading to additional costs and work;
4. Inadequate planning or lack of consultation leads to poor decisions, resulting in errors or a loss of income;
5. Failure to consult early on expenditure related to VAT-exempt income adding to the risk of the Council breaching its 'partial exemption' limit which could result in a significant cost.

Key Responsibilities:

1. The Chief Finance Officer will:

- Maintain up to date guidance about VAT for Council employees on the intranet, and provide updates and advice to staff.
- Respond to all queries from Services, seeking external advice if necessary.
- Make checks of VAT charged to customers and to be reclaimed, then ensure completion of a monthly return of VAT inputs and outputs to Her Majesty's Revenue & Customs (HM Revenue & Customs).
- Deal with all visits and correspondence from HM Revenue & Customs.
- Ensure that the VAT incurred in relation to 'exempt' business income is not at risk of exceeding the partial exemption limit in any financial year, and undertake the annual calculation after the year end.

2. Directors will have responsibility:

- To ensure that staff are trained to deal with VAT correctly
- To ensure that the correct VAT is paid from income due to the Council, and that VAT on purchases is recovered in line with HM Revenue & Customs regulations.
- To follow the instructions on taxation issued by the Chief Finance Officer on the Council's VAT intranet site and in other documents.
- To check the VAT status of any new income source with the Chief Finance Officer or their nominated officer.
- To ensure that all new schemes, in particular involving capital expenditure or changes to current arrangements, that in service areas which involve VAT-exempt income, are notified to the Council's Chief Finance Officer or their nominated officer at the earliest opportunity.

- To liaise with the Council's Chief Finance Officer or their nominated officer if there is any type of query concerning VAT or if it is believed that an error may have occurred.

In addition, please refer to:

VAT Guidance

Section 19 - Information Systems Management

Why is this important?

Information is a key business enabler and Services are heavily reliant on information and information systems (electronic or manual) to deliver services and manage business processes. As such, reliable and well managed information systems are an essential element of service provision.

The purpose of this section of Financial Regulations is to ensure that users of the Council's information and information systems are aware of their role and responsibilities relating to the processing, handling and storage of information.

In addition it is to highlight the authority delegated to the Council's Data Protection Officer (term used by Data Protection Act 2018) when reviewing the information management arrangements within the Council

Objectives and Risks

The principle objectives of good information systems management is to ensure that:

- All information systems conform to Council policies and standards;
- Systems are reliable and well managed, information is secured and protected and that confidentiality, integrity and availability are maintained;
- Systems are procured, developed, implemented and maintained to ensure that maximum benefit is obtained by using them to their full potential; and
- Contingency plans are developed and maintained so that loss and service delivery disruption is minimised in the event of disaster occurring.

The Council's information and information systems are important business assets and as such need to be appropriately managed to ensure that customer satisfaction, competitive edge, financial viability, legal compliance and reputation are maintained.

Information and information systems are faced with risks and threats from a range of sources, including various forms of cyber attacks, technology-assisted fraud, espionage, sabotage, vandalism and environmental disasters such as fire and flood.

In order to mitigate these risks the Council has identified the following factors as critical to the successful implementation of good information systems management.

1. Information Management Policies

The Council's Statutory Data Protection Officer shall ensure that appropriate policies and procedures are in place to set clear direction in line with business objectives and demonstrate support for, and commitment to, information management standards throughout the Council.

The Council's principle objectives in good information management are outlined in the Information Security Policy and Electronic Communications - Acceptable Use Policy & Guidelines.

2. Organisational Security

The Council's Data Protection Officer shall ensure that a management framework is established to initiate and control the implementation of good information management throughout the Council.

Information management is a business responsibility shared by all information users, therefore all managers and users have a role and responsibility for adopting good practice, processing information in a secure and efficient manner and complying with Council Policies and standards.

3. Asset Control

Owners should be identified for all assets, hardware, software and information, and the responsibility for the maintenance of appropriate controls should be assigned. The implementation of specific controls may be delegated by the owner as appropriate but the owner remains responsible for the proper protection of these assets.

Information is an asset and to ensure that information receives an appropriate level of protection it should be classified to indicate the need, priorities, and expected degree of protection. The Council's information classification scheme should be used to define an appropriate set of protection levels and communicate the need for special handling measures.

4. Records Management

Records Retention - System owners are responsible for ensuring that all records are kept for the minimum amount of time as detailed in the Council's Records Retention Schedules.

Records Disposal - All hardware, software and records, (both electronic and hardcopy), that are obsolete or have reached the end of their lifecycle should be securely destroyed in accordance with the Council's disposal policies.

5. Personnel Security

The Head of Human Resources shall ensure that the terms and conditions of employment provide assurance that employees, contractors and third party users understand their responsibilities.

All employees of the Council and, where relevant, contractors and third party users should receive appropriate training and regular updates in Council policies and procedures. Third party users are required under the Application Hosting Policy to sign an agreement in relation to their responsibilities.

6. Physical and Environmental Security

To prevent unauthorised access, damage, or interference to Council premises, equipment and information processing facilities the Council's Data Protection Officer is to ensure that procedures are implemented that ensure:

- all critical and/or sensitive information processing facilities and equipment are housed in secure areas;
- buildings are protected by defined security perimeters, with appropriate security barriers and entry controls; and
- precautions are taken to ensure that access to all PCs, laptops and any other IT devices are restricted at all times to authorised personnel.

7. Information Processing

The Council's Data Protection Officer, Chief Finance Officer and Head of Digital & Customer Services are to ensure that responsibilities & procedures for the management and operation of all information processing facilities are established. Segregation of duties should be implemented, where appropriate, to reduce the risk of negligent or deliberate system misuse.

8. Access Control

Access to information, information processing facilities, and business processes should be controlled on the basis of business and security requirements. Access control rules should take account of the Council's policies for information dissemination and authorisation.

9. System Procurement, Development and Maintenance

Information management requirements should be identified and agreed prior to the any procurement, development and/or implementation of information systems. All information management requirements should be identified at the requirements phase of a project, justified, agreed, and documented as part of the overall business case for an information system.

Planned procurement of hardware and software systems must in the first instance to be referred to the Council's IT Services and Corporate Procurement Managers for advice and approval. The Information Governance Team must also be consulted to ensure that security, legal compliance and information management issues are managed.

10. Information Security Incident Management

The Council's Data Protection Officer shall ensure that formal security incident reporting and escalation procedures are in place.

All employees, contractors and third party users should be made aware of the procedures for reporting the different types of incidents, events and weaknesses that might have an impact on the management of the Council's information and information systems.

11. Business Continuity Management

The Council's Data Protection Officer, Chief Finance Officer and Head of Digital & Customer Services shall ensure that a business continuity management process is implemented to minimise the impact on the Council and recover from loss of information assets to an acceptable level through a combination of preventive and recovery controls.

This process should identify the critical business processes and integrate the information security management requirements of business continuity with other continuity requirements relating to such aspects as operations, staffing, materials, transport and facilities.

12. Compliance

The Council's Data Protection Officer shall ensure that adequate policies and procedures are in place to ensure compliance with all relevant legislation in respect of information held, both electronic and hard copy.

Directors are to ensure that adequate processes are in place within their services to comply with legislation and ensure that information requests are satisfied within the statutory timescales.

In addition, please refer to:

Data Protection Act Policy

Freedom of Information Act Policy

Environmental Information Regulations Policy

Security Incident Management Policy

System Access and Password Management Policy

Records Management and Data Quality Policy

Records Retention Schedules

Retention of Records Policy

Information Security Policy

Electronic Communications – Acceptable Use Policy

Section 20 – ‘Employee’ Interests, Gifts and Hospitality

Why is this important?

The public is entitled to expect conduct of the highest standard from Local Government employees. Public confidence in the integrity of such persons will be shaken by the least suspicion, however ill-founded, of influence being exerted on Council business, through financial (or other) inducements or conflicts of interests.

The purpose of this section of the regulations is to ensure that all employees (and other individuals engaged in official Council business) have a clear understanding of their responsibilities when they have an interest or receive / give gifts and hospitality related to their Council position.

Failure to declare interests, gifts and hospitality could be a breach of legislation. Section 117 of the 1972 Local Government Act requires individuals to declare any financial interest, whether direct or indirect, in any existing or proposed contract.

The Bribery Act 2010 makes it an offence to offer, promise or give a bribe. It is also an offence to request, agree to receive, or accept a bribe and there is a separate offence of bribing a foreign public official with the intention of obtaining or retaining business or an advantage in the conduct of business.

A corporate offence is created where there is a failure by a commercial organisation to prevent bribery that is intended to obtain or retain business, or an advantage in the conduct of business, for the organisation. An organisation will have a defence to this corporate offence if it can show that it had in place "adequate procedures" designed to prevent bribery by or of persons associated with the organisation.

Objectives of guidance and rules governing possible conflicts of interest:

The key objectives are:

1. Ensure that the interests of the public remain paramount;

2. Officers are impartial and honest in the conduct of their official business;
3. Public monies are used to the best advantage of the Council, always ensuring value for money.

It is important that all potential conflicts of interests are properly identified and recorded and that a record of appropriate action taken is made. This will assist in maintaining public confidence and assist in achieving the Council's commitment to tackle fraud and corruption within or external to the organisation.

Key Responsibilities for Employees engaged on Council business:

1. All employees must be aware of the Employees Code of Conduct.
2. On starting employment / engagement (consultant or agency worker) on Council work or at any time during the period of employment / engagement individuals must declare 'interests' using the electronic Register of Interests.
3. The Register of Interests will be maintained to enable employees to submit on-line declarations. Interests will include:
 - Organisation Membership (not open to the public without formal membership and commitment of allegiance and which has secrecy about rules or membership or conduct)
 - Other employment / business
 - Land Interest
 - Financial Interest
 - Family / Friends
4. During the course of their duties, employees may receive offers of gifts and hospitality of one form or another and it is important that employees are able to recognise what is, and what is not, acceptable. The following guidelines should be adhered to:
 - Acceptance or refusal of gifts and hospitality must be recorded in Gifts & Hospitality Electronic Register. Each register entry will be subject to management approval and periodic Audit inspection.
 - Gifts which may be sent / offered to employees by outside contractors or organisations should be returned politely with a suitable official letter, and details recorded in the Register.
 - Gifts can only be accepted when they are of nominal value, functional, items suitable for business use, e.g. diaries, calendars, and pens.
 - On no account should an employee accept either secondary employment or a financial payment from any person, body or organisation, with which the Council is involved, e.g. contractors, developers, consultants.

- Normally, visits by employees to exhibitions, demonstrations, conferences, business meals, social functions, in connection with their official duties shall be at the Council's expense.
 - Where hospitality, in the form of meals and drinks, is offered by a third party, this is normally only acceptable where it forms part of, or immediately follows on from, normal business meetings/discussions held during the normal working day.
 - Where offers of hospitality are made, i.e. invitations to dinners, these should only be accepted if there is a clear and demonstrable benefit to the Council, and the hospitality would not expose the Council to criticism that the provider of the hospitality was achieving undue influence. Attendance must have the relevant Director's approval in advance, and must be recorded in the Register of Gifts and Hospitality.
 - Offers of hospitality in the form of purely social events and sporting occasions should on **no account** be accepted when these are from organisations with which the Council has commercial links. However, invitations to social events from non-commercial organisations with which the Council has a partnership arrangement will be acceptable, but must have the Director's advance approval, and must be recorded in the Electronic Register. Offers of hospitality refused must, in addition, be recorded in the Register.
 - Regular social contact, i.e. drinks in a public house, with representatives of organisations which supply, or hope to supply, goods or services to the Council must be avoided. Where such instances do occasionally take place, i.e. after late working, officers should ensure that they "pay their way" and that the costs of such contact are not met in full by the other party.
 - For their own protection, officers may wish to consider recording such events in the Electronic Register.
 - Apart from participating in concessionary schemes arranged by the Council, trade unions or other groups for their Members, employees shall not avail themselves of the services of contractors employed by the Council for acquiring services, materials, labour or plant at cost, trade or discount prices.
5. Suspected irregularities concerning conflicts of interest, giving and acceptance of gifts & hospitality must be reported without delay to the Chief Audit Executive and Monitoring Officer, and where appropriate, to the Chief Executive and the appropriate Cabinet Member.
 6. Employees responsible for the purchase of goods and supplies on behalf of the Council should note that any promotional offers given by suppliers are the property of the Council.
 7. These promotional offers normally take the form of a free gift, a holiday offer or vouchers towards goods. Promotional offers should

ONLY be used for the benefit of the Council, and the Director concerned will decide how such offers are to be used.

8. All promotional offers accepted and declined and the course of action determined by the Director must be recorded in the Electronic Register.

Section 21 – Corporate Purchasing Cards and Pre-Paid Cards

Why is this important?

Only authorised permanent employees will be provided a purchasing card with the agreement of the relevant Director.

The purpose of this section of the regulations is to ensure that all employees have a clear understanding of their key responsibilities when using the Council's Corporate Purchasing Card.

Objectives of the Corporate Purchasing Card:

Purchasing Cards streamline the purchasing process and offer the following benefits:

- 17 Reduce Supplier Set-Up in the Council's Financial System
- 18 Reduce number of purchase orders raised and invoices processed,
- 19 Increase speed of payment to suppliers,
- 20 Increase the speed of obtaining goods and services.

Implications if the purchasing card is not used appropriately:

1. Failure to secure value for money (there's a requirement to obtain quotes and tenders - Contract Standing Orders);
2. Payments are made for non-business use goods and services;
3. Payments are duplicated;
4. Loss of recoverable VAT;
5. Fraud & theft
6. Inaccurate coding of Expenditure

Key Responsibilities for Staff:

- The Chief Finance Officer, Chief Audit Executive, Head of Strategic Procurement, or Head of Corporate Finance will be

responsible for authorising all Purchasing Card application forms.

- Directors must authorise the issue of all new Purchasing Cards to members of permanent staff within their Service.
- Directors will be responsible for agreeing the transaction, monthly credit limits and categories of expenditure for all Corporate Purchasing Cards issued within their Service.
- All Cardholders must abide by the requirements of the Purchasing Card Terms & Conditions and the Purchasing Card Procedure Guide.
- The cardholder must ensure that the Purchasing Card issued to them is kept in a safe place at all times and access is strictly limited.
- The Purchasing Card must only be used to purchase goods or services on behalf of the Council and must only be used by the named cardholder.
- All purchasing card holder should obtain a VAT or “retailer’s” receipt. This should be retained until the card holder has verified the sums shown on the monthly statement.
- Some suppliers are “VAT-enabled” and the statement will show purchases net of VAT. For those suppliers where the amounts are shown gross and (subject to being material as defined in the guide) the cardholder should reclaim VAT for these items and when it is reclaimed they must retain the receipt to evidence the transaction.
- The cardholder must ensure that purchasing card transactions are accurately coded in the Council’s Financial System.
- Directors must ensure that the detailed procedures and key controls, as specified in the Purchasing Cards Procedures Guide, are strictly followed.
- Any misuse of the Purchasing Card will be treated as misconduct and subject to normal disciplinary procedures.

In addition, please refer to:

Corporate Purchasing Card Procedures Guide

Purchasing Card Terms & Conditions

Section 22 – International Travel

Why is this important?

If International travel, by Council Officers and Members, is not administered efficiently and robustly, the Council is very open to criticism and loss of reputation.

It is critical that the decision making process and rationale is clearly documented to include all aspects of the trip, such as expected outcomes/benefits, lead officer, number of council officers, external parties/delegates, rationale for numbers etc, overall budget required and reporting requirements both before and after the trip.

The Council's Financial Regulations and Standing Orders will continue to apply when arranging and making payments for international visits.

Objectives of International Travel Guidelines:

7. To ensure that Council Members and Officers obtain value for money and that the Council only incurs expenditure on activities relating to officially approved international visits.

Implications if above objectives are not achieved:

- Failure to secure value for money.
- Travel not officially authorised
- Resources may be used inappropriately
- Loss of reputation to the Council and adverse publicity
- Loss of recoverable VAT

Key Responsibilities for Staff & Members:

1. The Council's Financial Regulations and Contract Standing Orders will continue to apply when arranging and making payments for international visits.
2. All Council Members and Officers must have formal, official approval before taking part in an international visit and entering into any

commitments concerning that visit. An 'International Visits Approval Form' must be completed in each case.

3. This Code of Practice will apply to all parts of international journeys, including the initial and final part of the journey in the U.K.
4. All staff taking part in international visits are under an obligation to minimise official expenditure, e.g. economy class air fares. However, staff should not expect to be out of pocket on official visits (unless they undertake optional or private extensions or modifications to essential itineraries).
5. The maintenance of detailed and precise records of expenditure, together with obtaining receipts for all expenditure incurred, are essential. All financial records, associated with the visit, must be retained, as specified in the attached Code of Practice. Reimbursement of expenses claimed will only be made against receipts.
6. Travel Insurance must be obtained from the Council's Insurance Officer immediately on booking any travel arrangements.
7. If free accommodation is offered in a host country, either in the homes of colleagues or elsewhere then staff should accept it following completion of an H&S assessment.
8. Council Purchasing Cards (Credit Cards) must only be used for Official Council expenditure incurred on approved visits. To ensure that the card can be used outside of the UK, the Purchase Card Administrator should be notified of travel dates and intended location.
9. A report detailing the benefits of the visit must be submitted to the relevant Director, and / or Cabinet Member upon the completion of the visit. This report should detail the objective / purpose of the visit (as detailed on the 'International Visits Approval Form').

In addition, please refer to:

Code of Practice No.13 - International Travel

Section 23 – Commissioning & Procurement

Why is this important?

1. The Council spends a large sum of money each year on contracts, for works, supplies or services. These Financial Regulations apply to all contracts and must be read in conjunction with the Council's Procurement Strategy which includes the Council's Contract Standing Orders.

Financial Regulations support the Council's Procurement Strategy in order to:

- Secure the best value for the Council,
- Prevent corruption or the suspicion of it; and
- Be fair and transparent to those seeking to contract with the Council.

Objectives of our Procurement Strategy:

1. To prioritise our local economy and social value for our community. This means targeting opportunities for the local economy, providing for a sustainable future and supporting the vulnerable.
2. To always aim to think innovatively and work across organisational and service boundaries. This means identifying opportunities with partners and a one-council approach to our sourcing needs.
3. To always aim to deliver value for money to the taxpayer. We will provide clarity on expectations, be commercial in our approach and drive efficiency and benefits out of our systems'
4. To use intelligent information and analysis to understand our market place and create a workforce with the right capacity and skills to exploit this knowledge for our community.
5. To provide a fair, consistent and proportionate framework of governance, rules and guidance to enable decisions to be transparent and accountable
6. To ensure that works, goods and/or services meet the needs of the Council
7. To secure value for money by obtaining the best price and quality for works goods and/or services ordered.
8. To establish contractual arrangements that clearly defines the responsibilities of each party to the contract.
9. To ensure the Council complies with EU legislation.
10. To ensure that appropriate contract management arrangements are in place.

Implications if above objectives are not achieved:

1. Failure to secure value for money;
2. Failure to be transparent around our systems, objectives and processes;
3. Delays to delivery of contracts whilst legal challenges are dealt with and increased costs incurred in order to defend the Council's position.

Key Responsibilities for Staff & Members:

- Directors **must** establish a commissioning intentions schedule that at minimum covers a rolling long term programme (3 to 5 years) of future commissioning and procurement activity.
- Every contract made by the Council **must** be awarded in line with the Procurement Strategy and Council's Contract Standing Orders.
- Directors **must** ensure that all Officers in their Service that have been nominated as 'Responsible Officers' (RO) for contract management purposes have been appropriately trained (including use of e-procurement systems).
- RO's **must** ensure that all contracts are recorded on the Contracts Register.
- RO's **must** ensure that requests for quotations and invitations to contract with the Council comply with Council's E Procurement Policy.
- Financial vetting must be undertaken independently through Internal Audit.
- Where corporate contracts are in place Directors **must** ensure they are used.
- The RO must obtain appropriate VAT advice in relation to all contracts to provide services to ensure the appropriate VAT treatment is applied.

- The RO **must** ensure that all contract documentation is correct before agreeing on the Council's behalf. This will include any clearance required through the Council's Democratic processes.
- Any changes to the nature, value, term or any other changes **must** be agreed by the RO in line with the contract variation process identified in the original contract (subject to clearance through the Council's Democratic processes). Any change **must** be updated on the Contract Register.
- The RO for each contract shall ensure that all instructions have been appropriately authorised and issued before the goods are ordered, services requested or works are undertaken. All instructions to suppliers and payment arrangements **must** be in a form agreed by the Chief Finance Officer.
- The RO **must** establish appropriate management arrangements for the regular review of contractual performance of the contractor that allows performance issues to be identified and addressed in line with the contract.

In addition, please refer to:

Council Contract Standing Orders
Council Corporate Procurement Strategy

Section 24 – Members’ Allowances and Expenses

Why is this important?

It is important that payments of Members’ allowances and expenses are accurate, timely, and authorised in accordance with the scheme adopted by the Council. Expenses must be incurred on Council business and properly payable.

Objectives of the Members’ Allowances and Expenses processes:

1. To ensure that proper authorisation procedures are in place.
2. To ensure payments are made on the basis of correctly submitted / evidenced claims.
3. To ensure that all appropriate payroll documents are retained and stored for the defined period in accordance with the document retention guidelines.
4. To ensure compliance with HM Revenue & Customs regulations.

Implications if above objectives are not achieved:

-  Failure to comply with HM Revenue & Customs regulations
-  Unauthorised payments are made
-  Inaccurate payments are made
-  Loss of reputation

Key Responsibilities for Members and Staff:

1. All Members must adhere to the “Bath & North East Somerset Members’ Allowances Scheme”, approved by Full Council.
2. Any amendments to the scheme will be solely determined by the Council following receipt of recommendations from the Independent Remuneration Panel.
3. The Chief Finance Officer is authorised, on receipt of verification from the Solicitor to the Council of a claim from a Member, to pay the appropriate allowances in accordance with the payment arrangements described in the scheme.
4. Travel and subsistence allowances may be claimed by Councillors. The arrangements for these allowances are included in Schedule 1, Part 1 of the scheme.

5. Subsistence allowances may be claimed by Councillors, in respect of each occasion on which a Councillor carries out a duty as specified in Schedule 1, Part 1 of the Scheme.
6. In order to claim subsistence allowance a claimant must have personally incurred expenditure on subsistence.

In addition, please refer to:

Councillors' Allowances Guidance

Section 25 – External Arrangements Partnerships

Why is this important?

Partnerships bring together key public agencies, the business community and the independent sector (voluntary and community sector organisations, further and higher education, neighbourhoods) to address the shared priorities for the area and to tackle the issues that no single agency can do on their own. The Council provides a distinctive leadership role for the community to promote / improve the economic, social or environmental well-being of its area and people. Local Authorities can mobilise investment, bid for funds, champion the needs of their areas and harness the energies of local people and community organisations.

A Partnership is a joint working arrangement where the partners:

- are otherwise independent bodies;
- agree to jointly deliver common goals and outcomes for the community;
- share accountability, risks and resources, and
- create an organisational structure with agreed processes and programmes.

Partners have common responsibilities:

- to be willing to take on a role in the broader programme appropriate to the skills and resources of the partner organisation;
- to act in good faith at all times and in the best interests of the partnership's aims and objectives;
- be open about any conflict of interests that might arise, including those where Council staff have been seconded to work on the project;
- to encourage joint working and promote the sharing of information, resources and skills between public, private and community sectors;
- to hold confidentially any information received as a result of partnership activities or duties that is of a confidential or commercially sensitive nature;
- to act wherever possible as ambassadors for the project.

Key controls

The key controls for partnership arrangements are:

- ensuring that partnership arrangements are underpinned by clear and well documented internal controls.
- risk management processes are in place to identify, assess and allocate all known risks.
- appraisal processes are in place to assess the viability of the partnership in terms of resources, staffing and expertise.
- the roles and responsibilities of each partner involved in the project are agreed and formally accepted before the project commences.
- adequate arrangements are in place to ensure the accountability of other organisations for Council money, and that such money is only released against proper controls.
- regular communication is maintained with other partners throughout the project so that problems can be identified and shared to achieve their successful resolution.
- documentation is in place setting out and limiting the commitments of parties to each other and the project.

Responsibilities of the Chief Finance Officer

- To advise on effective controls that will ensure that resources are not wasted.
- To advise on the key elements of funding a project.
They include:
 - scheme appraisal for financial viability in both the current and future years.
 - risk appraisal and management.
 - resourcing, including taxation issues.
 - audit, security and control requirements.
 - carry-forward arrangements.
 - To ensure that the accounting and reporting arrangements are satisfactory.
 - To advise on the governance and performance management of partnership arrangements.
 - To ensure that when the Council is the "Accountable Body" there are adequate controls and governance arrangements in place.

Responsibilities of Directors

- 1) That the key components of a Partnership Governance Framework are in place. This includes:
 1. Ensuring that, before entering into agreements with external bodies, a business case and risk management appraisal has been prepared and considered.
 2. Ensuring that all agreements and arrangements are properly documented.
 3. Ensuring that such agreements and arrangements do not impact adversely upon the services provided by the Council.

Detailed Requirements

- 1) The Cabinet is responsible for approving significant partnership arrangements. The Cabinet is the focus for forming partnership arrangements with other public, voluntary and community sector organisations to address local needs.
- 2) The Cabinet can delegate functions, including those related to partnership, to officers. This is set out in the scheme of delegation that forms part of the Council's constitution. When functions are delegated, the Cabinet remains accountable for them to the whole Council.
- 3) A Business Case for partnership must be submitted for approval to the Cabinet for significant partnerships. A thorough risk assessment of the partnership must be made as part of the Business Case.
- 4) For each approved partnership, a Link Officer must be appointed. The Link Officer is responsible for reviewing governance arrangement and effectiveness and reporting to the relevant Director.
- 5) A Partnership Agreement must be completed and signed by all members of the Partnership.
This agreement must follow an approved format as agreed with Council Solicitor.
- 6) The Link Officer must perform a review of the partnerships governance, performance and effectiveness at least annually for review by the Cabinet or relevant Director. The review must demonstrate a continuing business case for the partnership or if not exiting the partnership must be considered.
- 7) The partnership must perform regular risk assessments and maintain a risk register.
- 8) It shall be clear that officers put forward to represent the Council on partnerships and external bodies are there on the Council's behalf and to ensure that the Council's interests, position and aspirations are protected. If the achievement of the objectives of the partnership becomes inconsistent with this, there is a conflict of interest. If there is a conflict of interest, an officer's first duty is always to the interests of the Council. Where an officer is appointed to a legally constituted company (not a partnership) the officer will be bound by the company's memorandum and articles. In this appointment the officer must represent the interests of the Company.

Section 26 – External Funding

Why is this important?

External funding is potentially a very important source of finance, but funding conditions need to be carefully considered to ensure that they are compatible with the aims and objectives of the Council. Local Authorities are increasingly encouraged to provide seamless service delivery through working closely with other agencies and private service providers.

Funds from external sources such as Regional or National funding mechanisms, the National Lottery and European Union provide additional resources to assist the Council to deliver services to the local community. However, in some instances, although the scope for external funding has increased, such funding is linked to tight specifications and may not be flexible enough to link to the Council's overall plan.

Key controls

The key controls for external funding are that:

- funds are accepted only if they meet the priorities approved in the policy framework by the full Council.
- the requirements of the Funding Body are clearly understood to ensure that key conditions of funding and any statutory requirements are complied with.
- any match-funding requirements are given due consideration prior to entering into long-term agreements and that revenue budgets reflect these requirements.

Responsibilities of the Chief Finance Officer

- 1) To review all grant application prior to submission.
- 2) To ensure that all funding notified by external bodies is received and properly recorded in the Council's accounts.
- 3) To ensure that audit requirements are met.

Responsibilities of Directors

- To obtain approval from Chief Finance Officer or his / her representative for grant applications.

- To ensure permissions are in place to incur expenditure funded by grant, including Full Approval status within Capital Programme where appropriate.
- To ensure that the project progresses in accordance with the agreed project plan and that all expenditure is properly incurred and recorded.
- To ensure that the match-funding requirements are considered prior to entering into the agreements and that future revenues are able to meet these requirements.
- To ensure that all claims for funds are made by the due date.

Section 27 – Work for Third Parties

Why is this important?

Local authorities can enter into a wide range of agreements to do work with each other and with some (but not all) public bodies. Such an agreement may enable the Council to provide a range of services to other bodies and so deliver additional income or maintain economies of scale and existing expertise. Arrangements should be in place to ensure that any risks associated with this work is minimised and that such work is intra vires (i.e. within the Council's legal powers).

Key controls

The key controls for working with third parties above a value of £50,000 p.a. are:

- 1) proposals are costed and reviewed for accuracy and completeness;
- 2) no process is started that might lead to the Council agreeing to do work for an outside body whether public sector or otherwise, without seeking the advice of the Council Solicitor as to whether this is within the Council's legal powers;
- 3) no process is started that might lead to the Council agreeing to do work for an outside body, whether public sector or otherwise without first establishing and recording that there is a clear economic case why doing the work is in the Council's best interests;
- 4) contracts are drawn up with the guidance of the Council Solicitor;
- 5) guidance is issued with regard to the financial aspects of third party contracts and the maintenance of the contract register;
- 6) the Council has insurance cover for any potential liabilities that could arise to the recipient of the service and any third party, and that the cost of this has been included with the overheads when calculating fees.

Responsibilities of Chief Finance Officer

- 1) Where the proposal exceeds £50,000 p.a. to issue guidance with regard to the financial aspects of third party contracts.

Responsibilities of Directors

- To ensure that the Cabinet Portfolio Member is aware of any individual proposals above £50,000 p.a. before any negotiations are concluded to work for third parties.

- To ensure that the Council does not enter into any agreement that is beyond its power.
- To ensure that no contract is subsidised by the Council.
- To ensure that, wherever possible, payment is received in advance of the delivery of the service.
- To ensure that the Service / Team has the appropriate expertise to undertake the contract, and that such contracts do not impact adversely upon the services provided for the Council.
- To ensure that all contracts are properly documented.

Section 28 – Avon Pension Fund

1. In its role as 'administering authority', Bath & North East Somerset Council has executive responsibility for the Avon Pension Fund. The Council is legally responsible for the Fund as set out in the Local Government Pension Scheme Regulations.
2. The Council delegates its responsibility for administering the Fund to the Avon Pension Fund Committee, this includes the setting up of a Local Pension Board and Investment Panel.
3. The Pensions Committee shall be responsible for the strategic policy of the Avon Pension Fund and the Fund's investment management arrangements. The Pensions Committee shall also make whatever arrangements it considers appropriate for the custody of the Fund's investments. This includes the use of partnership arrangements with other local authority pension funds to reduce costs to the Fund, i.e. Brunel Pension Partnership.
4. Where the Council solely manages any investments or balances relating to the Avon Pension Fund (i.e. not Brunel Pension Partnership) then the Council shall manage on an agency basis any cash balances belonging to the Avon Pension Fund which are held with the Council's bankers. A Service Level Agreement with the Council's Finance function shall regulate the way in which these balances are managed.
5. The Avon Pension Fund shall establish arrangements either internally or through the Brunel Pension Partnership to ensure that regular, i.e. quarterly reports are made to the Pensions Committee on the performance of the Fund's investment managers and all other matters affecting the administration of the Fund's investments. The mandates of the investment managers shall be subject to periodic review.
6. The Pensions Committee shall appoint an actuary to the Fund and shall review the appointment periodically.
7. The Pensions Committee shall appoint a "local referee" to the Fund in compliance with the Internal Dispute Resolution Procedure set out in the Local Government Pension Scheme Regulations and shall review the appointment periodically.
8. The Pensions Committee shall approve an annual budget for the Fund's administrative expenses and all disbursements shall be met from within this budget. Reports monitoring expenditure against budget shall be submitted to the Pensions Committee quarterly.
9. Except where otherwise provided, the Pensions Committee shall approve all discretionary policies outside of those exercised by the

Administering Authority under the Local Government Pension Scheme Regulations.

10. The Chief Finance Officer shall approve a list of authorised signatories, which shall apply to all disbursements made by the Fund.
11. The Chief Finance Officer shall be responsible for preparing an Annual Report and Accounts for the Fund.
12. The Chief Finance Officer shall make arrangements for the collection of all employer and employee contributions due to the Fund.
13. The Chief Finance Officer shall make arrangements for the payment of transfer values owed by the Fund and the collection of transfer values owed to the Fund.
14. The payment of all benefits will be made under arrangements approved and controlled by the Chief Finance Officer.

BUDGET MANAGEMENT SCHEME

Overall

The purpose of the Budget Management Scheme is:

- 1) To ensure that income and expenditure is in line with the agreed Council budgets and operational plans (consistency of purpose), and,**
- 2) To maintain overall Financial control of Council income and expenditure**

Section A: REVENUE BUDGETS

Budget Management

- 1) Directors** are responsible for budget management.
- 2)** The Chief Executive and Corporate Directors have overall responsibility for the delivery of the strategic objectives for their areas of responsibility, and thus have a responsibility for effective performance monitoring of Directors on matters of budget management.
- 3)** Each Director will develop and maintain effective arrangements for financial management within their service area. Delegation to service managers is permitted, although this will not remove ultimate accountability for budget management and performance from the Director.
- 4)** Services are to be managed within their budgets, using virement and carry forwards, as appropriate. The scheme applies equally to all the Council's trading activities.
- 5)** The Chief Financial Officer may, following consultation with the Senior Management Team and Cabinet approval suspend the carry-forward and virement rules within the Scheme.

Virements (see Annex 1 for definitions of Cabinet Portfolios and Services, and Annex 2 for clarification of virement rules application)

- 6)** Any virement which has the effect of changing a Council policy must be approved by the Cabinet or Council as appropriate.
- 7)** Directors may independently approve virements between their Services and within Cabinet Portfolios:
 - 7.1 following consultation with their Accountant, where each individual virement does not exceed £25,000, or,
 - 7.2 where each individual virement exceeds £25,000 but does not exceed £50,000 following consultation with their Corporate Director/Chief Executive and the Chief Financial Officer, and the relevant Cabinet Member,

provided that the virement does not represent a change in policy or commit the Council to increased costs (both within the current financial year and on an on-going full year basis).

9) Cabinet Members may approve virements within and between Portfolios. Where a virement is between Portfolios, all the relevant Cabinet Members must agree to the virement being made.

10) The relevant Directors may approve virements between services falling within the responsibilities of more than one Director and within Portfolio,

10.1 where each individual virement does not exceed £25,000.

10.2 following consultation with the relevant Corporate Director/Chief Executive, the Chef Finance Officer and the relevant Cabinet Member where each individual virement exceeds £25,000 but does not exceed £50,000.

Any such virement must be agreed by all the relevant Directors

11) Virements shall not be used to create a commitment over and above existing cash limits beyond the end of the financial year in which it is exercised. All proposed virements should make clear the effects in the current financial year and future years, and whether or not it is proposed to change future year's base budgets.

12) Directors may only agree / recommend virements if they are satisfied that they understand the implications for the service/s from which funding is being taken, and the service objectives of the relevant Services will not be impaired.

13) All virements must be reported to the Cabinet on a quarterly / four times per year basis.

Use of General Fund Balances

14) Any proposed use of un-earmarked general balances that reduces balances below the approved range must be recommended by the Cabinet and/or approved by the Council. The Cabinet must consider the advice of the Chief Financial Officer in recommending such uses.

15) In cases of emergency, money may be drawn from balances by the Chief Executive in consultation with the Chief Financial Officer (or nominees of both when both/either is absent). Recovery of these sums will then take precedence over any future carry forwards of under spend or spending on "non-urgent" items. For cases where use of balances in any one financial year reduces the level of balances below the range threshold, a plan setting out the recovery of balances to the minimum agreed threshold should be made to the full Council at the earliest opportunity (unless Council waives this on the advice of the Chief Executive, Chief Financial Officer & Cabinet Member for Finance & Efficiency).

Earmarked Reserves

17) Any Council earmarked reserve set aside by Council for a specific purpose

may not be spent on any other purpose without the permission of Council.

18) The specific arrangements for the governance and release of reserves are delegated to the Council's Chief Financial Officer in consultation with the Cabinet Member for Finance & Efficiency and the Chief Executive.

Carry Forward -- Overspends

19) With effective budget planning and management, overspending should not occur. If, however, one occurs it must normally be recovered.

1) The Director is responsible for making proposals for the recovery of any overspend to their Corporate Director in the first instance. Further reporting requirements will then be determined, depending on the size and nature of the problem.

2) Overspends will normally be expected to be recovered within the following year. However, a period of up to 3 years may be allowed for the recovery of overspends, depending on the level of overspend and the subsequent impact of recovery on service delivery.

3) All formal recovery plans will be submitted by the relevant Director as part of budget monitoring to the Cabinet for approval.

4) Senior Management Team and Cabinet, in consultation with the Chief Financial Officer, will consider the overall corporate outturn position and may consider writing off overspends

Carry Forwards -- Underspends

20) (1) Directors may, following consultation with their Corporate Director and the relevant Cabinet Member, put forward proposals for the utilisation of any underspends arising within their services, before the end of the financial year in which the underspend arises.

(2) The Cabinet may approve proposals reported to it provided, in each case, the underspend

- is not a windfall,
- does not relate to a matter funded as a service development that has not occurred, and
- occurs in the financial year in which it is reported.

(3) No proposal to carry forward any underspend will be reported to Cabinet unless the Director has sought to manage the overspend within the services falling within their remit, and Senior Management Team have agreed to recommend the proposal.

(4) An underspend will be considered to be a windfall if it has not been identified and reported to the Cabinet by the end of January in the financial year in which it occurs, based on the April to December budget monitoring report.

(5) Senior Management Team and Cabinet, in consultation with the Chief Financial Officer, will consider the overall corporate outturn position in deciding whether each underspend is approved.

Monthly Reporting

21) The Senior Management Team and Cabinet Members will receive a monthly financial report of the Councils key budget risks from the Chief Financial Officer. This report will contain information on the progress and implementation key savings proposals.

22) Reports will focus on the key issues. Under or over spends are to be flagged at an early stage, with Directors making proposals for the recovery of overspends or utilisation of under spends, regardless of the fact of any 'netting off' effect.

Quarterly Reporting

23) The Cabinet is to consider the overall revenue & capital outturn budget position four times a year.

24) Reports will focus on the key issues. Under or overspends will be reported with Directors outlining proposals for the recovery of any overspends. An update will be provided on the delivery of all savings proposals and include actions and mitigations for any non-delivery or slippage.

25) The Cabinet is required to approve the outturn position within 4 months of the end of a financial year. Any action that officers are required to take to manage a budget that affects a change in policy and/or a reduction or increase in service will be reported to Council at the earliest opportunity.

26) The Corporate Audit Committee will approve the Council's Statement of Accounts in line with statutory requirements and timescales.

Section B: CAPITAL BUDGETS

Budget Management

1) Directors are responsible for budget management of all capital schemes within their service area. Directors may delegate to other officers responsibility for all or some budget heads, but they will retain overall accountability.

2) Before any scheme is included in the capital programme, budget management responsibility must be assigned to a Director. Directors will be required to follow guidance issued by the Chief Financial Officer from time to

time on budget approval process.

3) Capital budgets are to be managed by individual scheme, with flexibility to combine smaller (up to £500k), schemes into a block of similar schemes (e.g. Highways Maintenance capital block).

4) The capital programme is to be approved and managed on a rolling basis over at least a 5-year period.

5) The Capital Programme (including Provisional Schemes) is agreed by Council. The Cabinet will, during the year, monitor the programme and resources and may approve additional schemes for inclusion in the Programme, subject to analysis of the financial implications and a prudent view of resource availability.

6) New schemes attracting 100% grant, WECA funding or other 3rd party contribution can be incorporated into the Programme by the Cabinet and do not require the specific approval of the Council, provided the financial (including risk) implications are fully identified. All other additional schemes, including those funded by borrowing, will require full assessment of revenue impacts and if they result in either, a net revenue cost impact or an increase in the overall Council approved borrowing limits, they will require the approval of the Council, otherwise they can be approved by Cabinet.

7) Provisional schemes once approved by Council can become fully approved through the appropriate Director (who will record the decision) and the Chief Finance Officer in consultation with the appropriate Corporate Director, Portfolio Holder and the Portfolio Holder for Finance and Efficiency, provided the scheme approval is sought within the agreed provisional budget envelope and there is no negative impact to approved revenue budgets as a result.

8) As part of the due diligence required the project must be fully costed and a PID completed, prior to submission PID's require confirmation of support from the relevant Director and Finance Manager (or delegate) approval. The PID then must be approved by a majority of the Director Group. Once this has been completed consultation with the Portfolio Holder and Portfolio for Finance and Efficiency can take place before the final decision can be made by the Corporate Director (unless other Council agreed delegation applies) and recorded. A sample decision template is attached. (note it is at the Corporate Director's discretion as part of consultation to require a Cabinet or Single Member Decision where it is the public/Council interest to do so). The recorded decision requires agreement by the Chief Finance Officer (or delegate).

9) All schemes moving from Provisional to Full Approval must be reported within the next quarterly Revenue and Capital Monitoring Report to Cabinet.

10) No decision can be made by an officer, Councillor or the Cabinet that will

incur future revenue or net total scheme capital costs to the Council over and above a previously agreed capital scheme (or group of schemes that constitute an agreed programme) within the financial plan totals without the approval of Council.

Scheme Substitution

11) Within block schemes, the substitution of one scheme for another that is unable to proceed will be allowed following consultation and approval with the Chief Financial Officer, and subject of any specific provisions agreed as part of the budget approval.

12) For other schemes, scheme substitution of up to £500,000 will be allowed following consultation and approval of the Chief Financial Officer, if the following conditions are met:

- a) The new scheme closely resembles the original scheme;
- b) The scheme can make use of the same type of funding approved for the original scheme;
- c) The new scheme does not require significant additional design or "work-up" costs to be incurred before it can commence.

13) Approval of the Council will be required for the substitution of a capital scheme not meeting the criteria within paras 7-8.

14) If funding has been allocated for specific schemes by Government Departments or the European Commission, then approval must be obtained from the relevant body, as required under the terms and conditions of the funding.

Carry Forward

15) With effective budget planning and management, overspending should not occur. If, however, one occurs it must be recovered. The Director is responsible for making proposals for the avoidance or recovery of any overspending to their Corporate Director in the first instance. Further reporting requirements will then be determined, depending on the size and nature of the problem. Significant overspendings must be reported to the Cabinet at the earliest possible stage.

16) Within block schemes overspendings on payments during the year will be carried forward and the following year's capital programme correspondingly reduced.

17) On other schemes a Service will normally be expected to absorb any overspending by virement from other budgets or by deferral of other planned schemes.

18) Directors are encouraged to utilise resources in the year in which they are provided, especially where projects are funded through the receipt of grant with conditions that require this.

19) Planned spending should be profiled realistically across the 5-year

Programme to ensure that the Council overall is able to make best use of its capital resources. Where a scheme (or block of schemes) slips, the in-year under-spending will normally be carried forward in order to ensure completion of the scheme. If a scheme is expected to under spend against its planned total capital scheme cost, then this should be reported as part of the outturn for consideration by Cabinet.

Reporting

20) Cabinet will receive regular (at least four annually) reports of progress on capital schemes through the budget monitoring process in order to focus on the key issues and to identify project spend in both the current financial year and over the lifetime of each project, and associated funding and revenue implications.

Capital Contingency

21) Council will approve a sum that is to be set aside to reflect the overall risk from capital projects it has approved. The contingency will be set by Council following a report from the Chief Financial Officer on the appropriate level of reserve to mitigate the potential threat of financial exposure after considering the known risks of each scheme on an individual basis. The contingency will then be managed by the Cabinet Member for Finance & Efficiency in consultation with other Cabinet Members, who will be required to report back to Council if and when he considers that this is likely to be insufficient. The contingency will be reviewed by Council on an annual basis as part of the financial plan review, unless requested to do so more frequently by the Chief Financial Officer, or the Cabinet.

22) The Cabinet must manage the contingency taking into account the lifetime and profile of expected risk exposure of the programme to which the fund relates. The Cabinet must consider the advice of the Chief Financial Officer in recommending such uses.

23) In exceptional circumstances of extreme urgency, additional expenditure may be approved by the Chief Financial Officer in consultation with the Cabinet Member for Finance & Efficiency and Chief Executive. Recovery of this sum will then take precedence over any future capital programmes on "non-urgent" items.

Approval to Spend Procedure

Commitments can be made as follows

Scenario	Consultation / Reporting / Approvals Requirements
Director wants to vary between subjective expenditure headings within	The Director can vary subjectively within the project total.

Scenario	Consultation / Reporting / Approvals Requirements
the project total (excluding use of project contingency)	
Director wants to draw down on project specific contingency.	Proposals for any such drawdown should be reported to the Directors Group and are subject to agreement with the relevant Cabinet Member. The rationale will need to consider the adequacy of the remaining contingency.
Outside the Project specific Contingency (i.e. drawdown of the overall capital programme contingency)	The Director and relevant Cabinet Member must request draw down of general provision from the Cabinet Member for Finance & Efficiency, in consultation with the Chief Financial Officer and Chief Executive.
Outside the overall capital programme contingency General Provision	If there is likely to be a potential overspend on the general provision, an immediate report to Council is necessary

The above rules apply within a financial year as well as in relation to the total scheme cost (over the period of the project). These rules also apply to changes in funding (which may offset the spending variations or may be independent of them)

ACCOUNTABILITY

- a) Directors will be responsible for ensuring the principles of this scheme are understood and enforced within their service areas.
- b) “**Chief Financial Officer**” for the purposes of this scheme means the Chief Financial Officer under s151 of the 1972 Act (and s114 of the 1988 Act) or their nominated deputy insofar as the legislation allows the deputy to act in the absence of the CFO.

Annex 1

Revenue Service and Virement Cash Limits:

A service cash limit (as referred to in the Budget Management Scheme above) is a budget heading line in the Revenue Cash Limits appendix to the Budget Report approved each year by February Council. These are also reported in the Budget Monitoring reports to Cabinet four times per year (including the Outturn report).

These Cash Limits are designed to assist with the determination of virements as set out in the section on Revenue Budgets (Section A) parts 6-13 above.

Each cash limit has a Director, Corporate Director and Cabinet Member assigned, and an individual cash limit may not have multiples of these assigned to it.

Annex 2

Summary of Virement Limits and Required Approval

Inter service/portfolio = between Services/Portfolios,

Intra service/portfolio = within a Service/Portfolio

Amount	Intra service, Intra portfolio	Inter service, intra portfolio	Intra service, inter portfolio	Inter service, inter portfolio
Less than £25k	Dir can approve	Dirs can approve	Dir can approve, consult portfolio holders	Dirs can approve, consult relevant portfolio holders
£25-50k	Dir can approve, consults CD/CEO & CFO, consult portfolio holder.	Dirs can approve, consult CD/CEO & CFO and portfolio holder.	Dir can approve, consults CD/CEO, CFO and relevant portfolio holders	Dirs can approve, consult CD/CEO & CFO, & relevant portfolio holders.
Over £50k	Included in quarterly Cabinet Budget Monitoring report for approval			

a) Virement Definition

A Virement is defined by CIPFA (Chartered Institute Public Finance & Accountancy) as “a transfer of an under spending on one budget head to finance additional spending on another budget head in accordance with an authority’s finance regulations”. For the purposes of this scheme a budget head is considered to be an equivalent level to the Cash Limit (as defined in Annex 1). This could also be allied to standard service subdivision as defined by CIPFA’s Service Expenditure Analysis.

b) Transactions that are not classified as virements

1. Where there is no net transfer between budget heads. This can arise from new grant funding changes & associated expenditure, but also from adjustments within budgets within the same Service. The key principle reflected is there is no policy change or future year additional commitment to the Council.
2. Re-assignment of budget heads between Directors or Portfolios. These are generally termed “Technical Adjustments”, and reflect the purpose and amount of expenditure remains unchanged but management responsibility has been re-assigned. Typically this happened from new management structures of services / departments have been made, or different treatment of overhead budgets are altered from being held centrally or recharged to services, or vice versa.

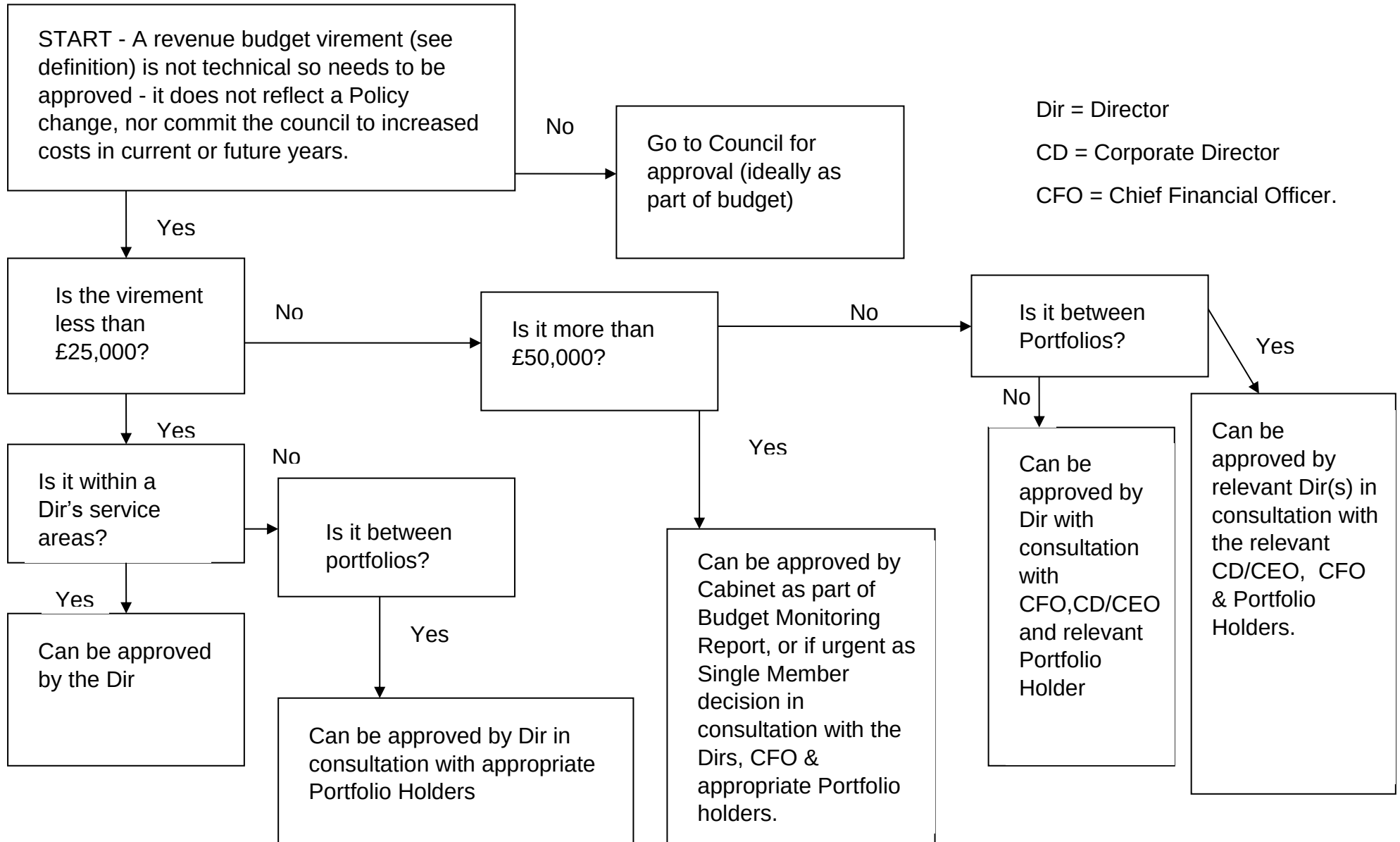
The “Technical Adjustments” described above will be reported to Cabinet retrospectively if they are across Cash Limit, to ensure that Cash Limit control is maintained.

c) Policy Change

A Policy is a plan of action adopted by the Council and implemented by the Cabinet. Hence outsourcing a service would define a policy change, as would using different delivery methods, or stopping a service or starting a new one, or extending an existing service.

d) Future years

There is no delegated authority for any officer to approve any virements which have a non-zero full year effect and/or create a future year commitment. Proposals can be made as part of the budget monitoring process or Medium Term Financial Strategy to the Cabinet, so that they can be considered in the Council's future year budget planning.



Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

PART 4 CODES & PROTOCOLS

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

4.1 PROTOCOL ON COUNCILLOR / OFFICER RELATIONS

Approved by the Council on 12 September 2002 and updated following consultation with Group Leaders in November 2012. Job titles amended in June 2018, in line with the Council's revised staffing structure.

4.1.1 INTRODUCTION

The relationship between Councillors and officers is an essential component of the successful working of the organisation. This relationship within the authority is characterised by mutual respect, informality and trust. Councillors and officers should feel free to speak to one another openly and honestly. Nothing in this Protocol is intended to change this relationship. The purpose of this Protocol is rather to help Councillors and officers to perform effectively by giving guidance on their respective roles and expectations and on their relationship with each other. The Protocol also gives guidance on what to do on the rare occasions when things go wrong. Responsibility for the operation of this Protocol lies with the Head of the Paid Service with issues of interpretation determined by the Monitoring Officer.

The Protocol must be read and operated subject to any relevant legislation and national and local Codes of Conduct and any procedure for confidential reporting.

Nothing in this Protocol shall be construed as being applicable to the relationship between a political research assistant appointed by the Council and Councillors. Separate considerations apply to the relationship between political research assistants, as officers of the Council and Councillors which are beyond the scope of this document.

4.1.2 ROLES OF COUNCILLORS AND OFFICERS

The respective roles of Councillors and officers can be summarised as follows: Councillors and officers are servants of the public and they are indispensable to one another. But their responsibilities are distinct. Councillors are responsible to the electorate and serve only so long as their term of office lasts. Officers are responsible to the Council. Their job is to give advice to Councillors and to the authority, and to carry out the authority's work under the direction and control of the Council, the Cabinet, and relevant committees, etc.

Mutual respect between Councillors and officers is essential to good local government

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

4.1.3 Councillors

Councillors have five main areas of responsibility:

- (a) determining the policy of the authority and giving it political leadership,
- (b) monitoring and reviewing the performance of the authority in implementing that policy and delivering services'
- (c) representing the authority externally,
- (d) acting as advocates on behalf of their constituents and
- (e) making decisions.

It is not the role of Councillors to involve themselves in the day to day management of the authority's services.

4.1.4 Members of the Executive/Cabinet, Chairs and Vice Chairs

Members of the Executive/Cabinet and Chairs and Vice Chairs of Committees, Boards, Panels etc. have additional responsibilities. Because of those responsibilities, which are set out in the Council's Constitution, their relationships with employees may be different from, and more complex than those of Councillors without those responsibilities and this is recognised in the expectations they are entitled to have. However, such Councillors must still respect the impartiality of officers, must not ask them to undertake work of a party political nature, or to do anything which would put them in difficulty in the event of a change in the political composition of the authority.

4.1.5 Other Councillors

As individual Councillors, all Councillors have the same rights and obligations in their relationship with officers and should be treated equally. This principle is particularly important in the context of scrutiny and overview. However, where a political group forms

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

an administration, either alone or in partnership with another group or groups, it is recognised that the administration's legitimate expectations of officers, particularly those at a senior level in the organisation, will differ from that of other political groups.

4.1.6 Officers

The role of officers is to give advice and information to Councillors and to implement the policies determined by the authority.

In giving such advice to Councillors, and in preparing and presenting reports, it is the responsibility of the officer to express their own professional views and recommendations. Whilst an officer may report the views of individual Councillors on an issue, if the Councillor wishes to express a contrary view he/she should not seek to pressure the officer to make a recommendation contrary to the officer's professional view.

Certain officers e.g. Head of Paid Service, Monitoring Officer, Chief Finance Officer (Section 151 Officer) and the Statutory Chief Officers (the Education Director and Director for People) have responsibilities in law over and above their obligations to the authority and to individual Councillors, and Councillors must respect these obligations, must not obstruct officers in the proper discharge of these responsibilities, and must not victimise officers for properly discharging these responsibilities.

EXPECTATIONS

4.1.7 Councillors can expect from officers:

- (a) A commitment to the authority as a whole, and not to any political group
- (b) A working partnership
- (c) An understanding of and support for respective roles, workloads and pressures
- (d) Timely response to enquiries and complaints – as a minimum standard the Council's targets for public enquiries of acknowledgement within 5 working days and substantive reply within 20 days will apply.

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

- (e) Professional advice, not influenced by political views or preference, which does not compromise the political neutrality of officers
- (f) Regular, up to date information on matters that can reasonably be considered appropriate and relevant to their needs, having regard to any individual responsibilities that they have and positions that they hold
- (g) Awareness of and sensitivity to the political environment
- (h) Respect, dignity and courtesy
- (i) Training and development in order to carry out their role effectively
- (j) Integrity, mutual support and appropriate confidentiality. This will include the right for Councillors to make, and officers to respect, requests for confidential information and correspondence will not be copied by officers to any other Member unless it is considered, in the circumstances, that the officer is under a legal duty to do so. Where it is necessary to copy the correspondence to another Member, this will be made clear in the correspondence with the Councillor who initiated the correspondence.
- (k) Not to have personal issues or concerns raised with them or about them by officers other than via agreed procedures
- (l) That employees will not use their relationship with Councillors to advance their personal interests or to influence decisions improperly
- (m) That officers will at all times comply with the relevant Code of Conduct
- (n) Support for the role of Councillors as the local representatives of the authority, within any scheme of support for Councillors which may be approved by the authority, subject to the limitations outlined at 3.4 below.
- (o) Assistance by way of information and advice but only insofar as (i) the volume and frequency of request is within manageable bounds and (ii) the effect of providing such information and advice could not be detrimental to agreed Council policy or properly authorised decisions.

4.1.8 Officers can expect from Councillors:

- (a) A working partnership
- (b) An understanding of and support for respective roles, workloads and pressures
- (c) Political leadership and direction
- (d) Respect, dignity and courtesy

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

- (e) Integrity, mutual support and appropriate confidentiality
- (f) Not to be subject to bullying or to be put under undue pressure. Councillors should have regard to the seniority of officers in determining what are reasonable requests, having regard to the fact that Councillors represent the employer and the potential vulnerability of officers, particularly at junior levels
- (g) That Councillors will not use their position or relationship with officers to advance their personal interests or those of others or to influence decisions improperly
- (h) That Councillors will at all times comply with the relevant Code of Conduct
- (i) Not to be the subject of public personal comment by or criticism from Councillors and that concerns or comment will only be made or expressed in accordance with Section 5.
- (j) Recognition that officers work for the Council, not for individual Members, and it is for the Council and not the individual Member to set priorities when it comes to the allocation of Council resources subject to the statutory and common law rights of Councillors and the law.
- (k) To be allowed to progress approved Council policy subject to appropriate scrutiny.

4.1.9 Limitations upon Behaviour

The distinct roles of Councillors and officers necessarily impose limitations upon behaviour. By way of illustration, and not as an exclusive list:

- (a) Close personal relationships between Councillors and officers can confuse these separate roles and get in the way of the proper discharge of the authority's functions, not least in creating the perception in others that a particular Councillor or officer may secure advantageous treatment.
- (b) The need to maintain the separate roles means that there are limits to the matters on which Members may seek the advice of officers, both in relation to personal matters and party political issues.
- (c) Relationships with a particular individuals or party groups should not be such as to create public suspicion that an employee favours that Councillor or group above others. The issue of officer attendance and advice to political groups is specifically covered below.
- (d) To ensure that the distinct roles of Councillors and Officers are maintained and that the public perception is that of an appropriate professional relationship, it is

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

advisable at meetings at which the public are present for Councillors and Officers to address each other by appropriate titles and surnames.

As employer, the Council has a duty to provide and maintain a working environment which is reasonably tolerable to all its employees and to protect them insofar as it is able to from unacceptable treatment and behaviour and unauthorised interference in work duties. All Councillors, as representatives of the employer, must ensure that they discharge their duties as employer fairly and impartially and not do anything to undermine the relationship of mutual trust and confidence which must exist between the Council and its employees. It should be noted that the more influential position with the Council a Councillor holds, the more it is likely that his or her views or actions could be deemed to be those of the Council acting in his capacity as employer.

In seeking advice and support, Councillors should have due regard to the seniority of the officer with whom they are dealing and recognise that whilst these officers owe an overriding duty to the Council as a whole, such duties are first owed in practice to their respective line managers and the Chief Executive and not to any individual Member. For this reason, Members should not give direct instructions to staff unless they are duly authorised to do so by the Council's Constitution or the office which they hold. If so authorised, instructions should be given to the relevant Director and not to a more junior officer other than with the agreement of the Director concerned.

A number of broad propositions may be drawn from the above which are stated in Section 6 as broad statements of principle which will be used to aid interpretation of this document and other documents that concern the rights and obligations of Members and Officers towards each other.

4.1.10 POLITICAL GROUPS

The operation of political groups is now an integral feature of local government, and such political groups have an important part to play in the development of policy and the political management of the authority. It is in the interests of the authority to support effective operation of political groups, but their operation can pose particular dangers in terms of the impartiality of officers.

4.1.11 Reports:

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

(a) Political groups may request the Chief Executive to prepare or arrange for the preparation of a written report on matters relating to the authority for consideration by the group. The Chief Executive will consider whether it is proper so to do.

(b) Officer reports to political groups will be limited to a statement of material facts and identification of options and the merits and demerits of such options for the authority. Reports will not deal with any political implications of the matter or any option, and officers will not make any recommendation to a political group.

(c) Where a report is prepared for a political group, the Chief Executive will advise all other groups that the report has been prepared and will provide a copy of that report to any group upon request.

4.1.12 Officer Attendance

(a) Any political group may request the Chief Executive to attend or arrange for another officer to attend a meeting of the group to advise on any particular matter relating to the authority.

(b) The Chief Executive may arrange for the attendance of a representative in their stead, or may decline to attend or to provide a representative where he/she is of the opinion that the particular issue is of such a political nature that it would be improper to attend

(c) Officers' advice to political groups will be limited to a statement of material facts and identification of options and the merits and demerits of such options for the authority. Advice will not deal with any political implications of the matter or any option, and officers will not make any recommendation to a political group.

(d) Where an officer attends a political group, the Chief Executive will advise all other groups that the officer has attended and the subject upon which he/she has given information

(e) Officers will respect the confidentiality of any matter which they hear in the course of attending a political group meeting.

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

4.1.13 WHEN THINGS GO WRONG

4.1.14 Procedure for officers

An Officer should not raise matters relating to the conduct or capability of a Member other than in a confidential way. Where an Officer feels that she/he has not been properly treated with respect and courtesy by a Councillor, they should raise the matter with their Director or the Chief Executive as appropriate. As a normal rule, the Officer concerned should approach the Member in confidence first if they consider they are able to do so to explain their concerns. In the event either that this is unsuccessful, or the Officer concerned considers he/she cannot take this course of action, their line manager will consider what action should be taken and will involve the individual Member and/or their Group Leader in those discussions.

The aim of these discussions is to resolve the matter by conciliation and accommodation, rather than by more formal means. Nevertheless, it must be recognised that an Officer, like anybody else, is entitled to make an allegation of a breach of the Code of Local Conduct for Councillors to the Monitoring Officer. It should be noted that the Council's Grievance Procedure is inappropriate in these circumstances and the Council's Bullying and Harassment Policy provides that concerns about the conduct of elected Members should be referred to the Monitoring Officer.

4.1.15 Procedure for Councillors

In the event that a Councillor is dissatisfied with the conduct, behaviour or performance of an officer, the matter should be raised with the appropriate officer's Director. Where the officer concerned is a Director the matter should be raised with the Chief Operating Officer and, when the officer is the Chief Operating Officer, with the Chief Executive. Where the employee concerned is the Chief Executive, the matter should be raised with the Monitoring Officer who will discuss the issues raised with the Group Leaders. In all cases, the officer with whom the issue is raised will report back to the Councillor concerned, giving as much information as he/she can as to the conclusions he/she has reached.

The procedure for Councillors is only appropriate where the Councillors concerns arise in his or her capacity as a Councillor, rather than as a service user or individual affected by the Council's decisions. If this is the case, then the Councillor's concerns as an individual should be dealt with in the same way as any other individuals concerns by reference to the appropriate complaints procedure.

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

4.2 GENERAL PROPOSITIONS

Set out below are some general propositions commended to the Council by the District Auditor. It must be clearly understood that these are no more than general propositions and that nothing that is stated in them in any way affects the overriding principle that a Councillor has rights of access to information, meetings and so on under both statute and common law. This Protocol cannot, nor does it purport to, override those rights. What the general principles seek to do is set out an expectation of the “norm” as a benchmark against which requirements for assistance and information can be assessed. The law is clear that ultimately it will be a matter for the appropriate committee of the Council or the Council Executive (Cabinet) itself to determine whether or not a “need to know” arises albeit that such a decision will clearly be subject to the supervisory jurisdiction of the courts.

Members are generally entitled to receive the information they reasonably require for the purpose of their roles as Councillors, but there must be limits in terms of volume, time and so on. In the end, it is for the Council to decide what the priorities are for the use of its officers' time.

Officers work for the Council, not for individual Members, and their first and primary efforts must be devoted to carrying out the decisions of the Council.

It is necessary to recognise the difference between Members pursuing legitimate issues or concerns, eg relating to propriety, compliance with Council decision, the quality of Cabinet performance and so on, and unduly interfering with Management and Cabinet tasks.

Councils inevitably are engaged from time to time in transactions where confidentiality has to be maintained if the Council's interests are to be protected, and there needs to be confidence this is being honoured by Members and Officers, as required by the Council's Local Code of Conduct for Councillors and the Employee Code of Conduct.

There are inevitable ambiguities in a relationship between an individual Councillor and outside advisers for whom the Council is formally the client who usually work through named officers. For this reason, Councillors should not approach outside advisers directly and should channel enquiries or issues through the officer contact for that adviser.

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

There are particular characteristics of e-mail, notably its immediacy, which can create a greater sense of bombardment or harassment than traditional forms of correspondence which needs to be recognised and managed.

The Council has responsibility for staff requiring it to consider whether the behaviour of Councillors might be injurious to individual members of staff and, if so, to consider how such injury could be avoided or minimised.

4.3 MANAGEMENT OF THE MEMBER/OFFICER PROTOCOL

The Chief Executive, as Head of Paid Service, is ultimately responsible for ensuring the legitimate approved policies of the Council are implemented, the proper management of the Member/officer interface and that the Council discharges its duties as an employer towards its employees. It is therefore his or her responsibility to ensure that both the spirit and the letter of this Member Officer Protocol are observed and will fall to him/her, in consultation with the Monitoring Officer, to make judgements as to whether or not it is considered that the Member Officer Protocol has been breached; - for example, if demands of an individual Councillor are excessive or deflecting resources from agreed Council priorities and/or members of staff feel unduly harassed or bullied.

In the event that the Chief Executive considers this to be the case, he or she will review the matter with the Councillor concerned, together with their Group Leader. If this meeting does not reach an acceptable understanding, following further consultation with the Monitoring officer and the Group Leader, either or both the following actions may be initiated:-

(i) The Councillor's access to officers may be restricted to a single individual who will have authority to arrange for their concerns and enquiries to be dealt with as appropriate. This may include leaving the matters to lie in the file until either resource of dealing with the matter can be released or deciding that no further action shall be taken. The Councillor concerned will, of course, have the right to request a review by the appropriate Council decision making body.

(ii) In the event that the matter cannot be informally resolved to the satisfaction of all concerned, the Chief Executive may consider that a complaint should be made

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

to the Council's Standards Committee. This will be processed in accordance with the Standards Committee's agreed procedure.

Concerns raised by a Councillor about officer conduct will be dealt with in accordance with paragraph 5.2 above.

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

4.4 COUNCILLOR CODE OF CONDUCT

Local Government Association Model Councillor Code of Conduct 2020

4.4.1 Joint statement

The role of Councillor across all tiers of local government is a vital part of our country's system of democracy. It is important that as Councillors we can be held accountable and all adopt the behaviours and responsibilities associated with the role. Our conduct as an individual Councillor affects the reputation of all Councillors. We want the role of Councillor to be one that people aspire to. We also want individuals from a range of backgrounds and circumstances to be putting themselves forward to become Councillors.

As Councillors, we represent local residents, work to develop better services and deliver local change. The public have high expectations of us and entrust us to represent our local area, taking decisions fairly, openly, and transparently. We have both an individual and collective responsibility to meet these expectations by maintaining high standards and demonstrating good conduct, and by challenging behaviour which falls below expectations.

Importantly, we should be able to undertake our role as a Councillor without being intimidated, abused, bullied, or threatened by anyone, including the general public.

This Code has been designed to protect our democratic role, encourage good conduct and safeguard the public's trust in local government.

4.4.2 Introduction

The Local Government Association (LGA) has developed this Model Councillor Code of Conduct, in association with key partners and after extensive consultation with the sector, as part of its work on supporting all tiers of local government to continue to aspire to high standards of leadership and performance. It is a template for councils to adopt in whole and/or with local amendments.

All councils are required to have a local Councillor Code of Conduct.

The LGA will undertake an annual review of this Code to ensure it continues to be fit- for- purpose, incorporating advances in technology, social media and changes in legislation. The LGA can also offer support, training and mediation

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

to councils and Councillors on the application of the Code and the National Association of Local Councils (NALC) and the county associations of local councils can offer advice and support to town and parish councils.

4.4.3 Definitions

For the purposes of this Code of Conduct, a “Councillor” means a Member or co-opted member of a local authority or a directly elected mayor. A “co-opted member” is defined in the Localism Act 2011 Section 27(4) as “a person who is not a member of the authority but who

- a) is a member of any committee or sub-committee of the authority, or;
- b) is a member of, and represents the authority on, any joint committee or joint sub-committee of the authority;

and who is entitled to vote on any question that falls to be decided at any meeting of that committee or sub-committee”.

For the purposes of this Code of Conduct, “local authority” includes county councils, district councils, London borough councils, parish councils, town councils, fire and rescue authorities, police authorities, joint authorities, economic prosperity boards, combined authorities and National Park authorities.

4.4.4 Purpose of the Code of Conduct

The purpose of this Code of Conduct is to assist you, as a Councillor, in modelling the behaviour that is expected of you, to provide a personal check and balance, and to set out the type of conduct that could lead to action being taken against you. It is also to protect you, the public, fellow Councillors, local authority officers and the reputation of local government. It sets out general principles of conduct expected of all Councillors and your specific obligations in relation to standards of conduct. The LGA encourages the use of support, training and mediation prior to action being taken using the Code. The fundamental aim of the Code is to create and maintain public confidence in the role of Councillor and local government.

4.4.5 General principles of Councillor conduct

Everyone in public office at all levels; all who serve the public or deliver public services, including ministers, civil servants, Councillors and local authority officers; should uphold the Seven Principles of Public Life, also known as the Nolan Principles.

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

Building on these principles, the following general principles have been developed specifically for the role of Councillor.

In accordance with the public trust placed in me, on all occasions:

- I act with integrity and honesty
- I act lawfully
- I treat all persons fairly and with respect; and
- I lead by example and act in a way that secures public confidence in the role of Councillor.

In undertaking my role:

- I impartially exercise my responsibilities in the interests of the local community
- I do not improperly seek to confer an advantage, or disadvantage, on any person
- I avoid conflicts of interest
- I exercise reasonable care and diligence; and
- I ensure that public resources are used prudently in accordance with my local authority's requirements and in the public interest.

4.4.6 Application of the Code of Conduct

This Code of Conduct applies to you as soon as you sign your declaration of acceptance of the office of Councillor or attend your first meeting as a co-opted member and continues to apply to you until you cease to be a Councillor.

This Code of Conduct applies to you when you are acting in your capacity as a Councillor which may include when:

- you misuse your position as a Councillor
- Your actions would give the impression to a reasonable member of the public with knowledge of all the facts that you are acting as a Councillor;

The Code applies to all forms of communication and interaction, including:

- at face-to-face meetings
- at online or telephone meetings
- in written communication
- in verbal communication
- in non-verbal communication

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

- in electronic and social media communication, posts, statements and comments.

You are also expected to uphold high standards of conduct and show leadership at all times when acting as a Councillor.

Your Monitoring Officer has statutory responsibility for the implementation of the Code of Conduct, and you are encouraged to seek advice from your Monitoring Officer on any matters that may relate to the Code of Conduct. Town and parish Councillors are encouraged to seek advice from their Clerk, who may refer matters to the Monitoring Officer.

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

4.4.7 Standards of Councillor conduct

This section sets out your obligations, which are the minimum standards of conduct required of you as a Councillor. Should your conduct fall short of these standards, a complaint may be made against you, which may result in action being taken.

Guidance is included to help explain the reasons for the obligations and how they should be followed.

4.4.8 General Conduct

1. Respect

As a Councillor:

- I treat other Councillors and members of the public with respect.
- I treat local authority employees, employees and representatives of partner organisations and those volunteering for the local authority with respect and respect the role they play.

Respect means politeness and courtesy in behaviour, speech, and in the written word. Debate and having different views are all part of a healthy democracy. As a Councillor, you can express, challenge, criticise and disagree with views, ideas, opinions and policies in a robust but civil manner. You should not, however, subject individuals, groups of people or organisations to personal attack.

In your contact with the public, you should treat them politely and courteously. Rude and offensive behaviour lowers the public's expectations and confidence in Councillors.

In return, you have a right to expect respectful behaviour from the public. If members of the public are being abusive, intimidatory or threatening you are entitled to stop any conversation or interaction in person or online and report them to the local authority, the relevant social media provider or the police. This also applies to fellow Councillors, where action could then be taken under the Councillor Code of Conduct, and local authority employees, where concerns should be raised in line with the local authority's Councillor- officer protocol.

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

4.4.9 Bullying, harassment and discrimination As a Councillor:

- I do not bully any person.
- I do not harass any person.
- I promote equalities and do not discriminate unlawfully against any person.

The Advisory, Conciliation and Arbitration Service (ACAS) characterises bullying as offensive, intimidating, malicious or insulting behaviour, an abuse or misuse of power through means that undermine, humiliate, denigrate or injure the recipient. Bullying might be a regular pattern of behaviour or a one-off incident, happen face-to-face, on social media, in emails or phone calls, happen in the workplace or at work social events and may not always be obvious or noticed by others.

The Protection from Harassment Act 1997 defines harassment as conduct that causes alarm or distress or puts people in fear of violence and must involve such conduct on at least two occasions. It can include repeated attempts to impose unwanted communications and contact upon a person in a manner that could be expected to cause distress or fear in any reasonable person.

Unlawful discrimination is where someone is treated unfairly because of a protected characteristic. Protected characteristics are specific aspects of a person's identity defined by the Equality Act 2010. They are age, disability, gender reassignment, marriage and civil partnership, pregnancy and maternity, race, religion or belief, sex and sexual orientation.

The Equality Act 2010 places specific duties on local authorities. Councillors have a central role to play in ensuring that equality issues are integral to the local authority's performance and strategic aims, and that there is a strong vision and public commitment to equality across public services.

4.4.10 Impartiality of officers of the council

As a Councillor:

- I do not compromise, or attempt to compromise, the impartiality of anyone who works for, or on behalf of, the local authority.

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

Officers work for the local authority as a whole and must be politically neutral (unless they are political assistants). They should not be coerced or persuaded to act in a way that would undermine their neutrality. You can question officers in order to understand, for example, their reasons for proposing to act in a particular way, or the content of a report that they have written. However, you must not try and force them to act differently, change their advice, or alter the content of that report, if doing so would prejudice their professional integrity.

4.4.11 Confidentiality and access to information

As a Councillor:

I do not disclose information:

- given to me in confidence by anyone
- acquired by me which I believe, or ought reasonably to be aware, is of a confidential nature, unless
- I have received the consent of a person authorised to give it;
- I am required by law to do so;
- the disclosure is made to a third party for the purpose of obtaining professional legal advice provided that the third party agrees not to disclose the information to any other person; or

the disclosure is:

- reasonable and in the public interest; and
- made in good faith and in compliance with the reasonable requirements of the local authority; and
- I have consulted the Monitoring Officer prior to its release.
- I do not improperly use knowledge gained solely as a result of my role as a Councillor for the advancement of myself, my friends, my family members, my employer or my business interests.
- I do not prevent anyone from getting information that they are entitled to by law.

Local authorities must work openly and transparently, and their proceedings and printed materials are open to the public, except in certain legally defined circumstances. You should work on this basis, but there will be times when it

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

is required by law that discussions, documents and other information relating to or held by the local authority must be treated in a confidential manner. Examples include personal data relating to individuals or information relating to ongoing negotiations.

4.4.12 Disrepute

As a Councillor:

- I do not bring my role or local authority into disrepute.

As a Councillor, you are trusted to make decisions on behalf of your community and your actions and behaviour are subject to greater scrutiny than that of ordinary members of the public. You should be aware that your actions might have an adverse impact on you, other Councillors and/or your local authority and may lower the public's confidence in you or your local authority's ability to discharge your/its functions. For example, behaviour that is considered dishonest and/or deceitful can bring your local authority into disrepute.

You are able to hold the local authority and fellow Councillors to account and are able to constructively challenge and express concern about decisions and processes undertaken by the council whilst continuing to adhere to other aspects of this Code of Conduct.

4.4.13 Use of position

As a Councillor:

- I do not use, or attempt to use, my position improperly to the advantage or disadvantage of myself or anyone else.

Your position as a Member of the local authority provides you with certain opportunities, responsibilities, and privileges, and you make choices all the time that will impact others. However, you should not take advantage of these opportunities to further your own or others' private interests or to disadvantage anyone unfairly

4.4.14 Use of local authority resources and facilities

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

As a Councillor:

1.1 I do not misuse council resources.

1.2 I will, when using the resources of the local authority or authorising their use by others:

- a.** act in accordance with the local authority's requirements; and
- b.** ensure that such resources are not used for political purposes unless that use could reasonably be regarded as likely to facilitate, or be conducive to, the discharge of the functions of the local authority or of the office to which I have been elected or appointed.

You may be provided with resources and facilities by the local authority to assist you in carrying out your duties as a Councillor.

Examples include:

- office support
- stationery
- equipment such as phones, and computers
- transport
- access and use of local authority buildings and rooms.

These are given to you to help you carry out your role as a Councillor more effectively and are not to be used for business or personal gain. They should be used in accordance with the purpose for which they have been provided and the local authority's own policies regarding their use.

4.4.15 Complying with the Code of Conduct

As a Councillor:

1.3 I undertake Code of Conduct training provided by my local authority.

1.4 I take into account advice from the Monitoring Officer and the Section 151 Finance Officer.

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

1.5 I cooperate with any Code of Conduct investigation and/or determination.

1.6 I do not intimidate or attempt to intimidate any person who is likely to be involved with the administration of any investigation or proceedings.

1.7 I comply with any sanction imposed on me following a finding that I have breached the Code of Conduct.

It is extremely important for you as a Councillor to demonstrate high standards, for you to have your actions open to scrutiny and for you not to undermine public trust in the local authority or its governance. If you do not understand or are concerned about the local authority's processes in handling a complaint you should raise this with your Monitoring Officer.

4.4.16 Protecting your reputation and the reputation of the local authority Interests

As Councillor:

1.8 I register and disclose my interests.

Section 29 of the Localism Act 2011 requires the Monitoring Officer to establish and maintain a register of interests of Members of the authority.

You need to register your interests so that the public, local authority employees and fellow Councillors know which of your interests might give rise to a conflict of interest. The register is a public document that can be consulted when (or before) an issue arises. The register also protects you by allowing you to demonstrate openness and a willingness to be held accountable. You are personally responsible for deciding whether or not you should disclose an interest in a meeting, but it can be helpful for you to know early on if others think that a potential conflict might arise. It is also important that the public know about any interest that might have to be disclosed by you or other Councillors when making or taking part in decisions, so that decision making is seen by the public as open and honest. This helps to ensure that public confidence in the integrity of local governance is maintained.

You should note that failure to register or disclose a disclosable pecuniary interest as set out in Table 1, is a criminal offence under the Localism Act 2011.

Appendix B sets out the detailed provisions on registering and disclosing interests. If in doubt, you should always seek advice from your Monitoring Officer.

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

4.4.17 Gifts and hospitality

As a Councillor:

1.9 I do not accept gifts or hospitality, irrespective of estimated value, which could give rise to real or substantive personal gain or a reasonable suspicion of influence on my part to show favour from persons seeking to acquire, develop or do business with the local authority or from persons who may apply to the local authority for any permission, licence or other significant advantage.

1.10 I register with the Monitoring Officer any gift or hospitality with an estimated value of at least £25 within 28 days of its receipt. The £25 threshold applies to a series of gifts or hospitality from the same source that add up to £25 or more as an accumulation in any municipal year.

1.11 I register with the Monitoring Officer any significant gift or hospitality that I have been offered but have refused to accept.

In order to protect your position and the reputation of the local authority, you should exercise caution in accepting any gifts or hospitality which are (or which you reasonably believe to be) offered to you because you are a Councillor. The presumption should always be not to accept significant gifts or hospitality. However, there may be times when such a refusal may be difficult if it is seen as rudeness in which case you could accept it but must ensure it is publicly registered. However, you do not need to register gifts and hospitality which are not related to your role as a Councillor, such as Christmas gifts from your friends and family. It is also important to note that it is appropriate to accept normal expenses and hospitality associated with your duties as a Councillor. If you are unsure, do contact your Monitoring Officer for guidance.

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

4.5 Appendix A – The Seven Principles of Public Life

The principles are:

Selflessness

Holders of public office should act solely in terms of the public interest.

Integrity

Holders of public office must avoid placing themselves under any obligation to people or organisations that might try inappropriately to influence them in their work. They should not act or take decisions in order to gain financial or other material benefits for themselves, their family, or their friends. They must disclose and resolve any interests and relationships.

Objectivity

Holders of public office must act and take decisions impartially, fairly and on merit, using the best evidence and without discrimination or bias.

Accountability

Holders of public office are accountable to the public for their decisions and actions and must submit themselves to the scrutiny necessary to ensure this.

Openness

Holders of public office should act and take decisions in an open and transparent manner. Information should not be withheld from the public unless there are clear and lawful reasons for so doing.

Honesty

Holders of public office should be truthful.

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

Leadership

Holders of public office should exhibit these principles in their own behaviour. They should actively promote and robustly support the principles and be willing to challenge poor behaviour wherever it occurs.

4.6 Appendix B – Registering interests

Within 28 days of becoming a Member or your re-election or re-appointment to office you must register with the Monitoring Officer the interests which fall within the categories set out in Table 1 (Disclosable Pecuniary Interests) which are as described in “The Relevant Authorities (Disclosable Pecuniary Interests) Regulations 2012”. You should also register details of your other personal interests which fall within the categories set out in Table 2 (Other Registerable Interests).

“Disclosable Pecuniary Interest” means an interest of yourself, or of your partner if you are aware of your partner's interest, within the descriptions set out in Table 1 below.

"Partner" means a spouse or civil partner, or a person with whom you are living as husband or wife, or a person with whom you are living as if you are civil partners.

1. You must ensure that your register of interests is kept up-to-date and within 28 days of becoming aware of any new interest, or of any change to a registered interest, notify the Monitoring Officer.
2. A ‘sensitive interest’ is as an interest which, if disclosed, could lead to the Councillor, or a person connected with the Councillor, being subject to violence or intimidation.
3. Where you have a ‘sensitive interest’ you must notify the Monitoring Officer with the reasons why you believe it is a sensitive interest. If the Monitoring Officer agrees they will withhold the interest from the public register.

Non participation in case of disclosable pecuniary interest

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

4. Where a matter arises at a meeting which directly relates to one of your Disclosable Pecuniary Interests as set out in **Table 1**, you must disclose the interest, not participate in any discussion or vote on the matter and must not remain in the room unless you have been granted a dispensation. If it is a 'sensitive interest', you do not have to disclose the nature of the interest, just that you have an interest. Dispensation may be granted in limited circumstances, to enable you to participate and vote on a matter in which you have a disclosable pecuniary interest.

5. [Where you have a disclosable pecuniary interest on a matter to be considered or is being considered by you as a Cabinet Member in exercise of your executive function, you must notify the Monitoring Officer of the interest and must not take any steps or further steps in the matter apart from arranging for someone else to deal with it]

Disclosure of Other Registerable Interests

6. Where a matter arises at a meeting which directly relates to the financial interest or wellbeing of one of your Other Registerable Interests (as set out in **Table 2**), you must disclose the interest. You may speak on the matter only if members of the public are also allowed to speak at the meeting but otherwise must not take part in any discussion or vote on the matter and must not remain in the room unless you have been granted a dispensation. If it is a 'sensitive interest', you do not have to disclose the nature of the interest.

Disclosure of Non-Registerable Interests

7. Where a matter arises at a meeting which directly relates to your financial interest or well-being (and is not a Disclosable Pecuniary Interest set out in **Table 1**) or a financial interest or well-being of a relative or close associate, you must disclose the interest. You may speak on the matter only if members of the public are also allowed to speak at the meeting. Otherwise you must not take part in any discussion or vote on the matter and must not remain in the room unless you have been granted a dispensation. If it is a 'sensitive interest', you do not have to disclose the nature of the interest.

8. Where a matter arises at a meeting which affects –
a. your own financial interest or well-being;

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

b. a financial interest or well-being of a relative or close associate;
or

c. a financial interest or wellbeing of a body included under Other Registrable Interests as set out in **Table 2**
you must disclose the interest. In order to determine whether you can remain in the meeting after disclosing your interest the following test should be applied

9. Where a matter (referred to in paragraph 8 above) affects the financial interest or well-being:

a. to a greater extent than it affects the financial interests of the majority of inhabitants of the ward affected by the decision and;

b. a reasonable member of the public knowing all the facts would believe that it would affect your view of the wider public interest
You may speak on the matter only if members of the public are also allowed to speak at the meeting. Otherwise you must not take part in any discussion or vote on the matter and must not remain in the room unless you have been granted a dispensation.

If it is a 'sensitive interest', you do not have to disclose the nature of the interest.

10. [Where you have an Other Registerable Interest or Non-Registerable Interest on a matter to be considered or is being considered by you as a Cabinet Member in exercise of your executive function, you must notify the Monitoring Officer of the interest and must not take any steps or further steps in the matter apart from arranging for someone else to deal with it]

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

Table 1: Disclosable Pecuniary Interests

This table sets out the explanation of Disclosable Pecuniary Interests as set out in the [Relevant Authorities \(Disclosable Pecuniary Interests\) Regulations 2012](#).

Subject	Description
Employment, office, trade, profession or vocation	Any employment, office, trade, profession or vocation carried on for profit or gain.
Sponsorship	Any payment or provision of any other financial benefit (other than from the council) made to the Councillor during the previous 12-month period for expenses incurred by him/her in carrying out their duties as a Councillor, or towards their election expenses. This includes any payment or financial benefit from a trade union within the meaning of the Trade Union and Labour Relations (Consolidation) Act 1992.
Contracts	Any contract made between the Councillor or their spouse or civil partner or the person with whom the Councillor is living as if they were spouses/civil partners (or a firm in which such person is a partner, or an incorporated body of which such person is a director* or a body that such person has a beneficial interest in the securities of*) and the council — (a) under which goods or services are to be provided or works are to be executed; and (b) which has not been fully discharged.
Land and Property	Any beneficial interest in land which is within the area of the council. ‘Land’ excludes an easement, servitude, interest or right in or over land which does not give the Councillor

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

	or their spouse or civil partner or the person with whom the Councillor is living as if they were spouses/ civil partners (alone or jointly with another) a right to occupy or to receive income.
Licenses	Any licence (alone or jointly with others) to occupy land in the area of the council for a month or longer

Corporate tenancies	Any tenancy where (to the Councillor's knowledge)— (a) the landlord is the council; and (b) the tenant is a body that the Councillor, or their spouse or civil partner or the person with whom the Councillor is living as if they were spouses/ civil partners is a partner of or a director* of or has a beneficial interest in the securities* of.
Securities	Any beneficial interest in securities* of a body where— (a) that body (to the Councillor's knowledge) has a place of business or land in the area of the council; and (b) either— (i)) the total nominal value of the securities* exceeds £25,000 or one hundredth of the total issued share capital of that body; or (ii) if the share capital of that body is of more than one class, the total nominal value of the shares of any one class in which the Councillor, or his/ her spouse or civil partner or the person with whom the Councillor is living as if they were spouses/civil partners have a beneficial interest exceeds one hundredth of the total issued shared capital of that class.

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

- *‘director’ includes a member of the committee of management of an industrial and provident society.
- *‘securities’ means shares, debentures, debenture stock, loan stock, bonds, units of a collective investment scheme within the meaning of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 and other securities of any description, other than money deposited with a building society.

Council adopted this version of the Code on 22nd July 2021

Table 2:

Other Registerable Interests

You must register as an Other Registerable Interest:

a) any unpaid directorships

b) any body of which you are a member or are in a position of general control or management and to which you are nominated or appointed by your authority

c) any body

(i) exercising functions of a public nature

(ii) directed to charitable purposes or

(iii) one of whose principal purposes includes the influence of public opinion or policy (including any political party or trade union)

of which you are a member or in a position of general control or management.

4.7 Appendix C – the Committee on Standards in Public Life

The LGA has undertaken this review whilst the Government continues to consider the recommendations made by the Committee on Standards in Public Life in their report on [Local Government Ethical Standards](#). If the Government chooses to implement any of the recommendations, this could require a change to this Code.

The recommendations cover:

- Recommendations for changes to the Localism Act 2011 to clarify in law when the Code of Conduct applies
- The introduction of sanctions
- An appeals process through the Local Government Ombudsman
- Changes to the Relevant Authorities (Disclosable Pecuniary Interests) Regulations 2012
- Updates to the Local Government Transparency Code
- Changes to the role and responsibilities of the Independent Person
- That the criminal offences in the Localism Act 2011 relating to Disclosable Pecuniary Interests should be abolished

The Local Government Ethical Standards report also includes Best Practice recommendations. These are:

Best practice 1: Local authorities should include prohibitions on bullying and harassment in codes of conduct. These should include a definition of bullying and harassment, supplemented with a list of examples of the sort of behaviour covered by such a definition.

Best practice 2: Councils should include provisions in their code of conduct requiring Councillors to comply with any formal standards investigation and prohibiting trivial or malicious allegations by Councillors.

Best practice 3: Principal authorities should review their code of conduct each year and regularly seek, where possible, the views of the public, community organisations and neighbouring authorities.

Best practice 4: An authority's code should be readily accessible to both Councillors and the public, in a prominent position on a council's website and available in council premises.

Best practice 5: Local authorities should update their gifts and hospitality register at least once per quarter, and publish it in an accessible format, such as CSV.

Best practice 6: Councils should publish a clear and straightforward public interest test against which allegations are filtered.

Best practice 7: Local authorities should have access to at least two Independent Persons.

Best practice 8: An Independent Person should be consulted as to whether to undertake a formal investigation on an allegation, and should be given the option to review and comment on allegations which the responsible officer is minded to dismiss as being without merit, vexatious, or trivial.

Best practice 9: Where a local authority makes a decision on an allegation of misconduct following a formal investigation, a decision notice should be published as soon as possible on its website, including a brief statement of facts, the provisions of the code engaged by the allegations, the view of the Independent Person, the reasoning of the decision-maker, and any sanction applied.

Best practice 10: A local authority should have straightforward and accessible guidance on its website on how to make a complaint under the code of conduct, the process for handling complaints, and estimated timescales for investigations and outcomes.

Best practice 11: Formal standards complaints about the conduct of a parish Councillor towards a clerk should be made by the chair or by the parish council, rather than the clerk in all but exceptional circumstances.

Best practice 12: Monitoring Officers' roles should include providing advice, support and management of investigations and adjudications on alleged breaches to parish councils within the remit of the principal authority. They should be provided with adequate training, corporate support and resources to undertake this work.

Best practice 13: A local authority should have procedures in place to address any conflicts of interest when undertaking a standards investigation. Possible steps should include asking the Monitoring Officer from a different authority to undertake the investigation.

Best practice 14: Councils should report on separate bodies they have set up or which they own as part of their annual governance statement and give a full picture of their relationship with those bodies. Separate bodies created by local authorities should abide by the Nolan principle of openness and publish their board agendas and minutes and annual reports in an accessible place.

Best practice 15: Senior officers should meet regularly with political group leaders or group whips to discuss standards issues.

The LGA has committed to reviewing the Code on an annual basis to ensure it is still fit for purpose.

4.8 EMPLOYEE CODE OF CONDUCT

Introduction

Bath & North East Somerset Council's Code of Conduct sets out the obligations and professional standards expected from employees.

The aim of this Code is to assist employees to perform effectively by ensuring the rules and standards of the organisation are clearly communicated.

The Code of Conduct applies to all employees of Bath & North East Somerset Council and anyone acting as an employee of Bath & North East Somerset Council. Although the Code does not directly apply to contractors, consultants or volunteers, the council's association with individuals carrying out these roles requires them to observe and comply with the Code.

Schools may have a separate Code of Conduct that those employees should adhere to in addition to this Code.

Councillors have a separate Code of Conduct, the 'Local Government Association Model Councillor Code of Conduct'.

What Guides Us

The public is entitled to expect the highest standards of conduct from all our employees, and the council endorses The Seven Principles of Public Life defined by the Committee on Standards in Public Life. These principles apply to all employees.

The principles are:

Selflessness: Holders of public office should act solely in terms of the public interest. A public officer holder is defined as an office holder who discharges any duty in which the public are interested and is paid out of a fund provided by the public.

Integrity: Holders of public office must avoid placing themselves under any obligation to people or organisations that might try inappropriately to influence them in their work. They should not act or take decisions in order to gain financial or other material benefits for themselves, their family, or their friends. They must declare and resolve any interests and relationships.

Objectivity: Holders of public office must act and take decisions impartially, fairly and on merit, using the best evidence and without discrimination or bias.

Accountability: Holders of public office are accountable to the public for their decisions and actions and must submit themselves to the scrutiny necessary to ensure this.

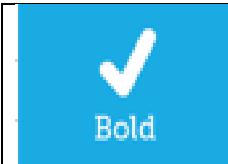
Openness: Holders of public office should act and take decisions in an open and transparent manner. Information should not be withheld from the public unless there are clear and lawful reasons for doing so.

Honesty: Holders of public office should be truthful.

Leadership: Holders of public office should exhibit these principles in their own behaviour. They should actively promote and robustly support the principles and be willing to challenge poor behaviour wherever it occurs.

Employees are also expected to conduct themselves in accordance with the Council's Values and Behaviour Framework.

Our Values are: Bold, Empowered Supportive and Transparent and the following behaviours are associated with each:

	We are bold in our approach, set aspirational goals for ourselves and create innovative solutions to tackle problems and adapt to changing circumstances. This value demonstrates that we are proactive, take action and deliver outcomes which improve people's lives.	We are..... • Aspirational • Innovative • Proactive
	We empower our staff and the people of Bath and North East Somerset so that they have the confidence and ability to find solutions for themselves and others. This value demonstrates how we develop our staff so that they are knowledgeable, are trusted to make decisions, able to challenge us and have the authority to be enablers.	We are.... • Learning • Positive • Inclusive
	We are supportive and work together to build trusting relationships. Our staff give help and encouragement to the people of Bath and North East Somerset and each other. This value describes how we are curious, collaborative and care for each other, our residents and the environment.	We are..... • Curious • Caring • Collaborative

	We are transparent, honest and accountable. This value demonstrates that we act with integrity, are open to criticism, are honest about our mistakes and want to improve and do better so that we deliver on our promises.	We are.... • Honest • Accountable • Reliable

Breaches of the Code may result in action being taken under the council's disciplinary procedure. Serious breaches of the Code may be considered gross misconduct.

4.8.1 Employee's responsibilities

You must consider this Code carefully and comply with it fully as it forms part of the terms and conditions of your employment.

Please ensure you:

- read this policy
- understand it
- ask if there are any points that are unclear
- use this Code of Conduct alongside other council policies to guide you in your role

4.8.2 Managers responsibilities

Managers are responsible for the application of this policy in their work area and should role model the expected standard and behaviours. Managers must ensure this Code is adhered to and will:

- set a positive personal model of behaviour
- ensure standards in the Code are established and communicated
- provide clarification, where required to improve employee understanding
- take appropriate action at the earliest opportunity to manage non-compliance with the standards set out in this Code

4.8.3 Standards of behaviour

The council exists to provide services to the public. Council services are provided in part or in full by employees of the council. Employees must perform their duties to the best of their abilities.

You are required to:

- 1.1 Act honestly, with impartiality and objectivity
- 1.2 Act with dignity and treat all others (including colleagues and service users) with courtesy and respect
- 1.3 Work in accordance with the terms and conditions of your contract of employment and job description
- 1.4 Challenge and report dangerous, abusive, discriminatory or exploitative behaviour or practice
- 1.5 Report without delay any misconduct or poor standards, including safeguarding issues using appropriate council procedures as necessary e.g. Whistleblowing
- 1.6 Be committed to delivering quality services to service users in line with the council's purpose of "Improving People's Lives" and its priorities, aims and objectives
- 1.7 Attend work in a condition where you can carry out your duties safely
- 1.8 Understand and act in accordance with the council's values, policies and procedures
- 1.9 Comply with all applicable UK laws, including health and safety legislation, employment law legislation and other relevant codes of conduct

If council employees fail to comply with standards adopted by the council, through their maladministration, impropriety, breach of procedure, direct fraud or misrepresentation, this must be immediately reported to the Chief Executive, Chief Finance Officer, Chief Internal Auditor or their Director in the first instance.

Any suspected financial irregularities or misuse of resources must be reported to the Chief Internal Auditor in compliance with the council's financial regulations. The council's Whistleblowing policy provides guidance on how to report concerns.

4.8.4 Standards of Dress

You must ensure that your standard of dress and personal ornamentation is appropriate to workplace health, safety and security applicable to your job and work environment.

In all cases you are expected to wear any uniform or PPE correctly, that is required as part of your role.

4.8.5 Security

You must always visibly display your council issued identification badge whilst you are working in any of the council premises and when acting on behalf of the council at external locations.

4.8.6 Health, Safety and Wellbeing

As an employee you have a duty to comply with Health and Safety legislation and to protect yourself, residents and the public from physical and psychological harm. This requires the careful examination and management of all risks to ensure your actions (or omissions) do not harm an individual's, health, safety or wellbeing.

4.8.7 Safeguarding

There is a requirement for the council and its employees to protect children and vulnerable adults. If you have any safeguarding related concerns, you must promptly speak to your line manager, another manager or the safeguarding lead about your concerns.

4.8.8 Professional Qualifications and Registrations

Where employment with the council is in a post which requires you to either be registered with a statutory and/or professional organisation, to hold membership of a professional body or hold any other qualification, it is your duty to ensure you comply with the relevant obligation. You should also comply with any duty you may have to inform your professional body of a matter which may impact on your registration or membership. You should inform your manager of the matter too.

You must also ensure that the relevant code of practice is followed during your duties, including formal reporting to the professional body on any matter where there is a duty to do so.

4.8.9 Criminal Charges and Convictions

The council requires all applicants for jobs to disclose all contraventions of, or failures to comply with, any provisions of law, whether committed in the UK or elsewhere, unless the Rehabilitation of Offenders Act applies, and the rehabilitation period has expired.

Employees must notify the council in writing if:

- arrested in connection with a criminal act
- notified that criminal charges are being considered against you
- charged with any offence
- convicted of any offence

This notice must be given immediately (i.e. the next working day).

In all cases, a failure to disclose relevant information or a deliberate withholding of such information can amount to a breach of trust and confidence and may lead to disciplinary action up to and including dismissal.

Criminal offences committed outside working hours, which bring you or the council into disrepute, will be subject to disciplinary action under the council's disciplinary policy.

4.8.10 Equality, Diversity and Inclusion

As a council employee you must promote and uphold equality, diversity and inclusion in all aspects of work as this is fundamental to effective service and working relationships. You must not discriminate or condone any discrimination against others.

You must ensure that policies relating to equality, as agreed by the council are complied with in addition to the requirements of the law. All members of the local community, customers, residents and other employees have a right to be treated fairly and with respect.

The council will not tolerate discriminatory behaviour. Discriminatory conduct will be subject to disciplinary action under the council's disciplinary policy.

4.8.11 Disclosure of Information and Confidentiality

You should not use any information obtained during your employment for personal gain or benefit, nor should you pass it on to others who might use it in such a way.

You must only discuss or disclose information about people who use services in accordance with legislation and agreed ways of working (i.e. policies, procedures and standards).

You must not disclose information given in confidence by anyone, or information acquired which you believe is of a confidential nature, without the consent of a person authorised to give it or unless you are required by law.

You must always comply with the council's Information Governance Policies and Guidelines.

4.8.12 Relationships

Councillors - You must declare any personal relationships with a Councillor. Where the relationship could present a conflict of interest, your manager will need to consider how this will be effectively managed. Some employees are required to give advice to Councillors during their duties. Mutual respect between employees and Councillors is essential to good local government. Please refer to the [Protocol on Councillor/ Officer relations for further guidance.](#)

Other Employees- You must declare any personal relationships with other employees where the relationship could present a conflict of interest.

The Local Community and Service Users- The council is a public body and we have responsibilities to the community we serve. You should ensure courteous, efficient and impartial service delivery to all groups and individuals within the community as defined by the policies of the council.

Contractors- All relationships of a business or private nature with external contractors, or potential contractors, should be made known to the employee's Director. Orders and contracts must be awarded in accordance with the council's Contract Standing Orders and the Public Contracts Regulations. They must be awarded on merit, by fair competition against other bids, quotations or tenders and no favouritism must be shown to any business. No section of the community should be discriminated against, and employees must exercise fairness and impartiality when dealing with all customers, suppliers, other contractors and sub-contractors.

If you are privy to confidential information on tenders or costs for external or internal contracts you should not disclose that information to any unauthorised party or organisation.

Employees who engage or supervise contractors or have any other official relationship with contractors and have previously had or currently have a relationship in a private or domestic capacity with contractors, should declare that relationship to their Director.

4.8.13 Political Neutrality, Professional and Trade Union Activity

Employees serve the council as a whole. This means they must serve all Councillors and not just those of any one group and must ensure that the individual rights of all Councillors are respected.

The Chief Executive, Directors and other senior staff may also be required to advise political groups. They must do so in a way that does not compromise their political neutrality.

Employees, whether politically restricted or not, must follow every lawful expressed policy of the council and must not allow their own personal or political opinions to interfere with their work. Both the employee's job description and contract of employment will state whether the post is politically restricted and such a restriction becomes a condition of employment.

If you are a workplace representative of a trade union or professional association, you should ensure that when you make public comment, it is clear that comment is made on behalf of the union or association you represent and not the council.

4.8.14 Appointments and other Employment Decisions

Employees involved in appointments should ensure that these are made based on merit. In order to avoid any possible accusation of bias, employees should not be involved in the recruitment process, decisions related to disciplinary procedures, promotion or pay adjustments where they are related to an applicant/employee or have a close personal relationship with them.

4.8.15 Declaration of Financial and Other Interests

As an employee you are required under section 117 of the Local Government Act 1972 to declare any financial interest, whether direct or indirect in any existing or proposed contract.

You must declare in writing to the Chief Executive or your Director, any financial or non-financial interests that could conflict with the council's interests (e.g. Chair of a voluntary group receiving financial assistance from the council).

You must declare to the Chief Executive or their Director, membership of any organisation not open to the public without formal membership, and commitment of allegiance and which has secrecy about rules, membership or conduct.

You should first discuss interests with your manager and declare the interest using the council's Declaration of Interests form.

Failure to disclose a relevant personal or financial interest or failure to comply with the Chief Executive or Director's decision or course of action following disclosure could result in disciplinary action.

4.8.16 Other Employment/Outside Commitments

Some employees have conditions of service which require them to obtain written consent to take any outside employment. All employees should be clear about their contractual obligations and should not take any additional employment or take up any position in an organisation, which conflicts with the council's interests or their role in the council. If you are unsure you should seek guidance from your manager.

It is important that you ensure that any additional employment does not conflict with the interests of the council or affect your ability and credibility to do your job. You should not use any council material or information not otherwise in the public domain in the execution of that work.

Generally, what you do outside work is your own personal concern, but you should avoid doing anything that might adversely affect the reputation of the council or bring the council into disrepute. This also means respecting confidentiality and upholding equality, diversity and inclusion. Special care should be taken in respect of social media, and council staff must follow the Social Media Policy Framework which applies in both work and non-work settings.

Inventions, patents and intellectual rights - The rights applying under this heading which were created after 1978 will generally become the property of the council. Provided that they had been made in the course of the employee's normal duty or they have been made in the course of duties specifically assigned to the employee and where invention might be reasonably expected or it was made in the course of the employee's duties at the time the employee had (because of the nature of their duties and particular responsibilities arising from them) a special obligation to further the interests of the employer. Normal duties shall be those described in the job description or by implicit instructions where there is a temporary change to duties.

4.8.17 Dealing with the Council's Money

All employees must ensure that they use public funds entrusted to them in a responsible and lawful manner and in accordance with the council's financial regulations (and related Codes of Practice and Contract Standing Orders).

They should strive to ensure value for money to the local community and to avoid legal challenge to the council.

Employees involved in the tendering process and dealing with contractors should be clear on the separation of client and contractor roles within the council. Senior employees who have both a client and contractor responsibility must be aware of the need for accountability and openness. Where a conflict is identified, the member of staff concerned must not take any further part in the tender, to preserve the integrity of the process.

Employees must exercise fairness and impartiality when dealing with all customers, suppliers, other contractors and sub-contractors.

Employees who are privy to confidential information on tenders or costs for either internal or external contractors should not disclose that information to any unauthorised party or organisation.

Employees should ensure that special favour is not shown to current, recent former employees or their partners, close relatives or associates in awarding contracts to businesses run by them or employing them in a senior or relevant managerial capacity.

Employees should endeavour to ensure that the supplier does not employ a former council employee when producing and submitting the response to the tender. This will ensure that all suppliers in the tendering process are treated fairly and that no one supplier is given a tendering advantage and respects council confidentiality.

Any financial irregularities or misuse of resources must be reported to the Chief Internal Auditor in compliance with the council's financial regulations or via the Whistleblowing policy.

4.8.18 Gifts and Hospitality

Employees should only consider acceptance or giving offers of hospitality if there is a genuine need or in situations where the council should be represented. They should be properly authorised and recorded here on the Register.

When receiving authorised hospitality employees should be sensitive to its timing in relation to any decisions the council may be taking which could affect those providing the hospitality.

When hospitality must be declined those making the offer should courteously but firmly inform of the procedures and standards operating within the council.

Employees must not accept gifts from contractors, suppliers, customers, etc. other than modest gifts of a promotional nature, and of nominal value, such as calendars, diaries, and pens. Any unsolicited gifts to staff must be reported and discussed with their manager prior to the formal declaration being

completed. During times such as Christmas and other religious holidays, when it is likely that a number of separate unsolicited gifts are received. This can be recorded as a single declaration by the line manager.

Acceptance by employees of hospitality through attendance at relevant conferences and courses is acceptable where it is clear the hospitality is corporate rather than personal, where the council gives consent in advance through the declaration process and where the council is satisfied that any purchasing decisions are not compromised.

Employees must be aware that it is a serious criminal offence for them to corruptly receive or give any gift, loan, fee, reward or advantage for doing, or not doing, anything or showing favour, or disfavour, to any person in their official capacity.

Further guidance can be found [here](#).

4.8.19 Sponsorship - Giving and Receiving

Where an outside organisation wishes to sponsor or is seeking to sponsor a council activity, whether by invitation, tender, negotiation or voluntarily, the conventions concerning acceptance of gifts or hospitality apply. Care must be taken when dealing with contractors or potential contractors.

Where the council wishes to sponsor an event or service neither an employee nor any partner, spouse or relative must benefit from such sponsorship in a direct way without there being full disclosure/ formal declaration to the Chief Executive or their Director of any such interest. Similarly, where the council through sponsorship, grant aid, financial or other means, gives support in the community, employees should ensure that impartial advice is given and that there is no conflict of interest.

4.8.20 Use of Council Property, Facilities or Equipment

The council's property and facilities are provided for official business. You are responsible for taking reasonable steps to ensure the safety and security of any equipment provided to you. All council owned equipment and devices must be returned on leaving council employment, and any council owned or supplied data must be deleted. Access to systems used for council purposes must be terminated permanently.

4.8.21 Email and Internet

Email and internet are available for work use. External email is not secure, and you must take this into account when choosing how personal and confidential information is communicated.

You should not make inappropriate comments by email or whilst using a chat function, and employees should be aware that contracts formed by email or over the internet will be legally binding. Any contractual agreement offers, or acceptance must only be made electronically if you have the authority to do so or where specific management authorisation is given in accordance with the council's Contract Standing Orders Scheme of Delegations. For further guidance please speak to the Procurement Team.

It is recognised that from time to time, email and internet facilities may be used for personal reasons. Use should be brief. Inappropriate and/or excessive personal use of email or the internet is unacceptable and appropriate disciplinary action will be taken.

For further guidance please refer to the council's Email and Internet Access Guidelines.

4.8.22 Social Media

Social media has become a useful tool for communications and interaction, both personally and professionally. The council does not allow access to social networking websites for personal use during work time.

Proportionate use of council networking forums such as Yammer during working time is supported, but you must ensure that all communications abide by the same standards as email use and follow guidelines. Access to social networking sites is also permitted if it is relevant work.

You must always act in the best interest of the council and comply with the Social Media Framework, including confidentiality.

The council respects employees' right to a private life, and you are encouraged to exercise discretion and use social media responsibly.

Employees have a responsibility to ensure their social media activity does not bring the council into disrepute, and that you follow appropriate guidelines and frameworks that apply to the role you are carrying out. Note that this applies regardless of whether council or personal IT systems and hardware are being used.

For further guidance please refer to the Council's Social Media Policy Framework.

4.8.23 General Employment Standards and Rules

All employees must also be aware of the council's General Employment Standards and Rules.

4.8.24 Communications and Marketing

The Communications and Marketing Team is responsible for council press statements, direct liaison with news media and corporate social media accounts. On no account should staff give political advice, departmental information or disclose confidential information to any outside agency without prior permission from the Chief Executive.

In general, all communications with the media relating to activities of the council are handled through the Corporate Communications Team. You are not permitted to communicate with the media on matters relating to the activities of the council without authorisation from the Corporate Communications Team.

If you are contacted by journalists, you should refer them to the Corporate Communications Team. This is not intended to prevent or deter lawful whistleblowing.

4.8.25 General

Any breach of this Code of Conduct may be treated as misconduct which could lead to disciplinary action, including dismissal in appropriate cases. For the avoidance of doubt, employees should seek advice from their manager or Director should they have any queries.

The interpretation of this code will be in accordance with the procedural guidance to employers issued with the national code by the Local Government Management Board on behalf of the local authority associations.

PART 5 MEMBERS' ALLOWANCES SCHEME

5.1 COUNCILLORS' ALLOWANCES

1. The Bath & North East Somerset Members' Allowances Scheme was approved by Bath & North East Somerset Council on the date stated in [Schedule 1](#) in exercise of the powers conferred by the Local Authorities (Members' Allowances) (England) Regulations 2003 ("the Regulations").
2. This Scheme replaces all previous Members' Allowances Schemes.
3. The Allowances in [Schedule 1](#) are implemented for each financial year with effect from 1st April, and any uplifts or changes to Members' Allowances are implemented on the same date and by the same amount as officers' salaries are adjusted, in line with the National Joint Conditions.
4. Any other amendments to the scheme will be solely determined by the Council following receipt of recommendations from the Independent Remuneration Panel.
5. In this scheme "Councillor" means a Member of the Bath & North East Somerset Council who is a Councillor; "year" means the 12 months ending with 31 March.

5.1.1 Allowances for Councillors

1. The Director of People & Policy of Bath & North East Somerset Council is authorised, on receipt of verification from the Head of Legal & Democratic Services of a claim from a Member, to pay the following allowances in accordance with the payment arrangements described in this scheme.
2. **Basic Allowance:** A basic allowance for each year shall be paid to each Councillor, subject to any exceptions or qualifications described elsewhere in the scheme. Schedule 1, Part 1 to this scheme sets out the current rate.
3. **Special Responsibility Allowances:** A Special Responsibility Allowance for each year, or part year, shall be paid to those Councillors who have been appointed or recognised by the Council, or have been notified to the Chief Executive or Head of Legal & Democratic Services by their Group as holding the special responsibilities in relation to the Authority that are specified in [Schedule 1, Part 1](#) to this scheme, subject to any exceptions or qualifications described elsewhere in the scheme.
4. A Special Responsibility Allowance for each year shall be paid to the independent co-opted members of the Avon Pension Fund Committee and its Investment Panel for the amounts(s) specified in [Schedule 1, Part 2](#) of this Scheme, subject to any exceptions or qualifications described elsewhere in the scheme.

5.1.2 General

1. **Attendance Allowance:** No attendance allowance shall be payable under this scheme, either for Council duties per se, or in respect of appointments to outside bodies.
2. **Renunciation:** A Councillor may by notice in writing given to the Head of Legal & Democratic Services elect to forego any part of her/his entitlement to an allowance under this scheme.
3. **Part-year Entitlements:** In accordance with the requirements of the Regulations, pro-rata payments of Basic Allowance or Special Responsibility Allowances shall be payable to eligible Councillors in any of the following circumstances:-
 - a. if an amendment to this scheme changes the amount to which a Councillor is entitled by way of a Basic Allowance or a Special Responsibility Allowance
 - b. where the term of office of a Councillor begins or ends otherwise than at the beginning or end of a year
 - c. if a Councillor accepts or relinquishes a special responsibility.
4. **Payment:** Payment of Basic and Special Responsibility Allowances shall be made in equal instalments. The frequency of those instalments shall be monthly. The Authority reserves the right to cease payment or recover any payments which may become recoverable under the provisions of the relevant paragraphs of this scheme.
5. **Travel, Subsistence and Carers Allowances:** Travel, subsistence and Carers' allowances may be claimed by Councillors as set out in [Schedule 1, Part 1](#) to this scheme.
6. These claims shall be made at the end of the month following the month in respect of which the claim relates via the online claim system.

5.1.3 Travelling, Subsistence and Dependant Carers' Allowances

1. This part is in accordance with Sections 174-175 and Regulations made under the Local Government Act 1972. It applies to Councillors, Co-opted Members and Members of Education Appeals Panels.
2. **Travelling Allowances:** Travelling allowances may be claimed in respect of each occasion on which one of the persons described above carries out an Approved duty ([Schedule 1, part 3](#)).
3. If a claimant uses their own motor car or one belonging to a member of her/his family, or otherwise provided for their use and subject to the claimant having the appropriate insurance, the rate for travel, which is the same as for officers using their own vehicles on a casual basis, shall be as stated in [Schedule 1, Part 1](#) to this scheme.
4. The distance claimed for mileage should be the shortest most reasonable journey by road from the point of departure to the point at which the duty is performed, and similarly from the duty point to the place of return.

5. **Subsistence Allowances:** Where absence from normal place of residence is greater than 5 hours, but only in respect of activities outside of the Council's boundaries, subsistence claims will be met on the basis of actual expenditure subject to the following:

- The expenditure is considered reasonable.
- Receipts are submitted with the claim.
- Claimant must be prepared to justify expenditure if asked to do so.

6. In order to claim subsistence allowance, a claimant must have personally incurred expenditure on subsistence. The amounts that can be claimed are the same as those which apply to officers and shall be updated accordingly.

7. Councillors and co-optees may aggregate daily subsistence allowances and be reimbursed for such expenditure when supported by receipts.

8. Where a meal is provided or paid for by the Council during the course of an approved duty the claimant will not be entitled to claim subsistence allowance.

9. **Dependants' Carers' Allowances:** Councillors may claim up to the maximum hourly rate specified in [Schedule 1, Part 1](#) to this scheme in respect of the expenses for the care of their children or other dependants when attending meetings of the Council, its subordinate bodies or other approved duty as described elsewhere in this scheme or carrying out work in their wards within the following categories:-

- community meetings (e.g. PACT, residents' associations etc); community consultation; site visits with officers/residents/businesses/voluntary organisations; advertised Ward surgeries held by the Councillor.

10. Every claim must be supported by a receipt signed by the carer. Every claim must be based on documentary evidence of the duties carried out being in existence and made available by the Councillor if requested.

5.2 Schedule 1 Part 1 – Allowance Amounts

Approved by Council on 4th May 2021

Current year - 2022/23

Basic and Special Responsibility Allowance - Amounts

Basic Allowance	£9,106
Special Responsibility Allowances:	
Leader of the Council	£33,013
Deputy Leader of the Council	£19,825
Cabinet Members	£19,825
Policy Development & Scrutiny Panel Chairs	£8,091
Chair Planning Committee	£14,564
Vice Chair Planning Committee	£3,641
Chairs of Licensing Sub-Committees	£5,140
Chair Avon Pension Fund Committee	£5,140
Avon Pension Fund Committee Members	£3,879
Fostering Panel Member	£3,879
Political Group Leaders	£428 per Member
Minority Group Leaders	£2,277
Chair of the Council	£9,710
Vice Chair of the Council	£2,460

Dependent carers' allowance

Reimbursement of actual costs incurred up to the following amounts:

- Childcare (including After School Clubs) - up to £6.00 per hour/per child
- Childcare for a child with a disability or special needs - up to £8 per hour/per child
- Care for an adult with a disability or ill health - up to £8 per hour/person

5.3 Schedule 1 Part 2 – Avon Pension Fund

Avon Pension Fund Committee Independent Co-opted Members

Special Responsibility Allowance for Independent Co-opted Member(s) of Avon Pension Fund Committee

£343 per day for 20 days

Special Responsibility Allowance for Independent Co-opted Member(s) of Avon Pension Fund Investments Panel

£300 per day for 20 days

5.4 Schedule 1 Part 3 – Approved Duties

Approved Duties

An approved duty is an attendance by a Member of the Council at:

- a formal meeting of the Council, the Cabinet, a Cabinet Advisory body, a Non-Executive, Regulatory or Area Committee or Sub-Committee, an Overview and Scrutiny Panel or in pursuance of their duties as a Member Advocate.
- as a member of the body, as a substitute, as a ward Councillor, as a formally invited witness/speaker or in any other capacity relevant to their community governance role.
- any informal meeting, seminar or briefing called by the Cabinet, a Cabinet Member, the Chief Executive, a Director, Assistant Director or Head of Service, where the Member has received an invitation to attend from the person calling the meeting.
- a meeting at which the Member is specifically authorised to attend by the Council, the Cabinet or Cabinet Member, an Overview and Scrutiny Panel or a Committee.
- a meeting of an external or partnership body on which the Council or Cabinet Member has appointed the Member to serve, except those bodies which pay an allowance direct to their members.
- a conference, seminar or training event to which the Member has been appointed to attend, following budgetary authority from the Head of Legal & Democratic Services.
- any function attended by the Chair or Vice Chair of the Council relevant to their roles in those offices.
- attendance at Political Group meetings held on Council premises, supported by the Political Group Assistant or Group Support Officer to a maximum of 15 meetings in any one financial year.
- Attendance at a parish council when there is an issue of relevance to the work of the Council which is of interest to a Councillor within their ward or of interest and relevance to a Portfolio holder within Bath and North East Somerset Council area.

GLOSSARY

Agenda	This sets out the business to be conducted at Council meetings and must be published in advance of the meeting in accordance with legislation and the Access to Information Rules.
Annual Governance Statement	The Annual Governance Statement is a statutory document which explains the processes and procedures in place to enable the Council to carry out its functions effectively. The statement is produced following an annual review of the Council's governance arrangements and the effectiveness of its system of internal control. The statement includes an action plan to address any significant governance issues identified. The Annual Governance Statement is prepared in accordance with the CIPFA Framework. The Annual Governance Statement must be published by the Council by 31 July each year. It is usually published alongside the Council's Statement of Accounts.
Annual Meeting of the Council	The Annual Meeting of the Council (sometimes referred to as Annual Council or the Annual Meeting) is a special meeting which takes place each year, at which the Council elects a new Chair and Vice Chair of Council and agrees the appointment of Councillors to committees and outside bodies. In a year when there is an ordinary election of Councillors, the Annual Meeting will take place within 21 days of the retirement of the outgoing Councillors. In any other year, the Annual Council will take place in March, April or May.
Authority	The Council as a corporate body is sometimes referred to as the Authority.
Avon Fire Authority	Avon Fire Authority provides the Avon Fire & Rescue Service. The Fire Authority consists of Councillors appointed by the four Councils in the former Avon area.

Avon & Somerset Police & Crime Panel	The Police and Crime Panel is composed of Councillors from each Authority in the Avon and Somerset Police area, along with co-opted members, to act as part of the national arrangements for police governance.
Background Papers	Documents on which reports are primarily based which relate to agenda items and meetings and which must be referred to in the reports with the agenda for inspection by the public, in accordance with the Access to information Rules.
Best Value	The 'Best Value Duty' is a legal duty on the Council, in accordance with section 3 of the Local Government Act 1999. This general duty of Best Value requires the Council to make arrangements to secure continuous improvement in the way in which its functions are exercised, having regard to a combination of economy, efficiency and effectiveness. When reviewing service provision, the Council should consider overall value, including economic, environmental and social value.
Budget	All the financial resources allocated to different services and projects. With regards to the Council's budget, that means the allocation of financial resources to different services and projects, proposed contingency funds, the council tax base, setting the council tax and decisions relating to the control of the Council's borrowing requirement, the control of its capital expenditure and setting virement limits, as a whole.
Budget Council Meeting	The meeting of the Full Council that takes place each year in February, in order to calculate the budget requirement and set the council tax.

Cabinet	The Executive committee comprising the Leader of the Council and up to 9 individual Cabinet Members appointed by the Leader.
Cabinet Member	A Member of the Cabinet, with specific responsibilities (a 'portfolio') delegated by the Leader of the Council. Also known as 'portfolio holders' and Executive Members.
Call-In	A mechanism, which allows a Scrutiny Committee to examine, and challenge, an Executive decision delaying the implementation.
Chair	The Member who presides over a meeting of the Council, Cabinet, Committees, Sub-Committees or Panels.
Chief Executive	The most senior officer, with overall responsibility for the management of the Council, also known as the Head of Paid Service.
Chief Finance Officer	The officer responsible for the administration of the financial affairs of the Council (under section 151 of the Local Government Act 1972). Also known as the Section 151 Officer.
Chief Officer	The most senior Council staff who are responsible for managing each of the Council's departments, as defined in section 2 of the Local Government and Housing Act 1989. It means the Council's Chief Finance Officer, as well as any officers that report directly to the Head of Paid Service (but does not include secretarial, clerical or support staff). The Council's Directors are chief officers
CIPFA	The Chartered Institute of Public Finance and Accountancy.
Close of business	For registering statements and questions, close of business is taken to be 5pm Monday – Thursday and 4.30pm on a Friday.
Code of Conduct for Councillors	The Code which sets out the standards of behaviour expected of Councillors and co-opted members.

Code of Conduct for Officers	The Code which sets out the standards of behaviour expected of officers/employees.
Code of Corporate Governance	The Code setting out the Council's governance framework. The Code of Corporate Governance is prepared in accordance with the CIPFA Framework.
Committee	A Committee authorised to make executive or non-executive decisions.
Confidential Information	Information either given to the Council by the Government on terms which forbid its public disclosure or which cannot be publicly disclosed by Court Order.
Constitution	The document setting out how the Council operates, how decisions are made and all the procedures that have to be followed.
Contract Standing Orders	The rules which set out how the Council buys goods and services and enters into contracts.
Co-optee/Co-opted member	A person that is not elected who is appointed to serve on a Committee/Sub-Committee in an advisory capacity with or without voting rights.
Corporate Audit Committee	The Audit Committee considers the Council's governance arrangements and ensures that the financial affairs of the Council are properly conducted.
Council companies	A company in which the Council is a shareholder.
Council Functions	Activities which can only be the responsibility of Council
Councillor	A person elected by voters to be a Member of the Council. Also known as a 'Member' of the Council.
Planning Code of Conduct	The Code which sets out the standards of behaviour expected of Councillors on Planning Committee

Council and Cabinet Forward Plan	A list of all major decisions to be made by Council and key decisions to be made by Cabinet.
Deputy Leader	One or more Councillors nominated to the position of Deputy Leader by the Leader of the Council. Only one Councillor can be the statutory Deputy Leader.
Data Protection Legislation	Means all privacy laws applicable to personal data including the Data Protection Act 2018 and regulations made under it and the UK General Data Protection Regulation; together with all codes of practice and other statutory guidance issued by the Information Commissioner's Office.
Designated Officer	For the purposes of officer delegated powers within this Constitution, the term "Designated Officer" shall include the following officers: • The Chief Executive • The Chief Operating Officer • Directors • Heads of Service
Development Plan	Development plan and development plan documents include the local plan, neighbourhood plans, and other information contained in section 38 Planning and Compulsory Purchase Act 2004.
Executive	The collective term for the Leader of the Council and individual Cabinet Members, the Cabinet or a committee of the Cabinet.
Executive Functions	The majority of the Council's functions, which are the responsibility of the Leader of the Council or if he or she decides by the Cabinet, individual Cabinet Members, a committee of the Cabinet, a joint committee, another local authority, or officers. Functions that are not stated in the Local Authorities (Functions and Responsibilities) Regulations 2000 or in other legislation to be non-executive functions are, by default, executive functions.

Executive Member	Leader of the Council, Deputy Leader of the Council and other Cabinet Members.
Exempt Information	Information falling into one of the categories set out in the law which usually cannot be publicly disclosed – see the Access to Information Procedure Rules.
Financial Procedure Rules	The Rules which sets out how the Council's financial procedures operate to safeguard public money.
Five Clear Days	The period during which copies of the agenda and reports of a meeting must normally be available for inspection under the Access to Information Procedure Rules. The period of five working days not counting; • the day of the meeting • the day on which the meeting is called • days which fall at the weekends, public holidays or bank holidays.
Full Council	The meeting of all Councillors of the Council.
Forward Plan	A document which indicates what key decisions are likely to be made by or on behalf of the Cabinet, or another committee or body.
Group Leaders	People appointed by a political group to act as the leader of that group of Councillors.
Head of Paid Service	The most senior officer, with overall responsibility for the management and operation of the Council; also known as the Chief Executive.
Head of Service	The second most senior Council staff, that report directly to the Council's Chief Officers.
Independent Persons Panel	The Panel established by the Council to review the recommendations of the Investigation and Disciplinary

Committee into Statutory Officer discipline and compile a recommendation of its own for consideration by the Full Council.

Investigation and Disciplinary Committee

The Committee as referred to in the JNC Conditions of Service for Chief Executives and Chief Officers. It is the Committee appointed to consider disciplinary issues in relation to the Council's Statutory Officers: the Chief Executive (Head of Paid Service), Chief Finance Officer and Monitoring Officer.

Joint Arrangements

Services provided in partnership with other Councils or by or on behalf of those Councils, sometimes also with health bodies, police and fire.

Joint Committee

A committee appointed jointly by the Council and one or more other Council's to jointly oversee the carrying out of functions.

Key Decision

An executive decision which is likely to result in the Council incurring expenditure which is, or the making of savings which are, significant having regard to the

Council's budget for the service or function to which the decision relates, and/or is likely to be significant in terms of its effects on communities living or working in an area comprising one or more wards or electoral divisions in the area of the Council. For these purposes, savings and expenditure are "significant" if they are equal to or greater than £500,000.

For clarification, no treasury management decision shall constitute a Key Decision.

Leader

The person elected as the Leader by Full Council. They are responsible for carrying out the executive functions of the Council.

Library

Those documents (Codes/Schemes/Protocols) that don't form part of the Constitution but are closely linked to the Constitution.

Licensing Committee	The committee responsible for the Council's Statement of Licensing Policy including under the Licensing Act 2003 Act and the Gambling Act 2005.
Licensing Sub-Committee	The committee discharging the Council's licensing functions including under the Licensing Act 2003 Act and the Gambling Act 2005.
Local Choice Functions	These are functions specified in Regulations issued under the Local Government Act 2000 Act and which the Council can choose to be either Cabinet or Council functions.
Medium Term Financial Plan	A plan containing future years' resource allocations (revenue and capital).
Member	A person elected by voters to be a Member of the Council. Also known as a Councillor.
Members' Allowances Independent Remuneration Panel	An independent Panel which reviews and makes recommendations to the Council on its remuneration scheme (allowances to Councillors) and the amounts to be paid.
Members' Code of Conduct	A Code prepared and approved by the Council in accordance with the requirements of the Localism Act 2011 that governs the behaviour of Councillors.
Monitoring Officer	The officer charged with ensuring that everything that the Council does is fair and lawful.
Municipal Year	The period of approximately 12 months between two Annual Meetings of the Council, typically held during May.
Non-Executive Functions	These are functions specified in Regulations issued under the Local Government Act 2000 Act and include functions such as those relating to Officers, Planning and Licensing. Non-executive functions may be delegated to Committees, Sub-Committees or Officers under Section 101 of the Local Government Act 1972 ("the 1972 Act").

Unless specified as a non-executive function, a function is presumed to be an executive function.

Officer/Employee	A person employed by the Council to carry out the work of the authority. Officers cannot be Councillors.
Officer Scheme of Delegation	The way in which the officers of the Council can make decisions and which decisions they have the power to make.
Opposition	The next largest political group that isn't the Administration.
Order	Means a Standing Order in the Rules of Procedure.
Planning Committee	The committee of Councillors which makes planning decisions (not delegated to officers) on behalf of the Council.
Policy & Budget Framework	The Full Council is responsible for setting the Policy & Budget Framework . The Policy & Budget Framework sets out the Council's key policies and agreed budget for each year. All decisions must be taken in accordance with these agreed documents. Only Full Council can change the Policy & Budget Framework .
Planning Protocol	The code of practice which sets out the standards of behaviour expected of Members of the Planning Committee when sitting on this committee
Policy Development & Scrutiny Panel	This Council's name for Scrutiny Panels. Sometimes also known as Overview & Scrutiny Panels.
Political Balance	Political balance means: (i) That not all seats on the committee, sub-committee or relevant joint authority or joint committee ("the body") are allocated to the same political group; (ii) That the majority of seats on the body are allocated to a political group holding the majority of seats on the Council; (iii) That, subject to (i) and (ii) above, the total number of seats held by each political group on all committees

- of the Council taken as a whole is proportionate to that group's membership of the authority; and
- (iv) That, subject to (i) and (iii) above, the number of seats held by each political group on individual bodies is proportionate to that group's membership of the Council.

Political Group	Two or more Councillors who have joined together and asked the Proper Officer to be recognised as a political group.
Politically Restricted Post	Employees in politically restricted posts are prevented from having any active political role either in or outside work.
Portfolios/Portfolio Holder/Responsibility	A portfolio describes the specific responsibilities delegated by the Leader of the Council to a Cabinet Member, for which they are the portfolio holder.
Procedure Rules	The rules governing the processes of the Council's decision-making.
Proper Officer	An officer designated as being responsible for a specific function.
Protocols	Codes of Practice, which set out how, for example, various elements of the Council are expected to interact with each other.
Public	Any resident of Bath & North East Somerset of any age and includes a homeless person, a traveller currently within the Council area or a member of the Council's staff provided the subject matter relates to their role as a private citizen. This right also exists for a representative of any Bath & North East Somerset organisation (including businesses, charities etc) or any South West regional or sub-regional organisation that has legitimate legal activity in the Bath & North East Somerset area or whose work affects Bath & North East Somerset citizens.
Public Sector Internal Audit Standards	The UK Public Sector Internal Audit Standards (PSIAS) have been developed to apply across the whole of the public sector in all sectors of government. The PSIAS are

based on standards issued by the Institute of Internal Auditors (IIA), with additional requirements and interpretations that make them directly applicable to the UK public sector. The PSIAS are developed jointly by the relevant internal audit standard setters (RIASS) for central government, local government, devolved government administration bodies and the National Health Service (NHS). The PSIAS set out requirements which apply generally to all UK public sector engagements, but do not include any sector requirements or guidance for specific parts of government.

Quorum	The minimum number of voting Members who have to be present before a meeting can take place.
Regulatory Committees	Committees appointed by the Council to be responsible for functions such as planning and licensing.
Returning Officer	An Officer designated by the Council to fulfil the duties of Returning/Acting Returning Officer in Parish, District, European and General Elections.
Scrutiny	Providing support and advice to the Executive by contributing to the review and development of policy; holding the Executive/Cabinet to account by questioning, challenging and monitoring their performance (see Call-in). Also known as Overview & Scrutiny or Policy Development & Scrutiny.
Section 151 Officer	The officer responsible for the administration of the financial affairs of the Council (under section 151 of the Local Government Act 1972). Also known as the Chief Finance Officer.
Standards Committee	A Committee responsible for promoting and maintaining high standards of conduct by Councillors and considering written allegations that a Councillor has failed to comply with their Code of Conduct.
Statement of Accounts	The Statement of Accounts inform interested parties of the Council's finances and includes such information as the Council's assets and liabilities at the end of the financial

year, the cost of the services provided by the Council and the way in which these services were financed. These must be published by the Council by 31 July each year.

Statutory Officers	These are officers that the authority must have in place, some of which may be combined and some of which cannot, but they all have additional personal responsibilities. In this council they are the Head of Paid Service, the Monitoring Officer and the Chief Finance Officer.
Sub-Committee	A sub-committee authorised to make executive decisions and non-executive decisions.
Treasury Management	Treasury management functions are those functions carried out in accordance with the approved Treasury Management Strategy. The Chief Finance Officer is responsible for the Treasury Management Strategy.
Virement	Moving funds from one area of expenditure to another.
Weekly list	The publication that the Council issues each week which contains notice of proposed executive decisions, and a record of executive decisions made.
West of England Combined Authority (WECA)	The West of England Combined Authority is a combined authority within the West of England area, consisting of the local authorities of Bristol, South Gloucestershire, and Bath and North East Somerset. The combined authority is led by the Mayor of the West of England.
West of England Joint Committee	The Joint Committee is the decision-making body for issues relating to the West of England Combined Authority, Bath & North East Somerset, Bristol, North Somerset and South Gloucestershire councils, and the West of England Local Enterprise Partnership (LEP)
Western Gateway	The Western Gateway Sub-national Transport Body is formed by an alliance of eight Local Authorities and one Combined Authority that have committed to work together to drive innovation, facilitate the transition to a decarbonised transport system, maximise economic

growth and improve industrial productivity by strengthening travel connections to local, national and international markets.

Whip

A Member of a political group may be appointed to ensure discipline amongst other Members of the same political group. A whip's role included ensuring Members of the party vote according to the party platform. In certain regulatory functions such as Planning and Licensing, Councillors are required to act independently and are not subject to the group/party whip. Special training is arranged for Councillors for this.

Bath & North East Somerset Council	
MEETING	Council
MEETING DATE:	21st July 2022
TITLE:	Treasury Management Outturn Report 2021/22
WARD:	All
AN OPEN PUBLIC ITEM	
List of attachments to this report: Appendix 1 – Performance Against Prudential Indicators Appendix 2 – The Council’s Investment Position at 31st March 2022 Appendix 3 – Average monthly rate of return for 2021/22 Appendix 4 – The Council’s External Borrowing Position at 31st March 2022 Appendix 5 – Arlingclose’s Economic & Market Review Q4 of 2021/22 Appendix 6 – Interest & Capital Financing Budget Monitoring 2021/22 Appendix 7 – Summary Guide to Credit Ratings Appendix 8 – Extract from Treasury Management Risk Register	

1 THE ISSUE

- 1.1 Treasury risk management at the Authority is conducted within the framework of the Chartered Institute of Public Finance and Accountancy’s Treasury Management in the Public Services: Code of Practice 2017 Edition (the CIPFA Code), which requires the Council to approve a Treasury Management Strategy before the start of each financial year, review performance during the year, and approve an annual report after the end of each financial year.
- 1.2 This report gives details of performance against the Council’s Treasury Management Strategy and Annual Investment Plan for 2021/22.

2 RECOMMENDATION

The Council agrees that;

- 2.1 The Treasury Management Report to 31st March 2022, prepared in accordance with the CIPFA Treasury Code of Practice, is noted.
- 2.2 The Treasury Management Indicators to 31st March 2022 are noted.

3 THE REPORT

Summary

- 3.1 The average rate of investment return for 2021/22 is 0.36%, which is 0.30% above the benchmark rate.
- 3.2 The Council's Prudential Indicators for 2021/22 were agreed by Council in February 2021 and performance against the key indicators is shown in **Appendix 1**. All indicators are within target levels.
- 3.3 The Council's revenue budget for interest & capital financing costs was £1.078m under budget in 2021/22, mainly related to the high levels of cash balances held through the year, resulting in a delay in the need to borrow and therefore incurring lower than budgeted interest costs. A breakdown of the revenue budget year-end position is detailed in **Appendix 6**.

Summary of Returns

- 3.4 The Council's investment position as at 31st March 2022 is given in **Appendix 2**. The balance of deposits as 31st March 2022 are also set out in the pie charts in this appendix, along with the equivalent details for the previous quarter and 31st March 2021 for comparatives.
- 3.5 Gross earnings on treasury investments totalled £311k during 2021/22. **Appendix 3** details the investment performance, showing the average rate of interest earned over this period was 0.36%, which was 0.30% above the benchmark rate* of average 7 day LIBID +0.05% (0.06%). This excess is mainly due to the £5m long term investment balance held in the CCLA Local Authority Property Fund, and a combined £5m invested across two long term ESG focused funds during 2021/22, which have contributed £235k of the total investment income during the year. The previous year's details are also included in the appendix for comparison.

* Following the discontinuation of LIBID rates in December 2021, the benchmark of 7 day LIBID + 0.05% has been changed for the final quarter to 7 day SONIA - 0.08%. The SONIA -0.08% benchmark has been selected following a comparison across the first three quarters of the year when LIBID was available, which showed that this rate was the closest match.

- 3.6 The average rate of return of 0.36% in 2021/22 was lower than the 0.41% achieved in 2020/21 due to the continued pressures on financial markets mainly due to the COVID-19 pandemic. The lag on the impact of interest rate decreases at the start of 2020/21 resulted in higher returns during that comparable period, and during 2021/22 there was a lag in the impact of the Bank of England rate rises filtering through to our investment returns. The Council is however now seeing rate rises across our investments and deposit accounts, and it is anticipated that this, as well as the increased strategic longer term investment balance of £10m, will lead to higher investment returns in future periods.

Summary of Borrowings

- 3.7 The Council's external borrowing as at 31st March 2022 totalled £219.4 million and is detailed in **Appendix 4**, along with the previous quarter for comparative purposes. Short term local authority loans of £15m and £5m were repaid during

the year with no replacement borrowing being taken due to the Council's high cash balances. A summary of the movement in borrowing during 2021/22 is shown in the following table.

2021/22 Borrowing Portfolio Movements	£m
2021/22 Opening Balance	243.457
New Loans Taken	0.000
Loans Repaid	(20.000)
PWLB Annuity Loan principal repayments	(4.054)
2021/22 Closing Balance	219.403

3.8 The Council's Capital Financing Requirement (CFR) as at 31st March 2022 was £328.2 million. This represents the Council's underlying need to borrow to finance capital expenditure and demonstrates that the borrowing taken to date relates to funding historical capital spend.

3.9 The CFR represents the underlying need to borrow and the difference from the current borrowing of £219.4 million represents re-investment of the internal cash balances and reserves, reducing the in-year borrowing costs in excess of the potential investment returns.

3.10 Following Local Government Reorganisation in 1996, Avon County Council's residual debt is administered by Bristol City Council. All successor Unitary Authorities make an annual contribution to principal and interest repayment, for which there is a provision in the Council's revenue budget. The amount of residual debt outstanding as at 31st March 2022 apportioned to Bath & North East Somerset Council is £10.5m. Since this borrowing is managed by an external body and treated in the Council's Statement of Accounts as a deferred liability, it is not included in the borrowing figures referred to in paragraph 3.7.

Strategic & Tactical Decisions

3.11 As shown in the charts in **Appendix 2**, the investment portfolio was £84.2m as at 31st March 2022. Investments are diversified across Money Market Funds, Local Authorities, the Government's Debt Mgt Account Deposit Facility, Strategic funds and in highly rated UK Banks. The Council uses Money Market Funds to maintain short term liquidity.

3.12 The Council has a deposit of £5m in the Lloyd's Bank 95-day notice sustainability deposit account, in line with the ESG focussed short term deposit section of the approved 2021/22 Treasury Management Strategy.

3.13 The Council's investment portfolio as at 31st March 2022 includes a total of £10m invested in longer term strategic funds. These investments are as follows:

- £5m CCLA Local Authorities Property Fund.
- £3m FP Foresight UK Infrastructure Income Fund.
- £2m VT Gravis Clean Energy Income Fund.

- 3.14 The Council's average investment return for short-term investments was 0.09%, which was above the budgeted level of 0.05%. The average return on the long-term strategic investments was 3.99%, which was also above the budgeted rate of 3.50%. The combined average return on all investments was 0.36%. The summary of these returns is shown in the following table:

Investment Type	Average Investment Return
Short Term Investments Total	0.09%
Longer Term Strategic Investments:	
CCLA Local Authorities Property Fund	3.43%
FP Foresight UK Infrastructure Income Fund	4.31%*
VT Gravis Clean Energy Income Fund	3.92%*
Longer Term Strategic Investments Total	3.99%
Overall Total	0.36%

* The average investment return shown in the table for the two ESG focussed funds have been adjusted to remove the impact of the timing in the quarter of the initial investment. This is due to the way the Fund allocates quarterly investment returns in the first quarter of investment.

- 3.15 The combined impact of the higher than budgeted returns, along with the Council investment balances being higher than forecast (including the increased investments in long-term strategic investments), and additional interest received from non-treasury activity, resulted in £140k of additional interest income above the budgeted level.

Future Strategic & Tactical Issues

- 3.16 Our treasury management advisors full economic and market review for the year 2021/22 is included in **Appendix 5**.
- 3.17 The benefits of the Council's current policy of internal borrowing are monitored regularly against the likelihood that long term borrowing rates are forecast to rise in future years. The focus remains on the rate of increase and the medium-term peak.
- 3.18 Due to the high cash balances held by the Council during the year, £20m of short term borrowing from other Local Authorities that reached maturity during 2021/22 were not replaced, therefore reducing the Council's overall total borrowing.

Borrowing Update

- 3.19 In Q1 the Council sought advice from its treasury advisors on the opportunity to make an early repayment of a £10m LOBO loan during 2021/22 as part of a debt rescheduling approach. In consultation with the Cabinet Member for Economic Development & Resources, the Chief Finance Officer made the decision to pursue this restructuring, on the basis that it could provide revenue savings and reduce risk by replacing the LOBO debt with a shorter duration PWLB loan more aligned to the Council's future borrowing profile.
- 3.20 During the period the lender of the LOBO carried out their due diligence on the Council prior to execution of the repayment, interest rates increased. Upon

re-assessment of the repayment with updated interest rates, it was assessed that it no longer appeared to be a value for money exercise, and it was decided that the Council would not proceed at this time. It was agreed that in their monitoring of future interest rate changes, our treasury advisors would conduct a future assessment on a repayment option should interest rates move in a way which would make the deal more favourable.

- 3.21 In line with the Council's Treasury Management advisor's advice, the Council will continue to consider borrowing rates offered by alternative lenders, including other Local Authorities, alongside PWLB rates in order to minimise, where possible, its costs of borrowing.

Budget Implications

- 3.22 A breakdown of the revenue budget showing interest and capital financing and the year-end position based on the period covering April 2021 to March 2022 is included in **Appendix 6**. An overall underspend of £1.078m is reported towards the Council's net revenue outturn, mainly related to the temporary high levels of cash balances currently held, resulting in a delay in the need to borrow and therefore incurring lower than budgeted interest costs.

4 STATUTORY CONSIDERATIONS

- 4.1 This report is for information only.

5 RESOURCE IMPLICATIONS (FINANCE, PROPERTY, PEOPLE)

- 5.1 The financial implications are contained within the body of the report.

6 RISK MANAGEMENT

- 6.1 A risk assessment related to the issue and recommendations has been undertaken, in compliance with the Council's decision making risk management guidance.
- 6.2 The Council's lending & borrowing list is regularly reviewed during the financial year and credit ratings are monitored throughout the year. All lending/borrowing transactions are within approved limits and with approved institutions. Investment and Borrowing advice is provided by our Treasury Management consultants Arlingclose. As a result of the coronavirus pandemic, the frequency of updates and recommended actions from Arlingclose has increased, the Council has been acting on all recommendations in a timely manner.
- 6.3 The CIPFA Treasury Management in the Public Services: Code of Practice requires the Council nominate a committee to be responsible for ensuring effective scrutiny of the Treasury Management Strategy and policies. The Corporate Audit Committee carries out this scrutiny.
- 6.4 In addition, the Council maintain a risk register for Treasury Management activities, which is regularly reviewed and updated where applicable during the year. An extract from the risk register, detailing how the top 5 risks are managed, is included as **Appendix 8**.

7 CLIMATE CHANGE

- 7.1 The Council will continue to avoid any direct treasury management investments in fossil fuel related companies and will engage with its advisors to explore and assess the potential for any future investment opportunities in funds with a Renewable Energy & Sustainability focus as these products continue to be developed by the market in response to the Climate & Nature Emergency agenda.
- 7.2 An ESG section was added to the Treasury Management Strategy document for the 2021/22 period and the treasury team will actively consider investment options permitted under the new guidelines.
- 7.3 As detailed under 3.12, a £5m deposit in the Lloyd's 95-day sustainability account was made during the quarter. This account is a deposit product of Lloyds Bank which helps to support ESG focussed projects by offering discounted funding rates to projects with a green/sustainable goal.
- 7.4 As detailed under 3.13, the second of 2 purchases in two ESG focussed funds have now taken place, bringing the Council's position to £5m in long term ESG focussed investment funds.

8 OTHER OPTIONS CONSIDERED

- 8.1 None

9 CONSULTATION

- 9.1 Consultation has been carried out with the Cabinet Member for Economic Development & Resources, Chief Finance Officer and Monitoring Officer.
- 9.2 This report is also on the agenda for July 2022 Cabinet and Corporate Audit Committee.

Contact person	<i>Gary Adams - 01225 47 7107; Jamie Whittard - 01225 47 7213</i> Gary_Adams@BATHNES.GOV.UK ; Jamie_Whittard@BATHNES.GOV.UK
Background papers	<i>2021/22 Treasury Management & Investment Strategy</i>
Please contact the report author if you need to access this report in an alternative format	

APPENDIX 1

Performance against Treasury Management Indicators agreed in Treasury Management Strategy Statement

1. Treasury Borrowing limits

These limits include current commitments and proposals in the budget report for capital expenditure, plus additional headroom over & above the operational limit for unusual cash movements.

The Authorised limits for external debt include current commitments and proposals in the budget report for capital expenditure, plus additional headroom over and above the operational limit for unusual cash movements.

The Operational boundary for external debt is based on the same estimates as the authorised limit but without the additional headroom for unusual cash movements. This level also factors in the proposed approach to use internal cash-flow and future capital receipts as the preferred financing method for the capital programme.

	2021/22 Prudential Indicator	Actual as at 31 st Mar 2022
Operational boundary – borrowing	£408m	£219.4m
Operational boundary – other long-term liabilities	£4m	£0m
Operational boundary – TOTAL	£412m	£219.4m
Authorised limit – borrowing	£438m	£219.4m
Authorised limit – other long-term liabilities	£4m	£0m
Authorised limit – TOTAL	£442m	£219.4m

2. Average Credit Rating*

The Council has adopted a voluntary measure of its exposure to credit risk by monitoring the weighted average credit rating of its investment portfolio. A summary guide to credit ratings is set out at **Appendix 7**.

	2021/22 Prudential Indicator	Actual as at 31 st Mar 2022
	Rating	Rating
Minimum Portfolio Average Credit Rating	A-	AA+

* The calculation excludes the strategic investment in the CCLA Local Authority's Property Fund which is unrated.

3. Liquidity

The Authority has adopted a voluntary measure of its exposure to liquidity risk by monitoring the amount of cash available to meet unexpected payments within a rolling three-month period, without additional borrowing.

Liquidity risk indicator	2021/22 Prudential Indicator	Minimum During Year	Date of minimum
Minimum liquid cash balance in period	£15m	£40.7m	28 th Mar

4. Interest rate exposures.

This indicator is set to control the Council's exposure to interest rate risk. The upper limits on fixed and variable rate interest rate exposures, expressed as an amount of net principal borrowed.

	2021/22 Prudential Indicator	Actual as at 31 st Mar 2022
Upper limit on fixed interest rate exposures	£408m	£199.4m
Upper limit on variable interest rate exposures	£184m	£20m

Fixed rate investments and borrowings are those where the rate of interest is fixed for at least 12 months, measured from the start of the financial year or the transaction date if later. All other instruments are classed as variable rate.

The Fixed rate limit is the total borrowing which can be at fixed interest rate, less any investments for a period greater than 12 months which has a fixed interest rate.

The Variable rate limit is the maximum amount of total borrowing which can be at variable interest rates.

5. Maturity Structure of borrowing

This indicator is set to control the Council's exposure to refinancing risk.

	Upper Limit	Lower Limit	Actual as at 31 st Mar 2022
	%	%	%
Under 12 months	50	Nil	11.4
12 months and within 24 months	50	Nil	0
24 months and within 5 years	75	Nil	0
5 years and within 10 years	75	Nil	6.8
10 years and within 25 years	100	25	50.0
Over 25 years	100		31.8

* The CIPFA Treasury management Code now requires the prudential indicator relating to Maturity of Fixed Rate Borrowing to reference the maturity of LOBO loans to the earliest date on which the lender can require payment, i.e. the next call date (which are at 6 monthly intervals for the £20m of LOBO's). However, the Council would only consider repaying these loans if the Lenders exercised their options to alter the interest rate.

6. Upper limit for total principal sums invested for over 364 days

The purpose of this indicator is to control the Authority's exposure to the risk of incurring losses by seeking early repayment of its investments. The limits on the long-term principal sum invested to final maturities beyond the period end will be:

Price risk indicator	2021/22 Prudential Indicator	Actual as at 31 st Mar 2022
Limit on principal invested beyond 31 st March 2022	£50m	£10m*
Limit on principal invested beyond 31 st March 2023	£20m	£10m*
Limit on principal invested beyond 31 st March 2024	£10m	£10m*

*The Council includes the CCLA LA Property Fund & two long term ESG Investments against this indicator as they are both held as Long Term Strategic Investments.

APPENDIX 2

The Council's Investment position at 31st March 2022

The term of investments is as follows:

Term Remaining	Balance at 31 st Mar 2022	Comparators	
		Balance at 31 st Dec 2021	Balance at 31 st Mar 2021
	£m	£m	£m
Notice (instant access funds)	49.2	50.4	47.5
Up to 1 month	0	0	5.0
1 month to 3 months	20.0	15.0	5.0
3 months to 6 months	0	5.0	0
6 months to 12 months	5.0	5.0	10.0
Strategic Funds	10.0	7.5	5.0
Total	84.2	82.9	72.5

The investment figure is made up as follows:

	Balance at 31 st Mar 2022	Comparators	
		Balance at 31 st Dec 2021	Balance at 31 st Mar 2021
	£m	£m	£m
B&NES Council	82.3	80.3	70.6
Schools	1.9	2.6	1.9
Total	84.2	82.9	72.5

The Council had a total average net positive investment balance of £86.1m during the period April 2021 to March 2022.

Charts 1 & 2 – Current Quarter

Chart 1: Council Investments as at 31st March 2022 - £84.2m

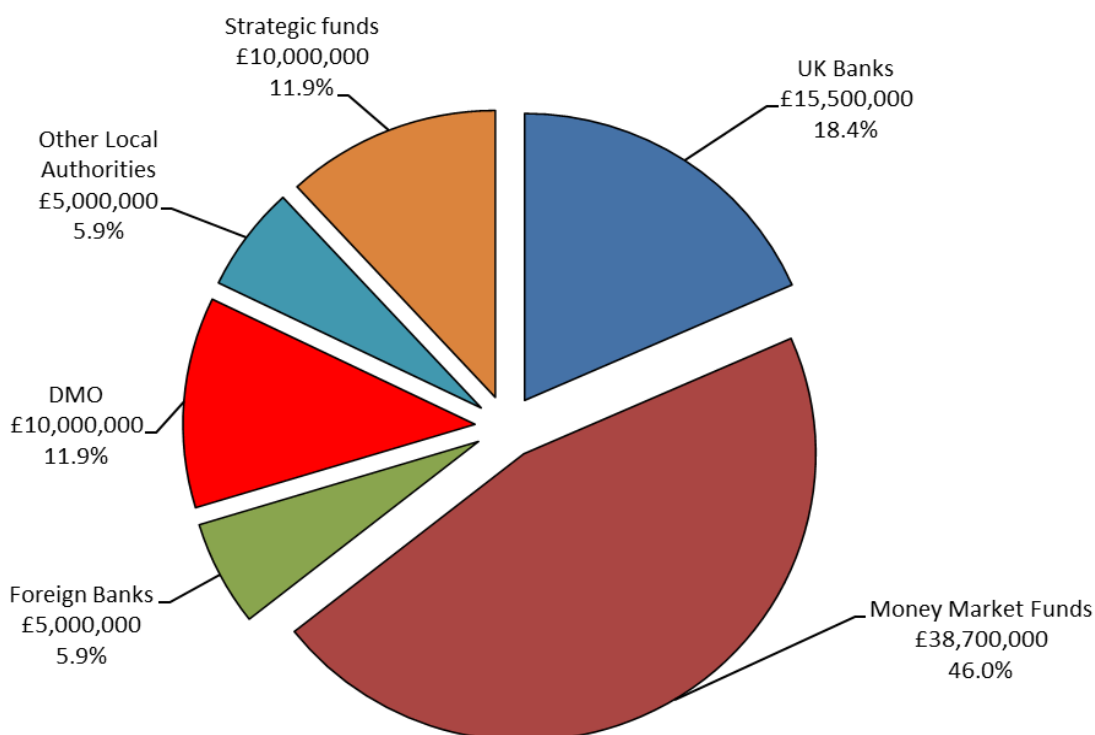
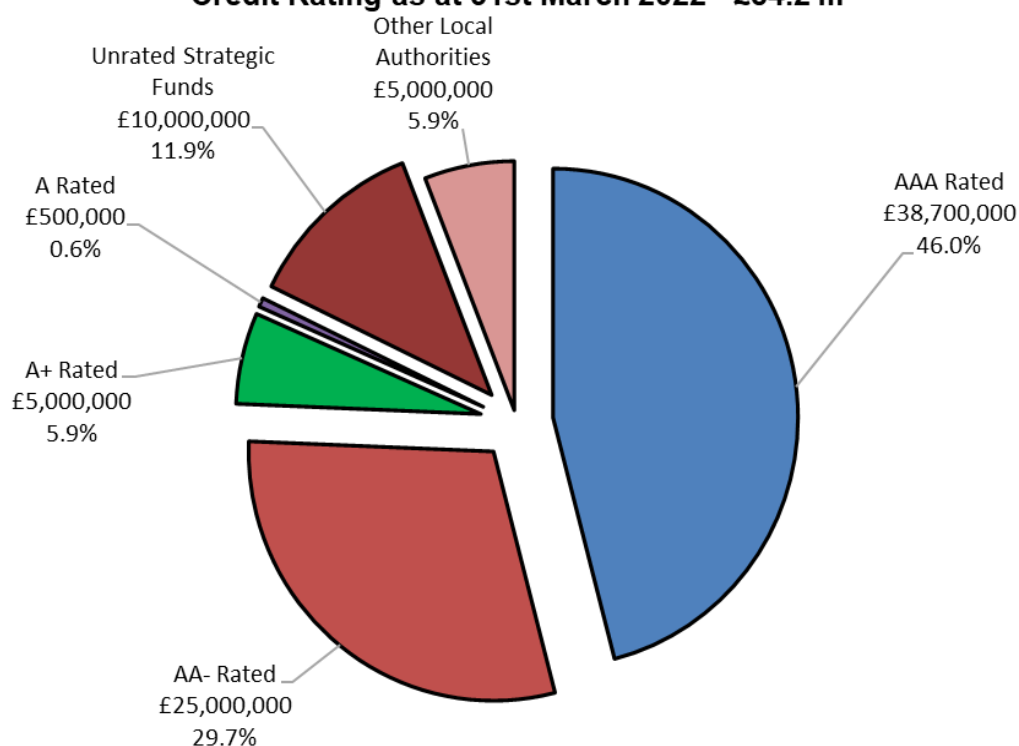


Chart 2: Council Investments Per Lowest Equivalent Long Term Credit Rating as at 31st March 2022 - £84.2 m



Charts 3 & 4 – Previous Quarter Comparators

Chart 3: Council Investments as at 31st December 2021 - £82.9m

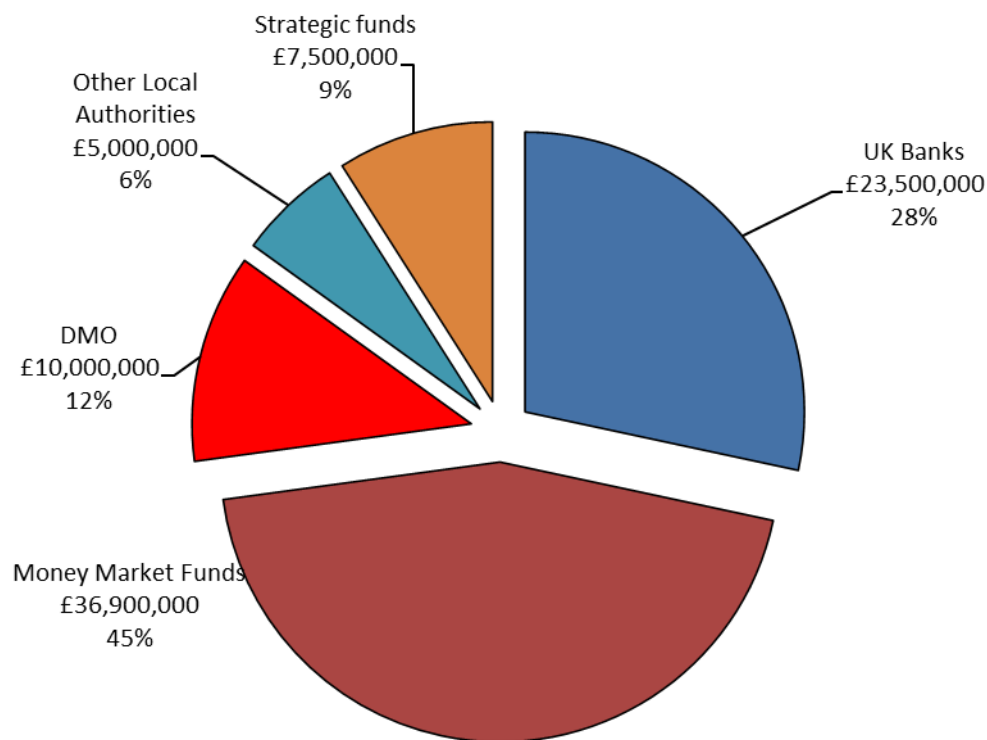
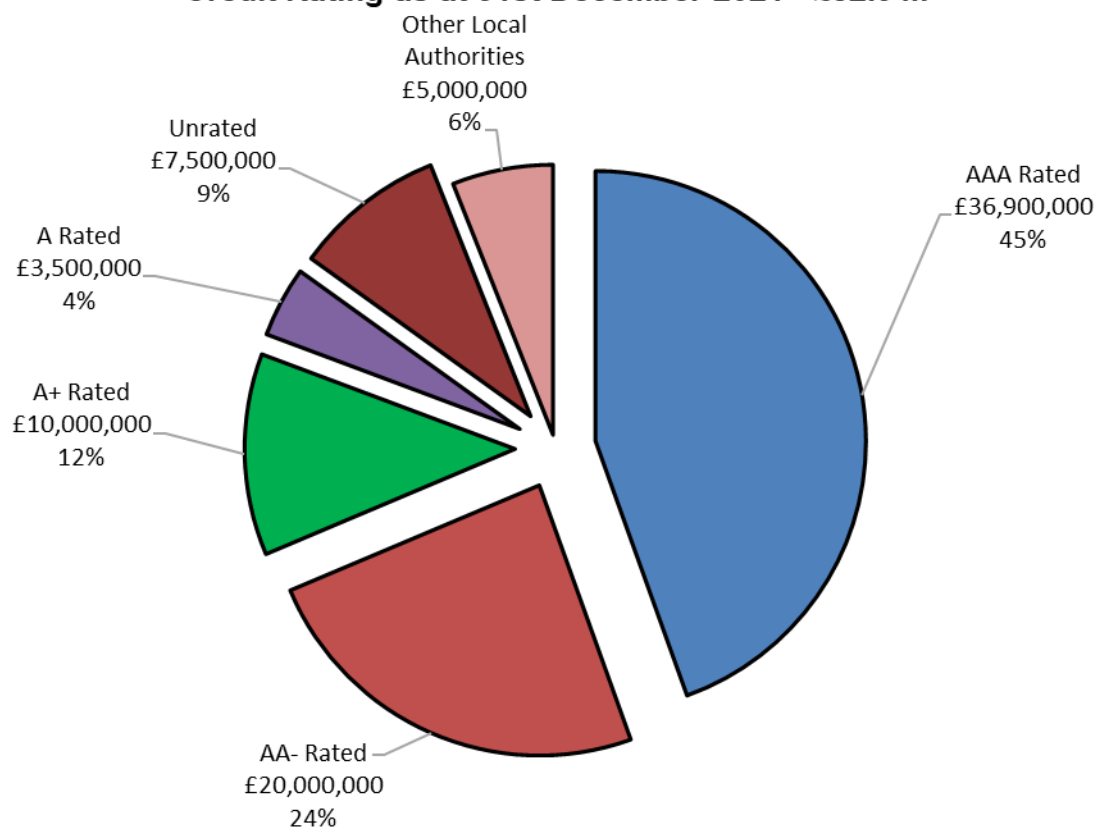


Chart 4: Council Investments Per Lowest Equivalent Long Term Credit Rating as at 31st December 2021 - £82.9 m



Charts 5 & 6 – Start of Year Comparators

Chart 5: Council Investments as at 31st March 2021 - £72.5m

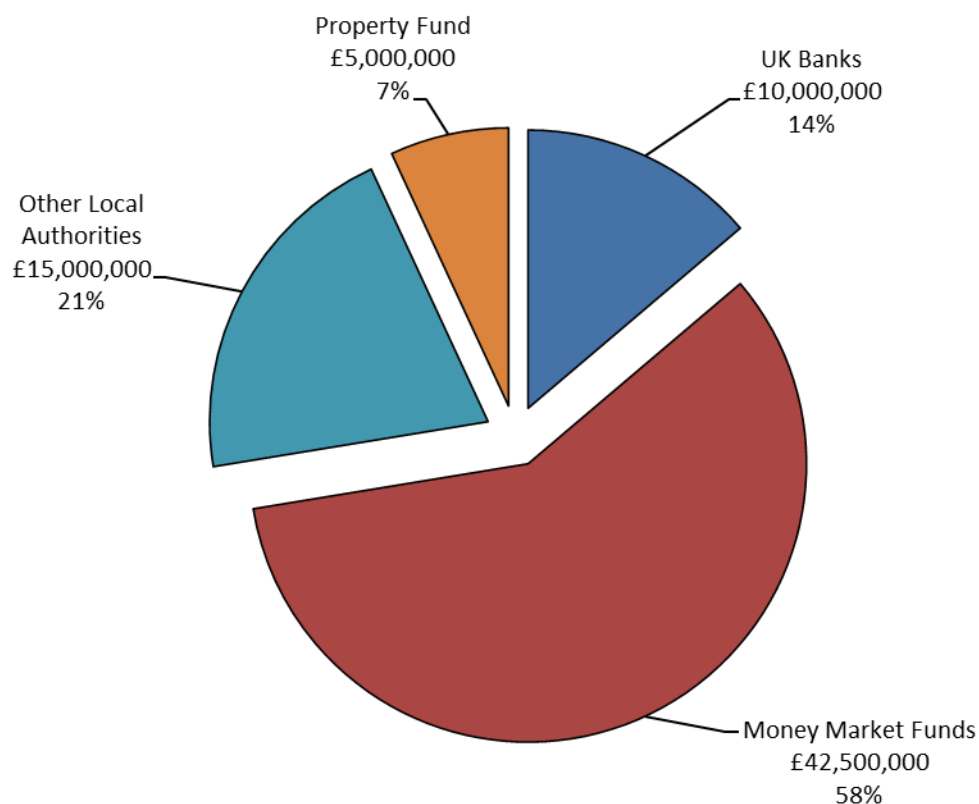
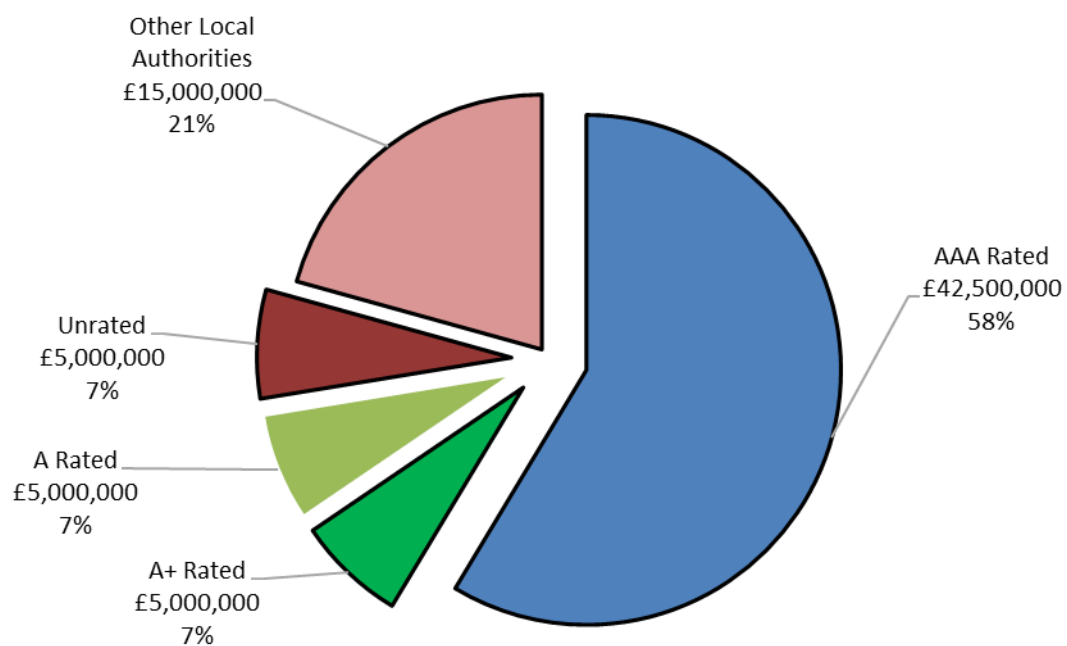


Chart 6: Council Investments Per Lowest Equivalent Long Term Credit Rating as at 31st March 2021 - £72.5m



APPENDIX 3

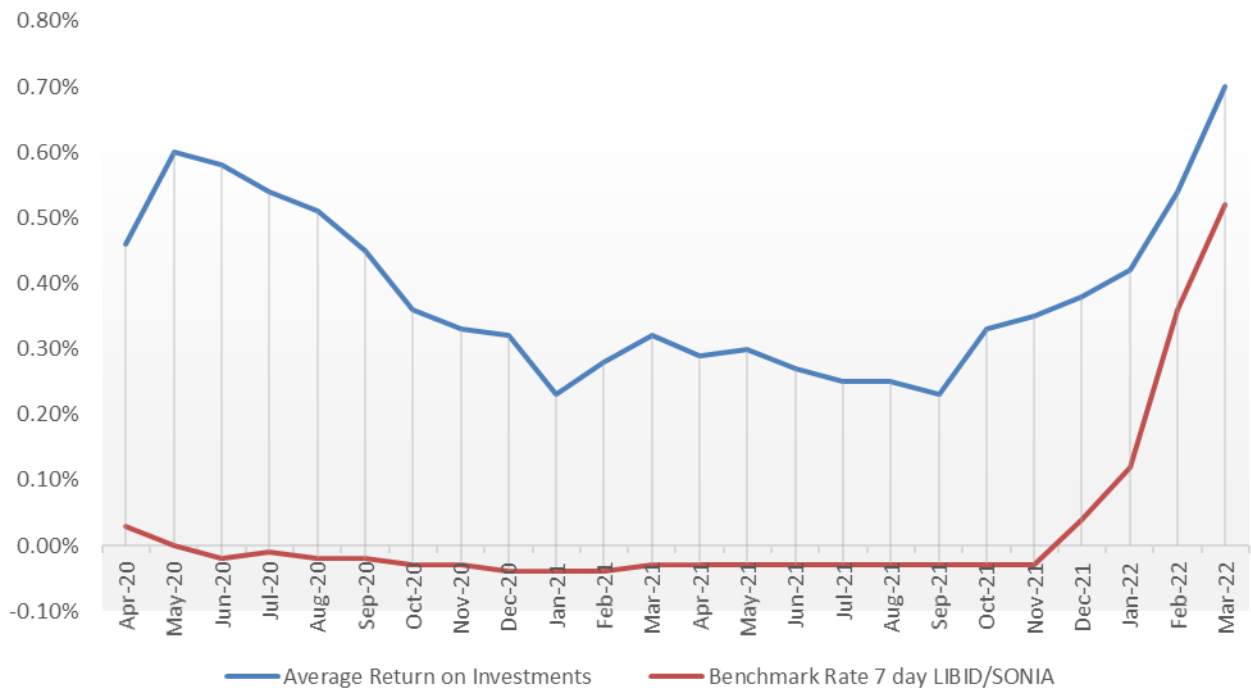
Average rate of return on investments for 2021/22

	Av return	Benchmark = Average 7 Day LIBID rate +0.05% (7 Day SONIA – 0.08%) (source: Arlingclose)	Performance against Benchmark %
April	0.29%	-0.03%	+0.32%
May	0.30%	-0.03%	+0.33%
June	0.27%	-0.03%	+0.30%
July	0.25%	-0.03%	+0.28%
August	0.25%	-0.03%	+0.28%
September	0.23%	-0.03%	+0.27%
October	0.33%	-0.03%	+0.36%
November	0.35%	-0.03%	+0.38%
December	0.38%	0.04%	+0.34%
January	0.42%	0.12%	+0.30%
February	0.54%	0.36%	+0.18%
March	0.70%	0.52%	+0.18%
Average	0.36%	0.06%	+0.30%

For Comparison, the average rate of return on investments for 2020/21 was as follows:

	Av return	Benchmark = Average 7 Day LIBID rate +0.05% (source: Arlingclose)	Performance against Benchmark %
April	0.46%	0.03%	+0.43%
May	0.60%	0.00%	+0.60%
June	0.58%	-0.02%	+0.60%
July	0.54%	-0.01%	+0.55%
August	0.51%	-0.02%	+0.52%
September	0.45%	-0.02%	+0.47%
October	0.36%	-0.03%	+0.39%
November	0.33%	-0.03%	+0.36%
December	0.32%	-0.04%	+0.36%
January	0.23%	-0.04%	+0.27%
February	0.28%	-0.04%	+0.32%
March	0.32%	-0.03%	+0.35%
Average	0.41%	-0.02%	+0.43%

Average Return on Investments 2020/21 & 2021/22 compared to Benchmark



APPENDIX 4

Council's External Borrowing at 31st March 2022

Lender	Amount outstanding @ 31st Dec'21	Change in Quarter	Amount outstanding @ 31st Mar'22	Start date	End date	Interest rate
Long term						
PWLB489142	10,000,000	-	10,000,000	15/10/2004	15/10/2034	4.75%
PWLB497233	5,000,000	-	5,000,000	12/05/2010	15/08/2035	4.55%
PWLB497234	5,000,000	-	5,000,000	12/05/2010	15/02/2060	4.53%
PWLB498834	5,000,000	-	5,000,000	05/08/2011	15/02/2031	4.86%
PWLB498835	10,000,000	-	10,000,000	05/08/2011	15/08/2029	4.80%
PWLB498836	15,000,000	-	15,000,000	05/08/2011	15/08/2061	4.96%
PWLB503684	5,300,000	-	5,300,000	29/01/2015	08/04/2034	2.62%
PWLB503685	5,000,000	-	5,000,000	29/01/2015	08/10/2064	2.92%
PWLB505122	16,546,973	-	16,546,973	20/06/2016	20/06/2041	2.36%
PWLB508126	8,929,760	-	8,929,760	06/12/2018	20/06/2043	2.38%
PWLB508202	9,640,378	-	9,640,378	12/12/2018	20/06/2068	2.59%
PWLB508224	4,456,620	-	4,456,620	13/12/2018	20/06/2043	2.25%
PWLB505744	8,385,987	(189,711)	8,196,276	24/02/2017	15/08/2039	2.28%
PWLB505966	8,588,372	(165,842)	8,422,529	04/04/2017	15/02/2042	2.26%
PWLB506052	7,298,766	(141,090)	7,157,675	08/05/2017	15/02/2042	2.25%
PWLB506255	6,714,422	(37,850)	6,676,572	10/08/2017	10/04/2067	2.64%
PWLB506729	8,925,963	(160,729)	8,765,234	13/12/2017	10/10/2042	2.35%
PWLB506995	8,947,355	(158,052)	8,789,303	06/03/2018	10/10/2042	2.52%
PWLB506996	9,194,007	(121,254)	9,072,753	06/03/2018	10/10/2047	2.62%
PWLB507749	9,092,523	(157,716)	8,934,808	10/09/2018	20/07/2043	2.42%
PWLB508485	19,473,504	(109,313)	19,364,192	11/02/2019	20/07/2068	2.52%
PWLB509840	9,322,004	(172,476)	9,149,528	04/09/2019	20/07/2044	1.40%
KBC Bank N.V *	5,000,000	-	5,000,000	08/10/2004	08/10/2054	4.50%
KBC Bank N.V *	5,000,000	-	5,000,000	08/10/2004	08/10/2054	4.50%
Commerzbank AG Frankfurt*	10,000,000	-	10,000,000	27/04/2005	27/04/2055	4.50%
Medium term						
Portsmouth C.C.	5,000,000	-	5,000,000	19/12/2019	19/12/2022	1.65%
Total Borrowing	220,816,633	(1,414,033)	219,402,600			

*All LOBO's (Lender Option / Borrower Option) have reached the end of their fixed interest period and have reverted to the variable rate of 4.50%. The lender has the option to change the interest rate at 6 monthly intervals. Should the lender use the option to change the rate, then at this point the borrower has the option to repay the loan without penalty.

The "Change in Quarter" movement on some of the PWLB loans reflects that these loans have an annuity repayment profile, so repayments of principal are made on a 6 monthly basis throughout the life of the loans.

APPENDIX 5

Economic and market review for April to March 2022

Economic background: The continuing economic recovery from coronavirus pandemic, together with the war in Ukraine, higher inflation, and higher interest rates were major issues over the period.

Bank Rate was 0.1% at the beginning of the reporting period. April and May saw the economy gathering momentum as the shackles of the pandemic restrictions were eased. Despite the improving outlook, market expectations were that the Bank of England would delay rate rises until 2022. Rising, persistent inflation changed that.

UK CPI was 0.7% in March 2021 but thereafter began to steadily increase. Initially driven by energy price effects and by inflation in sectors such as retail and hospitality which were re-opening after the pandemic lockdowns, inflation then was believed to be temporary. Thereafter price rises slowly became more widespread, as a combination of rising global costs and strong demand was exacerbated by supply shortages and transport dislocations. The surge in wholesale gas and electricity prices led to elevated inflation expectations. CPI for February 2022 registered 6.2% year on year, up from 5.5% in the previous month and the highest reading in the National Statistic series. Core inflation, which excludes the more volatile components, rose to 5.2% y/y from 4.4%.

The government's jobs furlough scheme insulated the labour market from the worst effects of the pandemic. The labour market began to tighten and demand for workers grew strongly as employers found it increasingly difficult to find workers to fill vacant jobs. Having peaked at 5.2% in December 2020, unemployment continued to fall and the most recent labour market data for the three months to January 2022 showed the unemployment rate at 3.9% while the employment rate rose to 75.6%. Headline 3-month average annual growth rate for wages were 4.8% for total pay and 3.8% for regular pay. In real terms, after adjusting for inflation, total pay growth was up 0.1% while regular pay fell by 1.0%.

With the fading of lockdown – and, briefly, the 'pingdemic' – restraints, activity in consumer-facing sectors improved substantially as did sectors such as oil and mining with the reopening of oil rigs but materials shortages and the reduction in the real spending power of households and businesses dampened some of the growth momentum. Gross domestic product (GDP) grew by an upwardly revised 1.3% in the fourth calendar quarter of 2021 according to the final estimate (initial estimate 1.0%) and took UK GDP to just 0.1% below where it was before the pandemic. The annual growth rate was revised down slightly to 7.4% (from 7.5%) following a revised 9.3% fall in 2020.

Having increased Bank Rate from 0.10% to 0.25% in December, the Bank of England hiked it further to 0.50% in February and 0.75% in March. At the meeting in February, the Monetary Policy Committee (MPC) voted unanimously to start reducing the stock of its asset purchase scheme by ceasing to reinvest the proceeds from maturing bonds as well as starting a programme of selling its corporate bonds.

In its March interest rate announcement, the MPC noted that the invasion of Ukraine had caused further large increases in energy and other commodity prices, with the expectation that the conflict will worsen supply chain disruptions around the world and push CPI inflation to around 8% later in 2022, even higher than forecast only a month before in the February Monetary Policy Report. The Committee also noted that although GDP in

January was stronger than expected with business confidence holding up and the labour market remaining robust, consumer confidence had fallen due to the squeeze in real household incomes.

GDP growth in the euro zone increased by 0.3% in calendar Q4 2021 following a gain of 2.3% in the third quarter and 2.2% in the second. Headline inflation remains high, with CPI registering a record 7.5% year-on-year in March, the ninth successive month of rising inflation. Core CPI inflation was 3.0% y/y in March, was well above the European Central Bank's target of 'below, but close to 2%', putting further pressure on its long-term stance of holding its main interest rate of 0%.

The US economy expanded at a downwardly revised annualised rate of 6.9% in Q4 2021, a sharp increase from a gain of 2.3% in the previous quarter. In its March 2022 interest rate announcement, the Federal Reserve raised the Fed Funds rate to between 0.25% and 0.50% and outlined further increases should be expected in the coming months. The Fed also repeated its plan to reduce its asset purchase programme which could start by May 2022.

Financial markets: The conflict in Ukraine added further volatility to the already uncertain inflation and interest rate outlook over the period. The Dow Jones started to decline in January but remained above its pre-pandemic level by the end of the period while the FTSE 250 and FTSE 100 also fell and ended the quarter below their pre-March 2020 levels.

Bond yields were similarly volatile as the tension between higher inflation and flight to quality from the war pushed and pulled yields, but with a general upward trend from higher interest rates dominating as yields generally climbed.

The 5-year UK benchmark gilt yield began the quarter at 0.82% before rising to 1.41%. Over the same period the 10-year gilt yield rose from 0.97% to 1.61% and the 20-year yield from 1.20% to 1.82%.

The Sterling Overnight Rate (SONIA) averaged 0.39% over the quarter.

Credit review: In the first half of FY 2021-22 credit default swap (CDS) spreads were flat over most of period and are broadly in line with their pre-pandemic levels. In September spreads rose by a few basis points due to concerns around Chinese property developer Evergrande defaulting but then fell back. Fitch and Moody's revised upward the outlook on a number of UK banks and building societies on the Authority's counterparty to 'stable', recognising their improved capital positions compared to 2020 and better economic growth prospects in the UK.

Fitch also revised the outlook for Nordea, Svenska Handelsbanken and Handelsbanken plc to stable. The agency considered the improved economic prospects in the Nordic region to have reduced the baseline downside risks it previously assigned to the lenders.

The successful vaccine rollout programme was credit positive for the financial services sector in general and the improved economic outlook meant some institutions were able to reduce provisions for bad loans. However, in 2022, the uncertainty engendered by Russia's invasion of Ukraine pushed CDS prices modestly higher over the first calendar quarter, but only to levels slightly above their 2021 averages, illustrating the general resilience of the banking sector.

Having completed its full review of its credit advice on unsecured deposits, in September Arlingclose extended the maximum duration limit for UK bank entities on its recommended lending list from 35 days to 100 days; a similar extension was advised in December for the non-UK banks on this list. As ever, the institutions and durations on the Authority's counterparty list recommended by Arlingclose remains under constant review

APPENDIX 6

Interest & Capital Financing Costs – Budget Monitoring 2021/22 Outturn

April 2021 to March 2022	YEAR END POSITION			ADV/FAV
	Budgeted Spend or (Income) £'000	Actual Spend or (Income) £'000	Actual over or (under) spend £'000	
Interest & Capital Financing				
- Debt Costs	8,049	7,091	(958)	FAV
- Internal Repayment of Loan Charges	(10,338)	(10,338)	0	
- Ex Avon Debt Costs	1,020	987	(33)	FAV
- Minimum Revenue Provision (MRP)	8,307	8,360	53	ADV
- Interest on Balances	(208)	(348)	(140)	FAV
Total	6,830	5,752	(1,078)	FAV

APPENDIX 7

Summary Guide to Credit Ratings

Rating	Details
AAA	Highest credit quality – lowest expectation of default, which is unlikely to be adversely affected by foreseeable events.
AA	Very high credit quality - expectation of very low default risk, which is not likely to be significantly vulnerable to foreseeable events.
A	High credit quality - expectations of low default risk which may be more vulnerable to adverse business or economic conditions than is the case for higher ratings.
BBB	Good credit quality - expectations of default risk are currently low but adverse business or economic conditions are more likely to impair this capacity.
BB	Speculative - indicates an elevated vulnerability to default risk, particularly in the event of adverse changes in business or economic conditions over time.
B	Highly speculative - indicates that material default risk is present, but a limited margin of safety remains. Capacity for continued payment is vulnerable to deterioration in the business and economic environment.
CCC	Substantial credit risk - default is a real possibility.
CC	Very high levels of credit risk - default of some kind appears probable.
C	Exceptionally high levels of credit risk - default is imminent or inevitable.
RD	Restricted default - indicates an issuer that has experienced payment default on a bond, loan or other material financial obligation but which has not entered into bankruptcy filings, administration, receivership, liquidation or other formal winding-up procedure, and which has not otherwise ceased operating.
D	Default - indicates an issuer that has entered into bankruptcy filings, administration, receivership, liquidation or other formal winding-up procedure, or which has otherwise ceased business.

APPENDIX 8

Extract from Treasury Management Risk Register – Top 5 Risks

			Current Risk Score										Trend			Management Action	
	Risk Nr	Description	Likelihood					Impact					This Period				
			1	2	3	4	5	1	2	3	4	5					
			L	M	H	L	M	H	1	2	3						
1	R01	Liquidity Risk - The risk that cash will not be available when it is needed, that ineffective management of liquidity creates additional unbudgeted costs, and that the organisation's business/service objectives will be thereby compromised.		2					3			6	6	6	6	Obtain approval of annual Treasury Management Strategy by February Council. Carry out weekly reviews of investment portfolio and planned actions. Carry out monthly dashboard meeting with Chief Finance Officer. Consider short and medium term cash balances and cashflows to inform any short - medium term borrowing requirement.	
2	R02	Interest Rate Risk - The risk that fluctuations in the levels of interest rates create an unexpected or unbudgeted burden on the organisation's finances, against which the organisation has failed to protect itself adequately			3				3			9	9	4	4	Monitor interest rates on a monthly basis and compare with budget to determine impact on Council finances and report through monthly Treasury Dashboard. Report implication of interest rate changes to Cabinet as part of quarterly Treasury Management Performance Report. Explore alternative potential investment products following new freedoms - including corporate bonds, gilts, Certificate of Deposits etc.	
3	R04	Inflation Risk - The risk that prevailing levels of inflation cause an unexpected or unbudgeted burden on the organisation's finances, against which the organisation has failed to protect itself adequately.				4			3			12	9	4	4	Liaise with Chief Finance Officer to ensure Inflation both current and projected forms part of the medium term financial planning framework.	
4	R05	Credit and Counterparty Risk - The risk of failure by a third party to meet its contractual obligations to the organisation under an investment, borrowing, capital, project or partnership financing, particularly as a result of the third party's diminished creditworthiness, and the resulting detrimental effect on the organisation's capital or current (revenue) resources.			3					4		12	12	12	12	Complete annual review of Counterparty List with external advisors to feed into Treasury Management Strategy. Regular review of counterparty financial standing through use of credit ratings, credit default swap rates and national press coverage and liaison with Chief Finance Officer and external advisors to consider any issues / change in circumstances of counterparties.	
5	R09	Key Personnel - There is a risk that staff absence results in the inability to process Treasury Management transactions.			3				3			9	9	9	6	Produce & maintain a Business Continuity Plan to manage staff absences Provide refresher training and periodically ask secondary process operators to run the treasury process to ensure that there are a number of people able to perform the treasury activity	

Bath and North East Somerset Council

Full Council meeting 21 July 2022

Liberal Democrat Motion in Support of the Climate and Ecology Bill

To be proposed by Councillor Sarah Warren

Council:

1. Notes that, along with many other local authorities, Bath and North East Somerset Council is already taking action to achieve net zero carbon emissions and protect and revitalise local wildlife and natural habitats.
2. Recalls that Bath and North East Somerset Council declared a Climate Emergency in March 2019 and declared an Ecological Emergency in July 2020, and also that the UK Parliament declared an Environment and Climate Emergency in May 2019.
3. Notes that the [Climate and Ecology Bill](#) was introduced into the UK Parliament on 21 June 2021 which would, if it becomes law, require the development of a strategy to ensure that the UK's environmental response is in line with the latest science. The strategy would ensure that:
 - the ecological crisis is tackled shoulder to shoulder with the climate crisis via a joined-up approach;
 - the Paris Agreement aim is enshrined into law to ensure that the UK does its full and fair share to limit the global temperature rise to 1.5°C;
 - we halt and reverse biodiversity loss by 2030 to ensure that the UK's ecosystems are protected and restored;
 - the UK takes responsibility for its greenhouse gas footprint, including international aviation and shipping—and by accounting for consumption emissions related to the goods and services that are imported and consumed in the UK;
 - the UK takes responsibility for its ecological footprint in order to better protect the health and resilience of ecosystems—including along domestic and global supply chains; and
 - an independent, temporary Climate and Nature Assembly is set-up—representative of the UK population—to engage with the UK Parliament and UK Government to help develop the strategy.

Council therefore resolves to:

1. Support the Climate and Ecology Bill.
2. Write to the MPs for Bath and for North East Somerset letting them know that the motion has been passed, and urging them to support the Bill, or thanking them for already doing so; and
3. Write to [Zero Hour](#), the organisers of the cross-party campaign for the Bill, to express Bath and North East Somerset Council's support.

- *Unless where specifically set out in the statute, motions approved at Council do not bind the Executive (Cabinet) but may influence their future decisions.*
- *Councillors are reminded of their public sector equality duty which requires the Council to consider or think about how their policies or decisions may affect people who are protected under the Equality Act.*

Notes from the Zero Hour campaign:

Humans have already caused irreversible climate change, the impacts of which are being felt in the UK and around the world. The global temperature has already increased by 1.2°C above pre-industrial levels, and the natural world has reached crisis point, with [28% of plants and animals](#) threatened with extinction.

Climate change

Unless we drastically change course, the world is set to exceed the Paris Agreement's 1.5°C limit. Pledges, such as the Paris Agreement and Glasgow Pact—and updated emissions targets—are not legally-binding. This gap between pledges and policy leaves the world on course for catastrophic warming of [near 3°C](#).

Following the “now or never” Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) [report](#) in April 2022, the UN Secretary General António Guterres stated that “we are on a fast track to climate disaster. This is not fiction or exaggeration. It is what science tells us will result from our current energy policies”.

In addition, the UK Government's [Net Zero Strategy](#) (October 2021) stated that “if we fail to limit global warming to 1.5°C, we risk reaching climatic tipping points, we could lose control of our climate for good”. The 1.5°C goal is ‘on life support’ and only ambitious action from national and sub-national authorities, civil society, the private sector and local communities will help us realise it.

Biodiversity loss

The UK is [one of the most nature-depleted countries in the world](#). More than one in seven of our plants and animals face extinction, and more than 40% are in decline. We therefore welcome the [Leaders' Pledge for Nature](#), signed by the UK Government, which states that—if we fail to halt and reverse biodiversity loss by 2030—we increase the risk of further pandemics, rising global temperatures and loss of species. In order to achieve this, the UK needs a legally-enforceable nature target so that, by 2030, nature is visibly and measurably on the path of recovery—in line with the [Global Goal for Nature](#).

- *Unless where specifically set out in the statute, motions approved at Council do not bind the Executive (Cabinet) but may influence their future decisions.*
- *Councillors are reminded of their public sector equality duty which requires the Council to consider or think about how their policies or decisions may affect people who are protected under the Equality Act.*

Draft of motion by Cllr. Dr. Y. Kumar for July 2022 Full Council

Standing up for Responsible Tax Conduct

Our Council notes that:

1. The pressure on organisations to pay their fair share of tax has never been stronger.
2. Polling from the Institute for Business Ethics finds that “corporate tax avoidance” has, since 2013, been the clear number one concern of the British public when it comes to business conduct.
3. Two thirds of people (66%) believe the Government and local councils should at least consider a company’s ethics and how they pay their tax, as well as value for money and quality of service provided, when awarding contracts to companies.
4. Around 17.5% of public contracts in the UK have been won by companies with links to tax havens.
5. It has been conservatively estimated that losses from multinational profit-shifting (just one form of tax avoidance) could be costing the UK some £17bn per annum in lost corporation tax revenues.
6. The Fair Tax Mark offers a means for business to demonstrate good tax conduct, and has been secured by a wide range of businesses across the UK, including FTSE-listed PLCs, co-operatives, social enterprises and large private businesses.

BaNES Council believes that:

1. Paying tax is often presented as a burden, but it shouldn’t be.
2. Tax enables us to provide services from education, health and social care, to flood defence, roads, policing and defence. It also helps to counter financial inequalities and rebalance distorted economies.
3. As recipients of significant public funding, local authorities should take the lead in the promotion of exemplary tax conduct; be that by ensuring contractors are paying their proper share of tax, or by refusing to go along with offshore tax dodging when buying land and property.

4. Where councils hold substantive stakes in private enterprises, influence should be wielded to ensure that such businesses are exemplars of tax transparency and tax avoidance is shunned.
5. More action is needed, however, as current and proposed new UK procurement law significantly restricts councils' ability to either penalise poor tax conduct (as exclusion grounds are rarely triggered) or reward good tax conduct, when buying goods or services.
6. UK cities, counties and towns can and should stand up for responsible tax conduct - doing what they can within existing frameworks and pledging to do more given the opportunity, as active supporters of international tax justice.

Our Council resolves to:

1. Approve the Councils for Fair Tax Declaration.
2. Lead by example and demonstrate good practice in our tax conduct, right across our activities.
3. Ensure IR35 is implemented robustly and contract workers pay a fair share of employment taxes.
4. Not use offshore vehicles for the purchase of land and property, especially where this leads to reduced payments of stamp duty.
5. Undertake due diligence to ensure that not-for-profit structures are not being used inappropriately by suppliers as an artificial device to reduce the payment of tax and business rates.
6. Demand clarity on the ultimate beneficial ownership of suppliers UK and overseas and their consolidated profit & loss position, given lack of clarity could be strong indicators of poor financial probity and weak financial standing.
7. Promote Fair Tax Mark certification especially for any business in which we have a significant stake and where corporation tax is due.
8. Support Fair Tax Week events in the area, and celebrate the tax contribution made by responsible businesses are proud to promote responsible tax conduct and pay their fair share of corporation tax. .
9. Support calls for urgent reform of UK procurement law to enable local authorities to better penalise poor tax conduct and reward good tax conduct through their procurement policies.

Bath and North East Somerset Council

Full Council meeting 21 July 2022

Cross-Party Motion from the Liberal Democrat, Conservative and Labour Groups on Bristol Airport Expansion

To be proposed by Councillor Shelley Bromley

Council notes:

1. The Planning Inspectorate's decision to allow the expansion of Bristol Airport at appeal by 2 million passengers a year, up to 12 million.
2. North Somerset Council refused planning permission for expansion on environmental and traffic congestion grounds and that local elected representatives and neighbouring Councils, including B&NES, Bristol and North Somerset, as well as the WECA Mayor, objected to the application.
3. The forthcoming High Court challenge by campaign group Bristol Airport Action Network (BAAN), which has been supported by public crowdfunding and which will be heard in Bristol High Court on 8 and 9 November 2022.
4. The Climate Emergency Declaration adopted by B&NES Council in March 2019, in which Council resolved to oppose the expansion of Bristol Airport, along with the Ecological Emergency motion adopted in July 2020 which further supported the Council's climate ambitions.
5. Bristol Airport Ltd.'s published expansion strategy, to more than double in size to serve 20 million passengers a year, and 'Carbon Roadmap' policy, which does not include emissions from aircraft.

Council believes:

6. Airport expansion is incompatible with the action being taken by West of England Councils to tackle the Climate Emergency, the UK Government's legally binding climate targets, and advice from the Government's own Climate Change Committee.
7. B&NES residents' health and wellbeing will be adversely affected by expansion, including by additional:
 - a. Traffic congestion from an additional 10,000 car movements every day – and associated pollution due to inadequate and expensive public transport links;
 - b. Noise, from an extra 23,800 flights annually, including 4,000 night flights, which will be concentrated in the summer months; and
 - c. Atmospheric and air pollution, including carbon dioxide emissions, water vapour, nitrogen oxides carbon monoxide, particulate matter, and aerosols, which will affect residents' health directly as well as impacting on climate change.

Council therefore:

8. Calls on the Secretary of State for Levelling Up, Housing and Communities to:
 - *Unless where specifically set out in the statute, motions approved at Council do not bind the Executive (Cabinet) but may influence their future decisions.*
 - *Councillors are reminded of their public sector equality duty which requires the Council to consider or think about how their policies or decisions may affect people who are protected under the Equality Act.*

- a. 'Call in' the expansion of Bristol Airport for an inquiry, due to the climate impact of airport expansion and the negative impact on neighbouring communities.
 - b. Consider all airport expansion applications on a national rather than an individual basis. Make decisions in line with the advice from the Climate Change Committee, which has said there should be 'no net expansion of airports' and also taking the cumulative impact of CO₂ emissions and their impact on the UK's legally binding journey to net zero into account.
9. Requests that the Leader write to the Secretary of State, the aviation minister, and local MPs to inform them of Council's position.
10. Reaffirms its 2019 pledge to provide the leadership to enable Bath & North East Somerset to become carbon neutral by 2030 and aim of making B&NES Council carbon neutral by 2030.

- *Unless where specifically set out in the statute, motions approved at Council do not bind the Executive (Cabinet) but may influence their future decisions.*
- *Councillors are reminded of their public sector equality duty which requires the Council to consider or think about how their policies or decisions may affect people who are protected under the Equality Act.*

Bath and North East Somerset Council

Full Council meeting – 21 July 2022

Conservative Group Motion on the Council Tax Surcharge

To be proposed by Cllr Michael Evans

Council:

1. Notes that properties left empty for two years or more are liable for a 200% rate of Council Tax and that properties left empty for five years or more are liable for a rate of 300%.
2. Recognises that this is in order to reduce the number of long-term empty properties in BANES so as to get as many as possible back into use.
3. Recognises that properties that have been empty for a number of years often need a great deal of work to enable them to be habitable again.
4. Believes that when an empty property comes under new ownership, the 200% and 300% legacy Council Tax surcharges unfairly punish the new owners who may be trying to bring the empty property back into use.

Council therefore:

5. Acknowledges that the Council Tax surcharges for empty properties must remain but requests that whenever an empty property is brought under new ownership, the surcharge accumulated while the property stood empty be waived and the timeframe before it can again be applied be reset.

- *Unless where specifically set out in the statute, motions approved at Council do not bind the Executive (Cabinet) but may influence their future decisions.*
- *Councillors are reminded of their public sector equality duty which requires the Council to consider or think about how their policies or decisions may affect people who are protected under the Equality Act.*

This page is intentionally left blank